Integrability of Moufang Foundations

Dissertation

zur Erlangung des akademischen Grades doctor rerum naturalium

vorgelegt von

Herrn Dipl.-Math. Sebastian Weiß
geb. am 18.01.1985 in Trostberg

am

Mathematischen Institut
der Justus-Liebig-Universität Gießen

September 2013

Betreuer: Prof. Dr. Bernhard Mühlherr
Wer fragt, ist ein Narr für fünf Minuten. Wer nicht fragt, bleibt ein Narr für immer.

Aus China
Integrability of Moufang Foundations

A Contribution to the Classification of Twin Buildings

Dedicated to My Siblings
Die Zukunft gehört denjenigen, die an die Wahrhaftigkeit ihrer Träume glauben.

Eleanor Roosevelt
Contents

Introduction

Part I Preliminaries

1 Notations 11
2 Twin Buildings 14

Part II Parameter Systems

3 Alternative Rings 25
  3.1 Basic Definitions and Basic Properties 25
  3.2 Octonion Division Algebras 26
  3.3 The Bruck-Kleinfeld Theorem 30
  3.4 Discrete Valuations and Composition Algebras 31

4 Quadratic Spaces 32
  4.1 Basic Definitions and Basic Properties 32
  4.2 Small Dimensions 34
  4.3 Clifford Algebras and the Clifford Invariant 37
  4.4 Norm Splittings 38
  4.5 Quadratic Spaces of Type $F_4$ 40

5 Involutory Sets 41
  5.1 Basic Definitions 41
  5.2 Jordan Isomorphisms of Involutory Sets 41
  5.3 Involutory Sets of Quadratic Type 42

6 Indifferent Sets 45

7 Pseudo-Quadratic Spaces 46
  7.1 Basic Definitions and Basic Properties 46
  7.2 Jordan Isomorphisms 48
### Part III  Jordan Isomorphisms of Pseudo-Quadratic Spaces

| Chapter | Title | Page |
|---------|-------|------|
| 8       | A Partial Result | 53   |
| 9       | The Involutory Set Is Proper | 53   |
| 10      | The Involutory Set Is of Quadratic Type | 55   |
| 11      | Small Dimensions I | 65   |
| 12      | Small Dimensions II | 68   |
| 13      | Exceptional Isomorphisms I | 74   |
| 14      | The Reverse Direction | 77   |
| 15      | Exceptional Isomorphisms II | 83   |
| 16      | The Field $F_4$ | 85   |
| 17      | Conclusion | 87   |

### Part IV  Simply Laced Foundations

| Chapter | Title | Page |
|---------|-------|------|
| 18      | Parametrized Moufang Triangles | 91   |
| 19      | Foundations | 93   |
| 19.1    | Definition | 93   |
| 19.2    | Visualizing Foundations | 94   |
| 19.3    | Root Group Systems | 95   |
| 19.4    | Foundations and Root Group Systems | 96   |
| 19.5    | Reparametrizations and Isomorphisms | 98   |
| 19.6    | Glueings | 100  |
| 20      | Integrability of Certain Foundations | 103  |
| 20.1    | Integrability Criteria | 103  |
| 20.2    | The Canonical Triangle over an Octonion Division Algebra | 105  |
| 20.3    | Positive and Mixed Foundations over Quaternions | 105  |
| 21      | Triangle Foundations | 109  |
| 21.1    | The Defining Field | 109  |
| 21.2    | Triangles over Octonions | 111  |
| 21.3    | Non-Existence of Tetrahedrons over Octonions | 112  |
| 21.4    | Triangles over Skew-Fields | 115  |
| 21.5    | Skew-Fields inside Octonions | 117  |
| 21.6    | Positive Triangles over Skew-Fields | 118  |
| 22      | Positive Foundations over Skew-Fields | 120  |
| 23      | Mixed Foundations over Skew-Fields | 122  |
| 24      | Negative Foundations | 125  |
| 25      | Conclusion | 126  |
Part V  Jordan Automorphisms of Alternative Division Rings

26 Composition Algebras and Norm Similarities 131

27 Jordan Homomorphisms 132
   27.1 Basic Definitions and Basic Properties 132
   27.2 Jordan Homomorphisms on Fields 133

28 Jordan Automorphisms 134
   28.1 Jordan Automorphisms on Subfields 134
   28.2 Jordan Automorphisms and Norm Similarities 134
   28.3 The Structure of $\text{Aut}_J(\Omega)$ 136
   28.4 Conclusion 140

Part VI  Moufang Sets

29 Basic Definitions 143

30 Examples 144

31 The Isomorphism Problem for Moufang Sets 145
   31.1 Results 145
   31.2 $M(L_0, K, q) \cong M(\tilde{A})$ 147
   31.3 $M(K, K_0, L_0) \cong M(\tilde{A})$ 150
   31.4 $M(K, K_0, \sigma) \cong M(\tilde{A})$ 151
   31.5 $M(L_0, K, q) \cong M(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q})$ 151

Part VII  An Inventory of Moufang Polygons

32 Parametrized Moufang Polygons 159

33 Parametrized Quadrangles 163
   33.1 Quadrangles of Involutive Type 163
   33.2 Quadrangles of Pseudo-Quadratic Form Type 164
   33.3 Quadrangles of Quadratic Form Type 165
   33.4 Quadrangles of Indifferent Type 166
   33.5 Quadrangles of Type $E_n, F_4$ 166

34 The Moufang Sets of Moufang Polygons 167

Part VIII  Foundations

35 Definition 171

36 Root Group Systems 172

37 Foundations and Root Group Systems 173

38 Reparametrizations and Isomorphisms 175
Contents

Part IX  443-Foundations

39 Definition 179
40 The Quadrangles Are Not of Type $E_n$ 179
41 The Quadrangles Are Not of Type $F_4$ 180
42 The Quadrangles Are Not of Indifferent Type 180
43 Unitary Quadrangles 181
   43.1 Definitions ........................................ 181
   43.2 Quadrangles of Pseudo-Quadratic Form Type .......... 183
   43.3 Quadrangles of Involutory Type ........................ 185
44 Quadrangles of Quadratic Form Type 187
45 Conclusion 190

Appendix

46 $\tilde{A}_2$-Buildings Revisited 195
47 Jordan Automorphisms of Octonion Division Algebras Revisited 197
48 The Defining Field Revisited 198
49 Introduction in German 198

Bibliography 205
List of Symbols 206
List of Foundations 208
List of Results 209
Index 209

Selbständigkeitsklärung 213
Introduction
Introduction

Historical and Theoretical Context

The description below closely follows those given in [MLoc] and [AB].

Twin Buildings

Buildings have been introduced by J. Tits in order to study semi-simple algebraic groups from a geometrical point of view. One of the most important results in the theory of buildings is the classification of irreducible spherical buildings of rank at least 3 in [T74]. Meanwhile, there is a simplified proof in [TW] which makes use of the classification of Moufang polygons.

About 25 years ago, M. Ronan and J. Tits defined a new class of buildings, which generalize spherical buildings in a natural way, namely the class of twin buildings. The motivation of their definition is provided by the theory of Kac-Moody groups, and we refer to [T92] for further general information about twin buildings.

The sense in which twin buildings generalize spherical buildings is the following: Given a building of spherical type, there is a natural opposition relation on the set of its chambers. This relation restricts the structure of spherical buildings essentially. The classification of irreducible spherical buildings of rank at least 3 mentioned above is in fact based on this opposition relation. The idea of a twin building is to introduce a symmetric relation between the chambers of two different buildings of the same type which has properties similar to the opposition relation of a spherical building. Thus a twin building is a triple consisting of two buildings of the same type and an opposition relation between the chambers of the two “halves” of the twin building.

The Classification Program for 2-Spherical Twin Buildings

In view of the classification of spherical buildings, it is natural to ask whether it is possible to classify higher rank twin buildings. A large part of [T92] deals with this question. As a first observation, it turns out that such a classification seems only to be feasible under the additional assumption that the entries in the corresponding Coxeter matrices are all finite. We call these buildings 2-spherical. The classification program described in [T92] is based on the conjecture that there is a bijective correspondence between twin buildings of type $M$ and certain Moufang foundations of type $M$ for each 2-spherical Coxeter diagram of type $M$.

Foundations have been introduced by M. Ronan and J. Tits in [RT] in order to describe chamber systems which are candidates for being the local structure of a building. Roughly speaking, foundations can be seen as amalgams of rank 2 buildings which are glued along certain rank 1 residues. Given a chamber $c$ of a building $B$ of type $M$, the union $E_2(c)$ of the rank 2 residues which contain this chamber constitutes a foundation of type $M$, the foundation of $B$ at $c$. Thus the term “local structure” above has to be understood as a kind of 2-neighbourhood of a given chamber of a building.

It is a (not completely trivial) fact that if two chambers are contained in the same half of a twin building, the foundations at these chamber are isomorphic. Moreover, if one knows the isomorphism class of the foundation of one half of a twin building, then the isomorphism class of the foundations of the other half is uniquely determined. Conversely, a generalization of Tits’ extension theorem by B. Mühlherr and M. Ronan in [MR] states that a twin building is uniquely determined by the foundation of one of its halves in almost all cases, cf. (5.10), (*5.11), (*9.11) and (*9.12) of [AB] for a summary. Thus the foundation at a chamber of a twin building is a classifying invariant of the corresponding twin building if the following condition is satisfied:

(CO) No rank 2 residue is isomorphic to one of the buildings which are associated with the groups $B_2(2)$, $G_2(2)$, $G_2(3)$ and $^2F_4(2)$.

This condition guarantees that for every chamber $c \in B_\epsilon$ ($\epsilon \in \{\pm\}$), the set $c^\circ$ of chambers opposite $c$ is a gallery-connected subset of $B_\epsilon$.

In view of what has been mentioned so far, the classification of 2-spherical twin buildings reduces to the classification of all foundations which can be realized as the local structure of a twin building. We call such a foundation integrable. In order to determine the integrable foundations, one proceeds in two steps.
Introduction

Step 1: Exclude Non-Integrable Foundations

It is proved in [T92] that an integrable foundation is Moufang, which means that the rank 2 buildings in the foundation are Moufang, i.e., they are Moufang polygons, and that the glueings are compatible with the Moufang structures induced on the rank 1 residues. Thus a first necessary condition for the integrability of a foundation is that it is Moufang.

As a consequence, the classification of Moufang polygons in [TW] and the solution of the isomorphism problem for Moufang sets are essential to work out which Moufang polygons fit together in order to form a foundation. Moreover, one can reduce the list of possibly integrable foundations by considering certain automorphisms of the twin building, the so-called Hua automorphisms, which are closely related to the double $\mu$-maps of the appearing Moufang sets.

Step 2: Existence / Integrability Proof

Finally, one has to prove that each of the remaining candidates is in fact integrable, i.e., realized by a twin building, which is then unique up to isomorphism. In [MLoc] and his Habilitationsschrift [MHab], B. Mühlherr developed techniques which produce certain twin buildings as fixed point structures in twin buildings coming from Kac-Moody groups. He, H. Petersson and R. Weiss actually prepare a book which provides further well-founded background.

Goals and Main Results

The present thesis contributes to establish complete lists of integrable foundations for certain types of diagrams. We closely follow the approach for the classification of spherical buildings in [TW]. However, we have to refine the techniques, since in general, foundations don’t only depend on the diagram and the defining field. For example, there may be several non-isomorphic foundations of type $\tilde{A}_n$ with respect to a given skew-field $A$: Automorphisms of $A$ are involved as well, which represents the fact that there are several possibilities for glueing Moufang polygons along a rank 1 residue.

The main question is how to parametrize sequences of Moufang polygons with respect to the usual commutator relations in order to make the glueings visible. The crucial subtlety is the following: Each Moufang polygon is parametrized twice, once for each direction in which the underlying root group sequence can be read. As a consequence, we obtain glueings between directed Moufang polygons, and it’s a difference whether we look at $\text{id}_A : A \to A$ or $\text{id}_A^\circ : A \to A^\circ$, where $A^\circ$ is the opposite with respect to $A$: The former is an isomorphism, while the latter is an anti-isomorphism of skew-fields.

As mentioned above, excluding non-integrable foundations is closely related to the investigation of Moufang sets and their isomorphisms. Therefore, a large part deals with the introduction of underlying parameter systems and, in the sequel, with the solution of the isomorphism problem for Moufang sets. Many questions have already been answered, cf. [K], but we need to refine and extend the existing results for our purposes and translate their proofs into our setup.

Simply Laced Foundations

The main result of this thesis is the complete classification of simply laced twin buildings via their foundations. Of course, the basic requirement for a foundation to be integrable is that it is Moufang: Its glueings are Jordan isomorphisms, i.e., they preserve the Jordan product $xgy$.

A powerful tool is Hua’s theorem, cf. [H] for a reference, which answers the isomorphism problem for Moufang sets of skew-fields: Each Jordan isomorphism is in fact an iso- or anti-isomorphism of skew-fields. However, the class of parameter systems for Moufang triangles additionally includes octonion division algebras, which cause a lot of trouble due to the lack of associativity. A byproduct is the existence of Jordan isomorphisms which are neither iso- nor anti-isomorphisms of alternative rings. The most sophisticated part is the handling of the exceptional cases where octonions occur.

We give an overview of the restriction process and point out the main ideas.
The following observations yield the first restriction of possibilities:

1. Each Moufang triangle is defined over the same alternative division ring $A$.

2. An integrable foundation of type $A_3$ is necessarily defined over a skew-field, and the glueing is necessarily an isomorphism of skew-fields.

Thus the crucial step is the classification of integrable foundations of type $\tilde{A}_2$ since these are the smallest ones which allow weird “non-standard” things to appear. The theory of affine and Bruhat-Tits buildings and the theory of composition algebras which are complete with respect to a discrete valuation enable us to get further restrictions:

3. Given an octonion division algebra $O$, there is only one twin building of type $\tilde{A}_2$ with respect to $O$.

4. An integrable foundation of type $\tilde{A}_2$ whose glueings are anti-isomorphisms is necessarily defined over a quaternion division algebra, and given a quaternion division algebra $H$, there is only one such “positive” twin building of type $\tilde{A}_2$ with respect to $H$.

A closer look at the group of Jordan automorphisms of octonion division algebras completes the classification of integrable foundations which are defined over octonions:

5. There are no integrable foundations over octonions such that the corresponding graph is a tetrahedron. In particular, up to isomorphism, the only integrable foundations with respect to an octonion division algebra $O$ are $A_2(O) = T(O)$ and $\tilde{A}_2(O)$.

Finally, in connection with (4), the following observation heavily restricts the list of integrable foundations over non-commutative skew-fields which are not quaternion division algebras:

6. An integrable foundation of type $D_4$ is necessarily defined over a field.

Kac-Moody theory provides the integrability proofs as the corresponding Coxeter diagram is a tree. The remaining integrability proofs rely on techniques developed by B. Mühlherr.

**Jordan Automorphisms of Alternative Division Rings**

In view of Hua’s theorem

$$\text{Aut}_J(\mathbb{D}) = \text{Aut}(\mathbb{D}) \cup \text{Aut}^o(\mathbb{D})$$

for any skew-field $\mathbb{D}$, its group $\text{Aut}_J(\mathbb{D})$ of Jordan automorphisms, its subgroup $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ of automorphisms and its set $\text{Aut}^o(\mathbb{D})$ of anti-automorphisms, the question arises whether it is possible to get a similar result for octonion division algebras.

In the proof that integrable tetrahedron-foundations over an octonion division algebra $O$ do not exist, we define a subset $\Gamma \subset \text{Aut}_J(O)$ which turns out to not contain the standard involution $\sigma_s$. The elements of $\Gamma$ are automorphisms of $O$ multiplied with one of the “exceptional” Jordan automorphisms as defined in [TW], which fix a quaternion subalgebra $H$ pointwise and which act on the orthogonal complement of $H$ as conjugation.

The fact that $\Gamma$ is a subgroup of $\text{Aut}_J(O)$ can be deduced from the knowledge about the automorphism group of the corresponding Moufang triangle $T(O)$. This subgroup $\Gamma$ corresponds to the subgroup $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$ in Hua’s theorem, i.e., we obtain

$$\text{Aut}_J(O) = \langle \sigma_s, \Gamma \rangle = \Gamma \cup \sigma_s \Gamma .$$

The strategy for the proof is as follows:

1. Jordan automorphisms restricted to subfields are monomorphisms of rings, i.e., the image of a subfield is again a subfield.

2. As an immediate consequence, Jordan automorphisms of octonions are norm similarities.

3. The results of [Sp] allow us to restrict to isometries which fix a quaternion subalgebra pointwise.

4. Hua’s theorem and the Skolem-Noether theorem allow us to show that any Jordan automorphism is indeed a product in $\langle \sigma_s, \Gamma \rangle$. 
**443-Foundations**

The second result in connection with the classification of twin buildings is the completion of step 1 for 443-foundations whose diagram is a triangle and whose Moufang polygons are two quadrangles and one triangle. Although we only deal with a single diagram in this case, there is a rich variety of integrable 443-foundations as there are six families of Moufang quadrangles which often fit together in this configuration. Nevertheless, quadrangles of type $E_n$, of type $F_4$ and of indifferent type don’t appear since their Moufang sets are not of linear type, i.e., they aren’t projective lines.

The same holds for Moufang sets of pseudo-quadratic form and involutory type, but the second panel of the corresponding unitary quadrangle is of linear type so that there is exactly one possibility for the orientation of the quadrangles. The solution of the isomorphism problem for the appearing Moufang sets and the knowledge about the automorphism group of a unitary quadrangle allow us to show the following:

1. The appearing pseudo-quadratic spaces are defined over a quaternion division algebra $\mathbb{H}$ or over a separable quadratic extension $\mathbb{E}$.

2. In the former case, there is exactly one possibly integrable 443-foundation with respect to such a pseudo-quadratic space $\Xi$.

3. In the latter case, the isomorphism class of a possibly integrable 443-foundations additionally depends on an automorphism $\gamma \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{E})$.

4. The appearing involutory sets are defined over a quaternion division algebra $\mathbb{H}$, and there is exactly one possibly integrable 443-foundation with respect to such an involutory set $\Xi$.

Finally, quadrangles of quadratic form type are the most flexible ones since there are Moufang sets which are both of quadratic form type and of linear type so that they can glued together in any orientation. Furthermore, there is one point where we need to restrict to proper quadratic spaces as parametrizing structures to exclude characteristic 2 phenomenons in order to obtain a satisfying description.

In contrast to the classification of integrable simply laced foundations however, we omit step 2 in the classification program as the proofs require different kinds of techniques, established by B. Mühlherr, H. Petersson and R. Weiss. As before, there are two possibilities how to show the integrability of a given foundation: Either the universal cover is isomorphic to a canonical foundation, which is a foundation such that each glueing is the identity map and thus integrable if it the corresponding diagram is a tree, or the foundation can be obtained as a fixed point structure via a Tits index. The former method applies to 443-foundations with quadrangles of quadratic form type, while the latter applies to 443-foundations with unitary quadrangles.

**Jordan Isomorphisms of Pseudo-Quadratic Spaces**

Hua’s theorem is essential for the classification of integrable simply laced foundations. In the same spirit, the solution of the isomorphism problem for the appearing Moufang sets is essential for the classification of integrable 443-foundations. As mentioned above, R. Knop handles a lot of cases in his PhD thesis [K]. However, he only deals with commutative Moufang sets. Thus we need to establish the corresponding results for Moufang sets of pseudo-quadratic form type.

We obtain that Jordan isomorphism between two Moufang sets of pseudo-quadratic form type are induced by isomorphisms of the corresponding pseudo-quadratic spaces in almost all cases, i.e., whenever the dimension is at least 3 or the involved involutory set is proper. As a consequence, exceptions necessarily involve pseudo-quadratic spaces of small dimensions which are defined over a quaternion division algebra or over a separable quadratic extension. Luckily, these exceptional cases don’t occur in the classification of integrable 443-foundations. As a consequence, both the quadrangles are defined over the same pseudo-quadratic space $\Xi$. 

- 6 -
Outlook and Open Problems

Jordan Isomorphisms

In the theory of Moufang sets, the $\mu$-maps and the Hua maps play a central role as they carry a lot of information. As a consequence, Jordan isomorphisms – which are additive isomorphisms preserving the Hua maps – are closely related to isomorphisms of Moufang sets. In fact, each isomorphism of Moufang sets is a Jordan isomorphism since the Hua maps can be expressed in terms of sums and the permutation $\tau$.

In this context, the following question naturally arises: Is each Jordan isomorphism an isomorphism of Moufang sets? Of course, the Hua maps of sharply 2-transitive Moufang sets are trivial. Therefore, the question has to be answered negatively for these “non-proper” Moufang sets. But experts in the area such as R. Weiss and T. De Medts are optimistic that both the definitions are equivalent if we restrict to proper Moufang sets.

The Classification Program

The main conjecture in connection with the classification program is the following, cf. page 5 in [MHab]:

A Moufang foundation of 2-spherical type is integrable if and only if each of its rank 3 residues is integrable.

In his Habilitationsschrift [MHab], B. Mühlherr indicates that one could prove the conjecture under the additional assumption that all rank 3 residues are spherical, which is of course a severe restriction. However, there isn’t any written proof yet.

Once one has proved the conjecture, the classification program reduces to the classification of integrable Moufang foundations of rank 3. Most of them can be handled with the methods established in [MHab] and [MLoc]. However, there are some exceptions, the most complicated of which are foundations of type $\tilde{C}_2$, $\tilde{A}_2$ and 443-foundations. The $\tilde{A}_2$- and the 443-case are solved in the present thesis, while there are (unpublished) partial results for the $\tilde{C}_2$-case by T. De Medts, B. Mühlherr, H. Van Maldeghem and R. Weiss.

The Classification of Simply Laced Twin Buildings

Although the classification of integrable simply laced foundations is complete, we don’t make any statement whether two given foundations in our list are isomorphic. By taking classifying invariants into account and introducing suitable parameters, one could create a list with pairwise non-isomorphic foundations.

If the underlying Coxeter diagram $G_F$ is a tree, the foundations $F$ depends only on the defining field. Circles in the diagram cause an additional dependence on “twists”, i.e., on automorphisms of the defining field $A$. More precisely:

- If $A$ is a field, an integrable foundation $F$ is uniquely determined by $G_F$ and a homomorphism $\varphi : \Pi_1(G_F) \to \text{Aut}(\hat{A})/\text{Inn}(\hat{A}) \cong \text{Aut}(\hat{A})$, where $\Pi_1(G_F)$ is the fundamental group of $G_F$.

- If $A$ is a skew-field distinct from a quaternion division algebra and $F$ is an integrable foundation of type $\tilde{A}_n$, the foundation is uniquely determined by $n$ and an element of $\text{Aut}(\hat{A})/\text{Inn}(\hat{A})$.

- If the defining field is a quaternion division algebra, then a similar result as in the field case holds.

Moreover, the integrability proofs might be improved at some points as soon as the applied theory is developed properly by B. Mühlherr, H. Petersson and R. Weiss.
Introduction

Finite Moufang Foundations

The introduced terminology and the methods of [MHab] can be used to show that each locally finite twin building of 2-spherical type is the fixed point building of a Galois action in the sense of B. Rémy, which means that it is of algebraic origin.

Acknowledgments

I would like to express my gratitude towards my primary advisor Bernhard Mühlherr for drawing my attention to the interesting field of Moufang foundations and their Moufang sets: It was a pleasure to contribute to the classification program for twin buildings. Many fruitful discussions showed me the right direction, i.e., the assertions that one should be able to prove and the way how to achieve it. His intuition is tremendous.

Furthermore, I would like to thank Richard Weiss, who raised the question for the generalization of Hua’s theorem and who laid the foundation for this thesis with his wonderful and detailed work on Moufang polygons, spherical and affine buildings as well as their classification. Many little questions could be answered with the aid of [TW], and if not, he always had the right idea where to look for the solution.

Ralf Köhl enhanced the work group with many nice people and gave me the opportunity to take part in a research project about compact subgroups of Kac-Moody groups. His enthusiasm and his dedication are impressive and build the basis for our prospering group.

Thanks go also to the following people: Tom De Medts who provided me a pleasant stay in Ghent during which we worked on the isomorphism problem for Moufang sets of pseudo-quadratic form type. And besides my family finally, there are so many friends who enriched my life with time, conversations and activities that were an essential contrast to the “abstract nonsense” called mathematics.

The most important factor which made the last five years a wonderful time of my life is the following: Bernhard and Ralf both endowed me with maximal flexibility in my academic work. In particular, this allowed me and two old friends of mine, Steffen Presse and Joram Gornowitz, to realize our ambitious cinema project.
Part I

Preliminaries
As we will have to reconstruct structure out of some given identities and as we will make use of several structures at the same time, it is important to have exact definitions and notations and to make precise statements, e.g., it is important to know whether we talk about an isomorphism as an isomorphism of algebras or as an isomorphism of vector spaces, and we avoid “identification”.

We start with giving the definitions of elementary structures such as vector spaces, algebras and graphs, then we proceed by introducing Coxeter matrices and Coxeter diagrams before we turn to twin buildings themselves.

Chapter 1 Notations

We fix some notations.

(1.1) Definition (Vector Spaces)

- A (right) vector space is a pair \((V, \mathbb{K})\) consisting of a commutative group \(V\) and a skew-field \(\mathbb{K}\) together with a scalar multiplication \(\cdot: V \times \mathbb{K} \to V\) satisfying
  \[
  \forall v \in V: \quad v \cdot 1_\mathbb{K} = v, \quad \forall v \in V, \quad s, t \in \mathbb{K}: \quad (v \cdot s) \cdot t = v \cdot (st)
  \]
  and
  \[
  \forall v, w \in V, \quad s, t \in \mathbb{K}: \quad (v + w) \cdot s = v \cdot s + w \cdot s, \quad v \cdot (s + t) = v \cdot s + v \cdot t.
  \]
- If \((V, \mathbb{K})\) is a vector space, we say that \(V\) is a \(\mathbb{K}\)-vector space or that \(V\) is a vector space over \(\mathbb{K}\).
- Two vector spaces \((V, \mathbb{K})\) and \((\tilde{V}, \tilde{\mathbb{K}})\) are isomorphic if there is a pair \((\varphi, \phi)\) of isomorphisms \(\varphi: V \to \tilde{V}\) and \(\phi: \mathbb{K} \to \tilde{\mathbb{K}}\) of groups and skew-fields, resp., satisfying
  \[
  \forall s \in \mathbb{K}, \quad v \in V: \quad \varphi(v \cdot s) = \varphi(v) \cdot \phi(s).
  \]
- If \((\varphi, \phi): (V, \mathbb{K}) \to (\tilde{V}, \tilde{\mathbb{K}})\) is an isomorphism of vector spaces, we say that \(\varphi\) is a \(\phi\)-isomorphism.
- Let \((V, \mathbb{K})\) be a vector space.
  - An automorphism \((\varphi, \phi)\) of \((V, \mathbb{K})\) with \(\phi = \text{id}_\mathbb{K}\) is linear.
  - We denote the group of (semi-linear) automorphisms of \((V, \mathbb{K})\) by \(\Gamma L(V, \mathbb{K})\).
  - We denote the group of linear automorphisms of \((V, \mathbb{K})\) by \(GL(V, \mathbb{K})\).

(1.2) Definition (Algebras)

- An algebra is a pair \((A, \mathbb{K})\) such that \(A\) is a vector space over a field \(\mathbb{K}\) together with a \(\mathbb{K}\)-bilinear map \(\cdot: A \times A \to A\).
- If \((A, \mathbb{K})\) is an algebra, we say that \(A\) is an algebra over \(\mathbb{K}\).
- An algebra \((A, \mathbb{K})\) is associative if the map \(\cdot: A \times A \to A\) is associative.
- Two algebras \((A, \mathbb{K})\) and \((\tilde{A}, \tilde{\mathbb{K}})\) are isomorphic if there is an isomorphism \((\varphi, \phi)\) of vector spaces satisfying
  \[
  \forall x, y \in A: \quad \varphi(x \cdot y) = \varphi(x) \cdot \varphi(y).
  \]
- If \((\varphi, \phi): (A, \mathbb{K}) \to (\tilde{A}, \tilde{\mathbb{K}})\) is an isomorphism of algebras, we say that \(\varphi\) is a \(\phi\)-isomorphism.
- Let \((A, \mathbb{K})\) be an algebra.
  - An automorphism \((\varphi, \phi)\) of \((A, \mathbb{K})\) with \(\phi = \text{id}_\mathbb{K}\) is linear.
  - We denote the group of (semi-linear) automorphisms of \((A, \mathbb{K})\) by \(\text{Aut}(A, \mathbb{K})\).
  - We denote the group of linear automorphisms of \((A, \mathbb{K})\) by \(\text{Aut}_L(A, \mathbb{K})\).
(1.3) Definition (Graphs)

- A graph is a pair \( G = (V, E) = (V(G), E(G)) \) consisting of a set of vertices \( V \) and a set of edges

\[
E \subseteq \binom{V}{2} := \{ X \subseteq V \mid |X| = 2 \} .
\]

- Given two graphs \( G = (V, E), \tilde{G} = (\tilde{V}, \tilde{E}) \), a morphism \( \varphi : G \to \tilde{G} \) of graphs is a map \( \varphi : V \to \tilde{V} \) such that

\[
\forall v, w \in V : \quad \{v, w\} \in E \Rightarrow \{\varphi(v), \varphi(w)\} \in \tilde{E} .
\]

- Given a graph \( G = (V, E) \), we set

\[
A(G) := \{(i, j) \in V^2 \mid \{i, j\} \in E \} ,
\]

which is the set of directed edges, and

\[
G(G) := \{(i, j, k) \in V^3 \mid (i, j) \neq (k, j) \in A(G) \} .
\]

- Given a graph \( G = (V, E) \) and a vertex \( v \in V \), the set of neighbours of \( v \) is

\[
B_1(v) := \{ w \in V \mid \{v, w\} \in E \} .
\]

- Given a graph \( G = (V, E) \), a cover of \( G \) is a pair \((\tilde{G}, \varphi)\) consisting of a graph \( \tilde{G} = (\tilde{V}, \tilde{E}) \) and an epimorphism \( \varphi : \tilde{V} \to V \) of graphs such that for each \( v \in \tilde{V} \), the map

\[
\varphi|_{B_1(v)} : B_1(v) \to B_1(\varphi(v))
\]

is a bijection.

(1.4) Example

Given the graph

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{3} \\
\text{1} \\
\text{2}
\end{array}
\]

the graphs

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{3} \\
\text{6} \\
\text{4} \\
\text{5} \\
\text{1} \\
\text{2}
\end{array}
\]

and

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{6} \\
\text{3}
\end{array}
\]

are covers, where

\[
\varphi : \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}, \quad z \mapsto \bar{z}
\]

is the natural homomorphism in both cases.
We only deal with Coxeter matrices such that $m_{ij} \neq \infty$ for all $i, j \in I$.

\textbf{Definition (Coxeter Matrices)}

- A (2-spherical) Coxeter matrix over (an index set) $I$ is a map $M : I \times I \to \mathbb{N}^*$ such that
  $$\forall i \in I : \ m_{ii} = 1 \ , \quad \forall i \neq j \in I : \ m_{ji} = m_{ij} > 1 \ ,$$
  where $m_{ij} := M(i,j)$ for all $i, j \in I$.

- Given two Coxeter matrices $M$ over $I$ and $\tilde{M}$ over $\tilde{I}$, a morphism $\varphi : M \to \tilde{M}$ of Coxeter matrices is a map $\varphi : I \to \tilde{I}$ such that
  $$\forall i, j \in I : \ m_{\varphi(i) \varphi(j)} = m_{ij} \ .$$

- Given a Coxeter matrix $M$ over $I$ and a subset $J \subseteq I$, we set $M_J := M_{\{j \mid j \in J\}}$.

\textbf{Definition (Coxeter Diagrams)}

- A (2-spherical) Coxeter diagram is a pair $(\mathcal{G}, \nu)$ consisting of a graph $\mathcal{G}$ and a map $\nu : E(\mathcal{G}) \to \mathbb{N}_{\geq 3}$.

- Given two Coxeter diagrams $(\mathcal{G}, \nu)$ and $(\tilde{\mathcal{G}}, \tilde{\nu})$, a morphism $\varphi : (\mathcal{G}, \nu) \to (\tilde{\mathcal{G}}, \tilde{\nu})$ of Coxeter diagrams is a morphism $\varphi : \mathcal{G} \to \tilde{\mathcal{G}}$ of graphs such that
  $$\forall \{i, j\} \in E(\mathcal{G}) : \ \tilde{\nu}(\{\varphi(i), \varphi(j)\}) = \nu(\{i, j\}) \ .$$

\textbf{Remark (1.8)}

(a) Given a Coxeter diagram $(\mathcal{G}, \nu)$, we indicate an edge such that $\nu(\{i,j\}) = 3$ by a single edge, an edge $\{i,j\}$ such that $\nu(\{i,j\}) = 4$ by a double edge, an edge $\{i,j\}$ such that $\nu(\{i,j\}) = 6$ by a triple edge and an edge $\{i,j\}$ such that $\nu(\{i,j\}) = 8$ by a quadruple edge.

(b) Given a Coxeter matrix $M$ over $I$, the corresponding Coxeter diagram is $\Pi_M := (\mathcal{G}_M, \nu_M)$ with $V(\mathcal{G}_M) := I$ and
  $$\forall i, j \in I : \ \{i,j\} \in E(\mathcal{G}_M) \iff m_{ij} \geq 3 \ , \quad \forall \{i,j\} \in E(\mathcal{G}_M) : \ \nu_M(\{i,j\}) := m_{ij} .$$
  We set
  $$V(\mathcal{G}) := V(\mathcal{G}_M) , \quad E(\mathcal{G}) := E(\mathcal{G}_M) , \quad A(\mathcal{G}) := A(\mathcal{G}_M) , \quad G(\mathcal{G}) := G(\mathcal{G}_M) .$$

(c) Let $CM$ be the set of Coxeter matrices and let $CD$ be the set of Coxeter diagrams. Then the map
  $$\Pi : CM \to CD, \ M \mapsto \Pi_M$$
  is a bijection such that $M \cong \tilde{M} \iff \Pi_M \cong \Pi_{\tilde{M}}$.

\textbf{Definition (Coxeter Systems)}

Let $M$ be a Coxeter matrix over $I$.

- The Coxeter group of type $M$ is the group
  $$W_M := \langle \{r_i \mid i \in I\} \mid \{(r_i r_j)^{m_{ij}} = 1 \mid i, j \in J\} \rangle .$$

- The Coxeter system of type $M$ is the pair $(W_M, r)$, where
  $$r : \text{Mon}(I) \to W_M, \ f \mapsto r_f$$
  is the unique extension of the map $r : I \to W_M, \ i \mapsto r_i$ to a homomorphism from the free monoid $\text{Mon}(I)$ on $I$ to $W_M$.
Chapter 2 Twin Buildings

As the main issue of this thesis is the classification of twin buildings, we give a rough overview of the main concepts and the main results which allow us to pass from the whole building to its local structure without loss of information. By theorem (2.26) and (2.27) below, each irreducible residue of rank 2 of an irreducible twin building of rank at least 3 is a Moufang polygon. As a consequence, we may exploit the classification of Moufang polygons in [TW].

(2.1) Definition (Chamber Systems)

- A chamber system over an index set $I$ is a set $\Delta$ (whose elements are called chambers) together with an equivalence relation $\sim_i$ on $\Delta$ (called $i$-equivalence) for each $i \in I$.
- Given a chamber system $\Delta$ over $I$ and $i \in I$, an $i$-panel is an $i$-equivalence class, and a panel is an $i$-panel for some $i \in I$.
- Given a chamber system $\Delta$ over $I$ and $i \in I$, two distinct chambers $x, y \in \Delta$ such that $x \sim_i y$ are called $i$-adjacent, and they are adjacent if they are $i$-adjacent for some $i \in I$.
- Given a chamber system $\Delta$ over $I$, chambers $x, y \in \Delta$ and $J \subseteq I$, a $J$-gallery of length $k$ from $x$ to $y$ is a sequence $\gamma = (x_0, \ldots, x_k) \subseteq \Delta^{k+1}$ for some $k \in \mathbb{N}$ such that
  
  $x_0 = x, \quad x_k = y, \quad \forall j \in \{1, \ldots, k\} \exists i_j \in J : x_{j-1} \sim_{i_j} x_j \land x_{j-1} \neq x_j,$

  a gallery from $x$ to $y$ is an $I$-gallery from $x$ to $y$, and we write $x \sim_J y$ if there is a $J$-gallery from $x$ to $y$.
- Given a chamber system $\Delta$ and chambers $x, y \in \Delta$, the distance $\text{dist}(x, y)$ from $x$ to $y$ is the length of a shortest gallery from $x$ to $y$ if there is one and $\infty$ otherwise.
- Given a chamber system $\Delta$ over $I$, chambers $x, y \in \Delta$ and a gallery $\gamma = (x_0, \ldots, x_k)$ from $x$ to $y$, the type of $\gamma$ is the word $i_1 \cdots i_k \in \text{Mon}(I)$.
- Given a chamber system $\Delta$ over $I$, a chamber $x \in \Delta$ and $J \subseteq I$, the $J$-residue of $x$ is

  $$\Delta_J(x) := \{y \in \Delta \mid x \sim_J y\}.$$  

  A residue is a $J$-residue $\Delta_J(x)$ for some chamber $x \in \Delta$ and some $J \subseteq I$.

(2.2) Definition (Buildings) Let $M$ be a Coxeter diagram over $I$ and let $(W_M, r)$ be the corresponding Coxeter system. A building of type $M$ is pair $B = (\Delta, \delta)$, where $\Delta$ is a chamber system over $I$ endowed with a function $\delta: \Delta \times \Delta \to W_M$ such that the following holds:

(B1) Each panel contains at least two chambers.

(B2) For each reduced word $f \in \text{Mon}(I)$ and for each ordered pair $(x, y)$ of chambers, we have $\delta(x, y) = r_f$ if and only if there is a gallery of type $f$ from $x$ to $y$.

(2.3) Remark Cf. definition (39.10) of [TW] for the definition of a reduced word.

(2.4) Definition (Standard Thin Buildings) Let $M$ be a Coxeter Matrix. Then the building $\Sigma(M) := (W_M, \delta_{W_M})$ with

$$\delta_{W_M}: W_M \times W_M \to W_M, \ (w_1, w_2) \mapsto w_1^{-1}w_2$$

is the standard thin building of type $M$.

(2.5) Remark Cf. example (5.7) of [AB] that $\Sigma(M)$ is a building of type $M$. 

Part I Preliminaries
(2.6) **Definition (Apartments)** Let $\mathcal{B} = (\Delta, \delta)$ be a building of type $M$ and let $X \subseteq W_M$.

- An *isometry from $X$ to $\mathcal{B}$* is a map $\pi : X \to \Delta$ such that
  \[
  \forall x, y \in X : \quad \delta(\pi x, \pi y) = x^{-1}y .
  \]
- An *apartment of $\mathcal{B}$* is the image $\Sigma$ of some isometry $\pi : W_M \to \Delta$.

(2.7) **Theorem (J-Residues)** Let $M$ be a Coxeter matrix over $I$, let $\mathcal{B} = (\Delta, \delta)$ be a building of type $M$, let $x \in \Delta$ and let $J \subseteq I$. Then the following holds:

(a) The *J-residue*

\[
\mathcal{B}_J(x) := (\Delta_J(x), \delta_{|\Delta_J(x) \times \Delta_J(x)})
\]

is a building of type $M_J$.

(b) If $\Sigma$ is an apartment of $\mathcal{B}$ such that $\Sigma \cap \mathcal{B}_J(x) \neq \emptyset$, then $\Sigma_J := \mathcal{B}_J(x) \cap \Sigma$ is an apartment of $\mathcal{B}_J(x)$.

(c) If $\Sigma_J$ is an apartment of $\mathcal{B}_J(x)$, then we have $\Sigma_J = \mathcal{B}_J(x) \cap \Sigma$ for some apartment $\Sigma$ of $\mathcal{B}.$

*Proof*  
This results from (39.52) of [TW]. \hfill \square

(2.8) **Definition (Roots)** Let $\mathcal{B}$ be a building of type $M$, let $\Sigma$ be an apartment of $\mathcal{B}$ and let $c$ be a chamber of $\Sigma$.

- A *root of $\Sigma$* is a subset $\alpha \subseteq \Sigma$ such that
  \[
  \alpha = \{ w \in \Sigma \mid \text{dist}(w, x) < \text{dist}(w, y) \}
  \]
  for some ordered pair $(x, y)$ of adjacent chambers. We denote the set of roots of $\Sigma$ by $\Phi(\mathcal{B}, \Sigma)$.

- A *root of $\mathcal{B}$* is a root of some apartment $\Sigma \subseteq \mathcal{B}$.

- Given $i \in I$, the *simple root $\alpha_i$ with respect to $(\Sigma, c)$* is the root
  \[
  \alpha_i := \{ w \in \Sigma \mid \text{dist}(w, c) < \text{dist}(w, c_i) \}
  \]
  where $c_i$ is the unique chamber of $\Sigma$ which is $i$-adjacent to $c$. We write $\Phi(\mathcal{B}, \Sigma, c)$ instead of $\Phi(\mathcal{B}, \Sigma)$ if we additionally take the simple roots with respect to $(\Sigma, c)$ into account.

(2.9) **Definition (Standard Root Systems)** Let $M$ be a Coxeter Matrix.

- The set $\Phi(M) := \Phi(\Sigma(M), \Sigma(M), 1_{W_M})$ of roots of $\Sigma(M)$ is the *standard root system of type $M$*.

- Given $\alpha, \beta \in \Phi(M)$, the pair $\{\alpha, \beta\}$ is *prenilpotent* if we have
  \[
  \alpha \triangleleft \beta \neq \emptyset \neq (-\alpha) \triangleleft (-\beta) .
  \]

In this case, we set
\[
[\alpha, \beta] := \{ \gamma \in \Phi(M) \mid \alpha \triangleleft \beta \subseteq \gamma, \ (-\alpha) \triangleleft (-\beta) \subseteq -\gamma \} , \quad (\alpha, \beta) := [\alpha, \beta] \setminus \{\alpha, \beta\} .
\]

(2.10) **Remark** Let $M$ be a Coxeter matrix over $I$, let $\Phi(M)$ be the standard root system of type $M$ and let $\alpha \in \Phi(M)$. Then we have
\[
\alpha = v\alpha_i = \{ v \cdot w \mid w \in \alpha_i \}
\]
for some $i \in I$ and some $v \in W_M$, cf. proposition (5.81) of [AB].
(2.11) Definition (Twin Buildings) Let $M$ be a Coxeter diagram over $I$. A twin building of type $M$ is a triple $B = (B_+, B_-, \delta^*)$, where each half $B_\epsilon = (\Delta_\epsilon, \delta_\epsilon)$ with $\epsilon \in \{\pm\}$ is a building of type $M$ and
\[
\delta^* : (\Delta_+ \times \Delta_+) \cup (\Delta_- \times \Delta_-) \to W_M
\]
is a codistance, i.e., given $\epsilon \in \{\pm\}$, $x \in \Delta_\epsilon$, $y \in \Delta_{-\epsilon}$ and $w := \delta^*(x, y)$, the following holds:

(C1) We have $\delta^*(y, x) = w^{-1}$.

(C2) Given $z \in \Delta_{-\epsilon}$, $i \in I$ such that $\delta_{-\epsilon}(y, z) = r_i$ and $l(wr_i) = l(w) - 1$, we have $\delta^*(x, z) = wr_i$.

(C3) Given $i \in I$, there exists a chamber $z \in \Delta_{-\epsilon}$ such that $\delta_{-\epsilon}(y, z) = r_i$ and $\delta^*(x, z) = wr_i$.

Here $l : W \to \mathbb{N}^*$ is the length function with respect to the set \{r_i | i \in I\} of generators.

(2.12) Definition (Opposite Chambers) Let $M$ be a Coxeter diagram over $I$, let $B$ be a twin building of type $M$, let $J \subseteq I$ and let $\epsilon \in \{\pm\}$.

- Two chambers $x \in B_\epsilon$ and $y \in B_{-\epsilon}$ such that $\delta^*(x, y) = 1$ are called opposite. We set

\[O_B := \{(x, y) \in B_+ \times B_- \mid \delta^*(x, y) = 1\} .\]

- Two residues $R_+ \subseteq B_+$ and $R_- \subseteq B_-$ such that

\[R_+ \times R_{-\epsilon} \cap O_B \neq \emptyset\]

are called opposite.

(2.13) Lemma Let $B$ be a twin building, let $\epsilon \in \{\pm\}$ and let $x \in B_\epsilon$. Then there exists a chamber $y \in B_{-\epsilon}$ such that $\delta^*(x, y) = 1$.

Proof This results from corollary (5.141) of [AB].

(2.14) Theorem (J-Residues) Let $M$ be a Coxeter diagram over $I$, let $B$ be a twin building of type $M$, let $J \subseteq I$, let $(x, y) \in O_B$ and let $B_J(x) := (B_+)_J(x)$, $B_J(y) := (B_-)_J(y)$. Then the $J$-residue
\[B_J(x, y) := (B_J(x), B_J(y), \delta^*_{|(B_J(x) \times B_J(y)) \cup (B_J(y) \times B_J(y))})\]

is a twin building of type $M_J$.

Proof By lemma (5.148) of [AB], we have
\[\delta(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) \in W_{M_J} \delta^*(x, y) W_{M_J} = W_{M_J} \cdot 1 : W_{M_J} = W_{M_J}\]
for all $\bar{x} \in B_J(x)$, $\bar{y} \in B_J(y)$.

(2.15) Corollary Let $M$ be a Coxeter diagram over $I$, let $B$ be a twin building of type $M$, let $\epsilon \in \{\pm\}$, let $x \in B_\epsilon$ and let $J \subseteq I$. Then $(B_\epsilon)_J(x)$ is the half of a twin building.

Proof By lemma (2.13), there is a chamber $y \in B_{-\epsilon}$ such that $\delta^*(x, y) = 1$, thus $(B_\epsilon)_J(x)$ is the half of a twin building by theorem (2.14).

(2.16) Notation Let $M$ be a Coxeter matrix over $I$ and let $B$ be a building of type $M$. Given a chamber $c \in B$, we define
\[E_2(c) := \{B_{(i, j)}(c) \mid i \neq j \in I\} .\]
(2.17) Definition (Twin Apartments) Let $B$ be a twin building.

- A twin apartment of $B$ is a pair $\Sigma = (\Sigma_+, \Sigma_-)$ of apartments $\Sigma_\epsilon$ of $B_\epsilon$ such that each chamber of $\Sigma_+ \cup \Sigma_-$ is opposite precisely one other chamber $\text{op}_\Sigma(c) \in \Sigma_+ \cup \Sigma_-$.  

- Given a twin apartment $\Sigma$, the map 
  \[
  \text{op}_\Sigma : \Sigma_+ \cup \Sigma_- \to \Sigma_+ \cup \Sigma_- \quad c \mapsto \text{op}_\Sigma(c)
  \]
  is the opposition involution with respect to $\Sigma$.

(2.18) Definition (Twin Roots) Let $B$ be a twin building and let $\Sigma$ be a twin apartment of $B$.

- A twin root of $\Sigma$ is a pair $\alpha = (\alpha_+, \alpha_-)$ of roots $\alpha_\epsilon$ of $\Sigma_\epsilon$ such that 
  \[
  \text{op}_\Sigma(\alpha) = -\alpha .
  \]

- We denote the set of twin roots of $\Sigma$ by $\Phi(B, \Sigma)$.

(2.19) Remark Let $B$ be a twin building. Given a twin apartment $\Sigma$ of $B$ and a root $\alpha_+ \in \Sigma_+$, then $\alpha_- := -\text{op}_\Sigma(\alpha_+)$ is the unique root of $\Sigma_-$ such that $\alpha := (\alpha_+, \alpha_-)$ is a twin root of $\Sigma$. As a consequence, the map 
  \[
  f : \Phi(B, \Sigma) \to \Phi(B_+ \times \Sigma_+), \quad (\alpha_+, \alpha_-) \mapsto \alpha_+
  \]
  is a bijection.

(2.20) Definition (Isometries and Automorphisms) Let $B = (B_+, B_-, \delta^*)$ be a twin building of type $M$ and let $\tilde{B} = (\tilde{B}_+, \tilde{B}_-, \tilde{\delta}^*)$ be a twin building of type $\tilde{M}$.

- An isometry of twin buildings is a triple $\phi = (\sigma, \phi_+, \phi_-)$ consisting of an isomorphism $\sigma : M \to \tilde{M}$ of Coxeter diagrams and maps $\phi_\epsilon : B_\epsilon \to \tilde{B}_\epsilon$ such that  
  \[
  \forall c_\epsilon, d_\epsilon \in B_\epsilon : \quad \tilde{\delta}_\epsilon(\phi_\epsilon(c_\epsilon), \phi_\epsilon(d_\epsilon)) = \sigma(\delta^*_\epsilon(c_\epsilon, d_\epsilon))
  \]
  and  
  \[
  \forall c_\epsilon \in B_\epsilon, c_- \epsilon \in B_{-\epsilon} : \quad \tilde{\delta}^*_\epsilon(\phi_\epsilon(c_\epsilon), \phi_{-\epsilon}(c_- \epsilon)) = \sigma(\delta^*_\epsilon(c_\epsilon, c_- \epsilon))
  \]

- An isomorphism of twin buildings is a surjective isometry $\phi : B \to \tilde{B}$.

- An automorphism of $B$ is an isomorphism $\phi : B \to B$. We denote the group of automorphisms of $B$ by $\text{Aut}(B)$.

- An automorphism $\phi \in \text{Aut}(B)$ is special if we have $\sigma = \text{id}_M$. We denote the group of special automorphisms of $B$ by $\text{Aut}_0(B)$.

(2.21) Definition (Strongly Transitive Actions) Let $B$ be a twin building and let $G$ be a group.

- An action of $G$ on $B$ is a homomorphism  
  \[
  \varphi : G \to \text{Aut}(B) .
  \]

- An action $\varphi : G \to \text{Aut}(B)$ is strongly transitive if the action is transitive on the set 
  \[
  \{(\Sigma, c) \mid \Sigma \text{ is a twin apartment of } B, \ c \in O_\Sigma \} .
  \]
Part I Preliminaries

(2.22) Theorem Let $\mathcal{B}$ be a Moufang twin building. Then $\text{Aut}_0(\mathcal{B})$ acts strongly transitively on $\mathcal{B}$.

Proof This results from proposition (8.19) of [AB].

(2.23) Theorem (Extension Theorem) Let $\mathcal{B}, \tilde{\mathcal{B}}$ be thick (2-spherical) twin buildings of the same type. Assume that $\mathcal{B}$ and $\tilde{\mathcal{B}}$ satisfy condition (CO). Given $c \in \mathcal{O}_B$ and $\tilde{c} \in \mathcal{O}_{\tilde{B}}$ and a surjective isometry
$$\phi : E_2(c_+) \cup \{\tilde{c}_-\} \to E_2(\tilde{c}_+) \cup \{\tilde{c}_-\},$$
there is a unique extension of $\phi$ to an isomorphism $\phi : \mathcal{B} \to \tilde{\mathcal{B}}$ of twin buildings. (A building is thick if each panel contains at least three chambers.)

Proof Cf. theorem (5.213) of [AB]. Notice that our buildings are 2-spherical by definition.

(2.24) Definition (Root Groups and the Moufang Property) Let $\mathcal{B}$ be a twin building of rank at least 2, where the rank of a building of type $M$ is just $|V(M)|$.

- Given a twin root $\alpha$, the corresponding root group is
$$U_\alpha := \{g \in \text{Aut}(\mathcal{B}) \mid g \text{ acts trivially on each panel of } \alpha^o\},$$
where $\alpha^o$ is the set of all panels of $\mathcal{B}$ which contain at least two chambers in $\alpha$.

- The building $\mathcal{B}$ is Moufang if it is thick and if for each root $\alpha$ of $\mathcal{B}$, the root group $U_\alpha$ acts transitively on the set of twin apartments containing $\alpha$.

- The building $\mathcal{B}$ is strictly Moufang if the actions of the root groups are simply transitive.

(2.25) Remark A Moufang twin building whose Coxeter diagram has no isolated nodes is strictly Moufang, cf. p. 455 of [AB].

(2.26) Theorem Every thick, irreducible twin building of rank at least 3 that satisfies condition (CO) is Moufang.

Proof This is theorem (8.27) of [AB]. Notice that our buildings are 2-spherical by definition.

(2.27) Theorem Let $\mathcal{B}$ be a Moufang twin building. Then every spherical residue of $\mathcal{B}$ is Moufang.

Proof This is proposition (8.21) of [AB].

(2.28) Corollary Let $\mathcal{B}$ be a thick, irreducible twin building of rank at least 3. Then each residue of rank 2 is also Moufang. In particular, the irreducible residues of rank 2 are Moufang polygons.

Proof This results from remark (8.30)(a) of [AB]. Notice that our buildings are 2-spherical by definition.
(2.29) **Definition (RGD System)** Let $M$ be a Coxeter matrix, let $\Phi := \Phi(M)$, let $G$ be a group, let $(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \Phi}$ be a family of non-trivial subgroups of $G$ and let

$$T := \bigcap_{\alpha \in \Phi} N_G(U_\alpha).$$

Then the pair $(G,(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \Phi})$ is an **RGD system of type $M$** if the following holds:

1. (RGD1) We have $[U_\alpha, U_\beta] \leq U_{\{\alpha, \beta\}}$ for all $\alpha \neq \beta$ such that $\{\alpha, \beta\}$ is prenilpotent.
2. (RGD2) Given $i \in I$, there is a function $\mu : U^*_\alpha \to G$ such that we have
   \[ \forall u \in U^*_\alpha, \mu(u) \in U_{-\alpha} u U_{-\alpha}, \quad \forall u \in U^*_\alpha, \alpha \in \Phi : \mu(u) U_\alpha \mu(u)^{-1} = U_{r_\alpha}. \]
3. (RGD3) Given $i \in I$, we have $U_{-\alpha} \not\leq U_+$, where
   \[ U_\epsilon := \langle U_\alpha \mid \alpha \in \Phi_\epsilon \rangle, \quad \Phi_+ := \{ \alpha \in \Phi \mid 1 \in \alpha \}, \quad \Phi_- := \{ \alpha \in \Phi \mid 1 \notin \alpha \}. \]
4. (RGD4) We have $G = T(U_\alpha \mid \alpha \in \Phi)$.

(2.30) **Theorem** The following holds:

(a) Each RGD system $(G,(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \Phi})$ gives rise to a twin building $B(G,(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \Phi})$.

(b) Let $B$ be a twin building of type $M$, let $\Sigma$ be a twin apartment of $B$, let $c \in O_\Sigma$, let $G := \text{Aut}(B)$, let $\Phi := \Phi(B,\Sigma,c)$ and let $(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \Phi}$ be the family of root groups with respect to $(\Sigma,c)$. Then the pair $(G,(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \Phi})$ is an RGD system of type $M$, and $B$ is uniquely determined by this RGD system, i.e., we have $B \cong B(G,(U_\alpha)_{\alpha \in \Phi})$.

**Proof**

(a) This is theorem (8.81) of [AB].

(b) The first statement is example (8.47)(a) of [AB] while the second one results from theorem (8.9) of [AB].

(2.31) **Proposition** Let $M$ be a Coxeter matrix over $I$, let $B$ be a strictly Moufang twin building of type $M$, let $\Sigma$ be a twin apartment of $B$ and let $c \in O_\Sigma$. Let $J \subseteq I$ be such that $M_J$ has no isolated nodes, let $B_J := B_J(c)$ and let $\alpha_J$ be a root of $\Sigma_J = \Sigma \cap B_J$. Then there is a unique root $\alpha$ of $\Sigma$ such that $\alpha_J = \alpha \cap \Sigma_J$, and the restriction map

$$\rho : U_\alpha \to U_{\alpha_J}$$

is an isomorphism of groups.

**Proof**

For spherical buildings this is proposition (7.32) of [AB], and the arguments given in its proof go through in the twin case without much change.
(2.32) **Theorem** Let $M$ be an irreducible Coxeter matrix over $I$ such that $|I| \geq 3$, let $\mathcal{B}$ be a thick Moufang twin building of type $M$, let $\Sigma$ be a twin apartment of $\mathcal{B}$, let $c \in \mathcal{O}_\Sigma$ and let $\Phi := \Phi(\mathcal{B}, \Sigma, c)$. Let $(i,j) \in A(M)$, $\mathcal{B}_{ij} := \mathcal{B}_{\{i,j\}}(c)$ and $n := m_{ij}$. Then the following holds:

(a) The residue $\mathcal{B}_{ij}$ is a Moufang $n$-gon.

(b) The intersection $\Sigma_{ij} := \Sigma \cap \mathcal{B}_{ij}$ is an apartment of $\mathcal{B}_{ij}$, and the roots $\alpha_i \cap \mathcal{B}_{ij}$ and $\alpha_j \cap \mathcal{B}_{ij}$ form a root basis of $\mathcal{B}_{ij}$.

(c) Let
\[
(\bar{\omega}_1 = \alpha_i \cap \mathcal{B}_{ij}, \bar{\omega}_2, \ldots, \bar{\omega}_{n-1}, \bar{\omega}_n = \alpha_j \cap \mathcal{B}_{ij})
\]
be the root sequence of $\mathcal{B}_{ij}$ from $\alpha_i \cap \mathcal{B}_{ij}$ to $\alpha_j \cap \mathcal{B}_{ij}$. Then there are exactly $n$ roots $\omega_1 = \alpha_i, \omega_2, \ldots, \omega_n = \alpha_j$ of $\Sigma$ such that
\[
\forall 1 \leq i \leq n:\quad \bar{\omega}_i = \omega_i \cap \mathcal{B}_{ij}.
\]

(d) For $i = 1, \ldots, n$ let $U_i := U_{\omega_i}$, let $U_{[\alpha_i, \alpha_j]} := U_1 \cdots U_n$ and let
\[
\Theta_{(i,j)} := (U_{[\alpha_i, \alpha_j]}, U_1, \ldots, U_n).
\]
Then $\Theta_{(i,j)}$ is isomorphic to the root group sequence of $\mathcal{B}_{ij}$ from $\alpha_i \cap \mathcal{B}_{ij}$ to $\alpha_j \cap \mathcal{B}_{ij}$.

**Proof**

(a) This is corollary (2.28).

(b) The first assertion results from theorem (2.7) (b), and by definition, the roots $\alpha_i \cap \mathcal{B}_{ij}$ and $\alpha_j \cap \mathcal{B}_{ij}$ are simple roots of $\Sigma_{ij}$.

(c) This results from proposition (2.31).

(d) This results from proposition (2.31).

(2.33) **Definition (Double $\mu$-Maps)** Let $M$ be a Coxeter matrix over $I$, let $\mathcal{B}$ be a Moufang twin building of type $M$, let $\Sigma$ be a twin apartment of $\mathcal{B}$, let $c \in \mathcal{O}_\Sigma$ and let $\Phi := \Phi(\mathcal{B}, \Sigma, c)$. Let $i \in I$, let $a,b \in U_{\alpha_i}^*$ and let $\mu(a), \mu(b)$ be as in (RGD2). Then the map
\[
h_{a,b} : \langle U_{\alpha} \mid \alpha \in \Phi \rangle \to \langle U_{\alpha} \mid \alpha \in \Phi \rangle, u \mapsto \mu(a)^{-1} \mu(b) u \mu(b)^{-1} \mu(a)
\]
is the double $\mu$-map with respect to $a,b$.

(2.34) **Remark**

(a) We have $h_{a,b} \in T$ for all $a,b \in U_{\alpha_i}^*$.

(b) By (3) in section (7.8.2) of [AB], the $\mu$-maps in (RGD2) are uniquely determined.

(2.35) **Theorem** Let $M$ be an irreducible Coxeter matrix over $I$ such that $|I| \geq 3$, let $\mathcal{B}$ be a thick Moufang twin building of type $M$, let $\Sigma$ be a twin apartment of $\mathcal{B}$, let $c \in \mathcal{O}_\Sigma$ and let $\Phi := \Phi(\mathcal{B}, \Sigma, c)$. Let $(i,j) \in A(M)$, let $\mathcal{B}_{ij} := \mathcal{B}_{\{i,j\}}(c)$, let $\Sigma_{ij} := \Sigma \cap \mathcal{B}_{ij}$ and let $\Phi_{ij} := \Phi(\mathcal{B}_{ij}, \Sigma_{ij}, c)$. Then we have
\[
\forall a \in U_{\alpha_i}^*: \quad \mu^{\mathcal{B}_{ij}}(\rho(a)) = \rho(\mu^{\mathcal{B}}(a)),
\]
where $\rho : U_{[\alpha_i, \alpha_j]} \to \text{Aut}(\mathcal{B}_{ij})$ is the restriction homomorphism. In particular, we have
\[
\forall a,b \in U_{\alpha_i}^*: \quad h_{\rho(a), \rho(b)}^{\mathcal{B}_{ij}} = \rho \circ h_{a,b}^{\mathcal{B}} \circ \rho^{-1}.
\]
Proof
Given a root $\bar{\alpha} \in \Phi_{ij}$, let $\alpha \in \Phi$ be the unique root of $\Sigma$ such that $\bar{\alpha} = \alpha \cap \Sigma_{ij}$. By proposition (2.31), the map $\rho : U_{\bar{\alpha}} \to U_{\bar{\alpha}}$ is an isomorphism of groups for each root $\bar{\alpha} \in \Phi_{ij}$. Given $a \in U_{\bar{\alpha}}^*$, we have

$$\rho(\mu^B(a)) \in \rho(U_{-\alpha}aU_{-\alpha}) = U_{-\bar{\alpha}}, \rho(a)U_{-\bar{\alpha}},$$

and

$$\forall \alpha \in \Phi_{ij} : \quad \rho(\mu^B(a))U_{\alpha}\rho(\mu^B(a))^{-1} = \rho(\mu^B(a)U_{\alpha}\mu^B(a)^{-1}) = \rho(U_{r,\bar{\alpha}}) = U_{r,\bar{\alpha}}.$$

and thus

$$\mu^{B,ij}(\rho(a)) = \rho(\mu^B(a))$$

by remark (2.34) (b).
Part II

Parameter Systems
In this part, we introduce the parameter systems which arise in the description of Moufang
triangles and the six families of Moufang quadrangles. Moreover, we collect the basic results
which will be needed for the classification of twin buildings, and, closely related, the solution of
the isomorphism problem for Moufang sets.

For a detailed reference on these subjects, see [TW]. Concerning alternative rings, we additionally refer to [RSch].

Chapter 3 Alternative Rings

Alternative division rings are the parametrizing structures for Moufang triangles, the building
bricks for simply laced twin buildings.

§ 3.1 Basic Definitions and Basic Properties

(3.1) Definition An alternative ring is a triple \((\mathbb{A}, +, \cdot)\) such that the following holds:

(A1) The pair \((\mathbb{A}, +)\) is a commutative group.

(A2) The multiplication \(\cdot : \mathbb{A} \times \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A}\) is biadditive.

(A3) The multiplication \(\cdot : \mathbb{A} \times \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A}\) is alternative, i.e., it satisfies

\[
\forall x, y \in \mathbb{A} : [x, x, y] = 0_{\mathbb{A}} = [y, x, x].
\]

where \([x, y, z] := (xy)z - x(yz)\) is the associator of \(x, y, z \in \mathbb{A}\).

(A4) There is an identity element \(1_{\mathbb{A}}\).

(3.2) Lemma An alternative ring \(\mathbb{A}\) is flexible, i.e., given \(x, y \in \mathbb{A}\), we have

\([x, y, x] = 0_{\mathbb{A}}\).

Proof Cf. page 27 of [RSch].

(3.3) Lemma (Moufang Identities) An alternative ring \(\mathbb{A}\) satisfies the Moufang identities,
i.e., given \(x, y, z \in \mathbb{A}\), we have

\[
(xy)(xz) = x(y(xz)) , \quad (xy)(zx) = (x(yz))x , \quad ((xy)z)x = x(yz)x.
\]

Proof Cf. page 28 of [RSch].

(3.4) Definition An alternative ring \(\mathbb{A}\) is an alternative division ring if the maps

\[
\rho_w : \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A}, \ x \mapsto wx, \quad \lambda_w : \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A}, \ x \mapsto wx
\]

are bijective for each \(w \in \mathbb{A}^*\).

(3.5) Remark Let \(\mathbb{A}\) be an alternative division ring. Given \(x \in \mathbb{A}^*\), there are unique elements

\(x^{-l}, x^{-r} \in \mathbb{A}^*\) such that

\(x^{-l} \cdot x = 1_{\mathbb{A}} = x \cdot x^{-r}\).

By lemma (3.2), we have

\[
\lambda_{x^{-l}}(xx^{-l}) = x^{-l} \cdot xx^{-l} = x^{-l}x \cdot x^{-l} = 1_{\mathbb{A}} \cdot x^{-l} = x^{-l} = \lambda_{x^{-l}}(1_{\mathbb{A}}) , \quad xx^{-l} = 1_{\mathbb{A}}
\]

and therefore \(x^{-1} := x^{-l} = x^{-r}\).
Part II Parameter Systems

(3.6) Lemma  An alternative division ring $\mathbb{A}$ has the inverse properties, i.e., given $x, y \in \mathbb{A}^*$, we have

$$x^{-1}(xy) = y \ , \ (yx)x^{-1} = y \ , \ (xy)^{-1} = y^{-1}x^{-1}.$$ 

Proof
This results from the Moufang identities. \qed

(3.7) Definition  Let $(\mathbb{A}, +, \cdot)$ be an alternative ring. Then $(\mathbb{A}, +, \circ)$ with the multiplication

$$\circ : \mathbb{A} \times \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A}, \ x \circ y := y \cdot x$$

is the opposite alternative ring.

(3.8) Definition  Let $\mathbb{A}, \tilde{\mathbb{A}}$ be alternative rings.

- An (anti-)isomorphism of alternative rings is an additive isomorphism $\gamma : \mathbb{A} \to \tilde{\mathbb{A}}$ such that

$$\gamma(x) + \gamma(y) = \gamma(x + y) \quad \gamma(x) \cdot \gamma(y) = \gamma(xy) \ .$$

- A Jordan homomorphism is an additive monomorphism $\gamma : \mathbb{A} \to \tilde{\mathbb{A}}$ such that

$$\gamma(1_\mathbb{A}) = 1_{\tilde{\mathbb{A}}} \ , \ \quad \forall \ x, y \in \mathbb{A} : \ \gamma(xy) = \gamma(x) \gamma(y) \gamma(x) \ .$$

(3.9) Notation  Let $\mathbb{A}$ be an alternative division ring.

- We denote the group of automorphisms of $\mathbb{A}$ by $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{A})$.
- We denote the set of anti-automorphisms of $\mathbb{A}$ by $\text{Aut}^o(\mathbb{A})$.

Given $w \in \mathbb{A}$, we set

$$\lambda_w : \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A}, \ x \mapsto wx \ , \ \rho_w : \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A}, \ x \mapsto xw \ , \ \gamma_w : \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A}, \ x \mapsto w^{-1}xw \ .$$

Notice that the conjugation map $\gamma_w$ is well-defined by (9.23)(ii) of [TW] with $c := a$.

- We denote the opposite alternative division ring by $\mathbb{A}^o$.
- We denote the group of Jordan automorphisms of $\mathbb{A}$ by $\text{Aut}_J(\mathbb{A})$.

(3.10) Definition  The center of an alternative ring $\mathbb{A}$ is

$$Z(\mathbb{A}) := \{ x \in \mathbb{A} \mid [x, \mathbb{A}, \mathbb{A}] = [x, \mathbb{A}] = 0 \} ,$$

where $[x, y] := xy - yx$ is the commutator of $x, y \in \mathbb{A}$.

(3.11) Lemma  Let $\mathbb{A}$ be an alternative division ring. Then $\mathbb{K} := \mathbb{Z}(\mathbb{A})$ is a field and $\mathbb{A}$ is an algebra over $\mathbb{K}$.

Proof
This results from (9.18) and (9.23) of [TW]. \qed

§ 3.2 Octonion Division Algebras

The Bruck-Kleinfeld theorem states that a non-associative alternative division ring is an octonion division algebra. First of all we give the exact definition of such an algebra before we collect some basic concepts, including the doubling process.
(3.12) Remark  The construction here is taken from [TW].

(3.13) Definition  Let \( E/K \) be a separable quadratic extension and let \( \sigma \) be the non-trivial element of \( \text{Gal}(E/K) \).

- Given \( x \in E \), we write \( \bar{x} := \sigma(x) \).
- We denote the norm map and the trace map of \( E/K \) by \( N \) and \( T \), respectively.
- Given \( \beta \in K^* \), we set
  \[
  (E/K, \beta) := \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ \beta y \\ \bar{x} \end{pmatrix} \mid x, y \in E \right\} \subseteq M_2(E), \quad e := \begin{pmatrix} 0_E \\ \beta \\ 1_E \\ 0_E \end{pmatrix} \in (E/K, \beta).
  \]

(3.14) Lemma  Let \( E/K \) be a separable quadratic extension and let \( \beta \in K^* \setminus N(E) \). Then the following holds:

(a) The set
  \[
  H := (E/K, \beta) \subseteq M_2(E)
  \]
  is an associative division ring.

(b) We have
  \[
  H = 1_E \cdot E + e \cdot E.
  \]

(c) The map
  \[
  \sigma_s : H \rightarrow H, \quad x + e \cdot y \mapsto \bar{x} - e \cdot y
  \]
  is an involution of \( H \) extending \( \sigma \).

(d) The maps
  \[
  N : H \rightarrow K, \quad x + e \cdot y \mapsto N(x) - \beta \cdot N(y), \quad T : H \rightarrow K, \quad x + e \cdot y \mapsto T(x)
  \]
  are extensions of \( N \) and \( T \).

Proof
Cf. (9.2), (9.3) and (9.4) of [TW]. \( \square \)

(3.15) Definition  A quaternion division algebra is an algebra \( \mathbb{H} \) isomorphic to \( (E/K, \beta) \) for some separable quadratic extension \( E/K \) and some \( \beta \in K^* \setminus N(E) \). The map \( \sigma_s \) is the standard involution of \( \mathbb{H} \).

(3.16) Definition  Let \( \mathbb{H} \) be a quaternion division algebra.

- Given \( x \in \mathbb{H} \), we write \( \bar{x} := \sigma_s(x) \).
- Given \( \beta \in K^* \), we set
  \[
  (\mathbb{H}, \beta) := \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \left| \begin{pmatrix} \beta y \\ \bar{x} \end{pmatrix} \right. \subseteq M_2(\mathbb{H}), \quad e := \begin{pmatrix} 0_\mathbb{H} \\ \beta \\ 1_\mathbb{H} \\ 0_\mathbb{H} \end{pmatrix} \in (\mathbb{H}, \beta).
  \]

- We define a multiplication on \( (\mathbb{H}, \beta) \) by
  \[
  \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta y \\ \bar{x} \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta \bar{v} \\ \bar{u} \end{pmatrix} := \begin{pmatrix} xu + \beta vy \\ \bar{x}v + uy \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \beta(\bar{u}x + \bar{y}u) \\ \bar{u}x + \beta y\bar{v} \end{pmatrix},
  \]
  which is non-associative.
Part II Parameter Systems

(3.17) Lemma  Let $\mathbb{H}$ be a quaternion division algebra and let $\beta \in \mathbb{K}^* \setminus N(\mathbb{H})$. Then the following holds:

(a) With the ordinary matrix addition and the above multiplication, the set

$$ O := (\mathbb{H}, \beta) \subseteq M_2(\mathbb{H}) $$

is an alternative division ring.

(b) We have

$$ O = 1_{\mathbb{H}} \cdot \mathbb{H} + e \cdot \mathbb{H} $$

(c) The map

$$ \sigma_s : O \rightarrow O, \ x + e \cdot y \mapsto \bar{x} - e \cdot y $$

is an involution of $O$ extending $\sigma_s$.

(d) The maps

$$ N : O \rightarrow \mathbb{K}, \ x + e \cdot y \mapsto N(x) - \beta \cdot N(y), \quad T : O \rightarrow \mathbb{K}, \ x + e \cdot y \mapsto T(x) $$

are extensions of $N$ and $T$.

Proof
Cf. (9.8) of [TW].

(3.18) Definition  An octonion division algebra is an algebra $O$ isomorphic to $(\mathbb{H}, \beta)$ for some quaternion division algebra $\mathbb{H}$ and some $\beta \in \mathbb{K}^* \setminus N(\mathbb{H})$. The map $\sigma_s$ is the standard involution of $O$.

(3.19) Remark  In the following, we list the basic properties of an octonion division algebra $O$ which will be needed in the sequel. Since each subalgebra of $O$ is a division algebra by (20.8) of [TW], we will omit the term “division” whenever we deal with an octonion division algebra and its subalgebras.

(3.20) Notation  Throughout the rest of this paragraph, $O$ denotes an octonion division algebra.

(3.21) Remark  The norm $N : O \rightarrow \mathbb{K}$ is a quadratic form with associated bilinear form

$$ \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle : O \times O \rightarrow \mathbb{K}, \ (x, y) \mapsto x\bar{y} + y\bar{x} = T(x\bar{y}) $$

(3.22) Definition  Let $V$ be a vector space over $\mathbb{K}$. A quadratic form $q : V \rightarrow \mathbb{K}$ is non-defective if the associated bilinear form

$$ f_q : V \rightarrow \mathbb{K}, \ (x, y) \mapsto q(x + y) - q(x) - q(y) $$

is non-degenerate, i.e., we have $V^\perp = \{0\}$, cf. definition (4.30). Otherwise, it is defective.

(3.23) Lemma  There exists an element $x \in O$ such that $\bar{x} \neq x$.

Proof
Cf. (20.15) of [TW].

(3.24) Corollary  We have

$$ \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle \neq 0_\mathbb{K} $$

As a consequence, $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ is non-degenerate, hence $N$ is non-defective.
Proof

- Char $\mathcal{O} \neq 2$: In this case, we have
  $$\langle 1_{\mathcal{O}}, 1_{\mathcal{O}} \rangle = 2 \cdot N(1_{\mathcal{O}}) = 2 \cdot 1_{\mathcal{O}} \neq 0_{\mathcal{O}}.$$  

- Char $\mathcal{O} = 2$: By lemma (3.23), there is an element $x \in \mathcal{O}$ such that $x \neq \bar{x}$. We obtain
  $$\langle x, 1_{\mathcal{O}} \rangle = x + \bar{x} \neq 0_{\mathcal{O}}.$$  

Now the map $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle = \bar{T}$ is non-degenerate by (20.16) of [TW], cf. definition (20.12) of [TW].

(3.25) Lemma  
Let $x, y \in \mathcal{O}$. Then the following holds:

(a) There is an associative subalgebra $A$ containing both $x$ and $y$.

(b) If we have $\bar{x} \neq x$, then $A$ can be chosen to be a quaternion subalgebra $\mathbb{H}$.

(c) There exists a quaternion subalgebra $\mathbb{H}$ containing $x$.

Proof

Parts (a) and (b) result from the proof of (20.22) in [TW]. Part (c) is (20.23) of [TW].

(3.26) Lemma (Doubling Process)  
Let $A$ be a subalgebra such that $A^+ \nsubseteq A$, let $e \in A^+ \setminus A$ and let $u := -N(e)$. Then the following holds:

(a) The set $\tilde{A} := A + e \cdot A$ is a subalgebra.

(b) We have
  $$\tilde{e} = -e, \quad e \cdot A \subseteq A^+, \quad A \cap e \cdot A = \{0_\mathcal{O}\}.$$  

(c) Given $x, y \in A$, we have
  $$(e \cdot x)(e \cdot y) = u(y\bar{x}), \quad (e \cdot x)y = e \cdot yx, \quad x(e \cdot y) = e \cdot \bar{y}.$$  

Proof

This is (20.17) of [TW].

(3.27) Remark  
Let $A$ be an alternative division ring. By definition, we have
  $$Z(A) = \{ x \in A \mid [x, A] = [x, A, A] = 0_A \}.$$  

(3.28) Lemma  
Let $A$ be an alternative division ring. Then we have
  $$Z(A) = \{ x \in A \mid [x, A] = 0_A \}.$$  

Proof

The assertion is clearly true if $A$ is a skew-field, thus we may suppose $\mathcal{O} := A$ to be an octonion division algebra. By proposition (1.9.2) of [Sp], we have
  $$\{ x \in \mathcal{O} \mid [x, \mathcal{O}, \mathcal{O}] = 0_\mathcal{O} \} \subseteq \{ x \in \mathcal{O} \mid [x, \mathcal{O}] = 0_\mathcal{O} \}.$$  

and therefore
  $$Z(\mathcal{O}) = \{ x \in \mathcal{O} \mid [x, \mathcal{O}, \mathcal{O}] = 0_\mathcal{O} \} \subseteq \{ x \in \mathcal{O} \mid [x, \mathcal{O}] = 0_\mathcal{O} \} \subseteq \{ x \in \mathcal{O} \mid [x, \mathcal{O}] = [x, \mathcal{O}, \mathcal{O}] = 0_\mathcal{O} \} = Z(\mathcal{O}).$$  

□
§ 3.3 The Bruck-Kleinfeld Theorem

On the one hand, we will need the minimum equation in §28.2, and on the other hand, we will need the classification of alternative division rings which are quadratic over a subfield of its center in §21.5. The main steps in the proof of the Bruck-Kleinfeld theorem in [TW] involve those algebras and the corresponding classification result, thus we mention them at this point and dedicate a short paragraph to this fundamental theorem.

(3.29) Definition  Let $\mathbb{A}$ be an alternative division ring, let $\mathbb{K} := Z(\mathbb{A})$ and let $\mathbb{F}$ be a subfield of $\mathbb{K}$. Then $\mathbb{A}$ is quadratic over $\mathbb{F}$ if there are maps $T = T^\mathbb{A}_\mathbb{F}, N = N^\mathbb{A}_\mathbb{F} : \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{F}$ such that
\[
\forall a \in \mathbb{A} : a^2 - T(a)a + N(a) = 0_{\mathbb{A}}, \quad \forall a \in \mathbb{F} : T(a) = 2a, \quad N(a) = a^2. \quad (3.1)
\]
The maps $T$ and $N$ are the trace and the norm, respectively.

(3.30) Remark  Trace and norm are uniquely determined by the minimum equation (3.1).

(3.31) Proposition  A non-associative alternative division ring $\mathbb{A}$ is quadratic over its center. In particular, an octonion division algebra $\mathbb{O}$ is quadratic over its center.

Proof  This is theorem (20.2) of [TW].

(3.32) Proposition  Let $\mathbb{A}$ be an alternative division ring which is quadratic over some subfield $\mathbb{F}$ of its center $\mathbb{K} := Z(\mathbb{A})$, let $T$ and $N$ be the trace and the norm, respectively, and let $\sigma : \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A}$, $x \mapsto T(x) - x$.

Then exactly one of the following holds:

(i) $\mathbb{A} = \mathbb{K}$, $\text{Char} \mathbb{K} = 2$, $\mathbb{K}^2 \subseteq \mathbb{F} \neq \mathbb{K}$ and $\sigma = \text{id}_{\mathbb{A}}$.

(ii) $\mathbb{A} = \mathbb{K} = \mathbb{F}$ and $\sigma = \text{id}_{\mathbb{A}}$.

(iii) $\mathbb{A} = \mathbb{K}$, $\mathbb{K}/\mathbb{F}$ is a separable quadratic extension and $\langle \sigma \rangle = \text{Gal}(\mathbb{K}/\mathbb{F})$.

(iv) $\mathbb{A}$ is a quaternion division algebra over $\mathbb{K}$, $\mathbb{F} = \mathbb{K}$ and $\sigma = \sigma_s$.

(v) $\mathbb{A}$ is an octonion division algebra over $\mathbb{K}$, $\mathbb{F} = \mathbb{K}$ and $\sigma = \sigma_s$.

In each case, we have
\[
N(x) = xx^\sigma = x^\sigma x
\]
for each $x \in \mathbb{A}$.

Proof  This is theorem (20.3) of [TW].

(3.33) Theorem (Bruck-Kleinfeld-Theorem)  A non-associative alternative division ring is an octonion division algebra.

Proof  This is a consequence of proposition (3.31) and proposition (3.32).
§ 3.4 Discrete Valuations and Composition Algebras

Given a Bruhat-Tits building, the defining field for the building at infinity is complete with respect to a discrete valuation. In particular, we will have to deal with octonions and thus composition algebras which are complete with respect to a discrete valuation.

(3.34) Definition Let $A$ be an alternative division ring. A discrete valuation of $A$ is a map $\nu : A^* \to \mathbb{Z}$ such that

$$\nu(xy) = \nu(x) + \nu(y), \quad \nu(x+y) \geq \min\{\nu(x), \nu(y)\}$$

for all $x, y \in A^*$. A $\nu$-uniformizer is an element $\pi \in A^*$ such that $\langle \nu(\pi) \rangle = \nu(A^*)$.

(3.35) Lemma Let $A$ be an alternative division ring with discrete valuation $\nu$. Then the map

$$\delta_\nu : A \times A \to \mathbb{R}, \quad (x, y) \mapsto \begin{cases} 2^{-\nu(x-y)} & x \neq y \\ 0 & x = y \end{cases}$$

is a metric.

Proof This is lemma (9.18) of [W].

(3.36) Definition Let $A$ be an alternative division ring with discrete valuation $\nu$. Then $A$ is complete with respect to $\nu$ if $(A, \delta_\nu)$ is a complete metric space.

(3.37) Definition A composition algebra over a field $K$ is a unital algebra $A$ over $K$ together with a non-defective quadratic form $N : A \to K$ which permits composition, i.e., we have

$$\forall x, y \in A : \quad N(xy) = N(x)N(y).$$

(3.38) Lemma An octonion division algebra $\mathbb{O}$ is a composition algebra over $K := \mathbb{Z}(\mathbb{O})$.

Proof The norm $N$ is non-defective by corollary (3.24) and multiplicative by (9.9)(iii) of [TW].

(3.39) Lemma Let $A$ be an alternative division ring with discrete valuation $\nu$. Then the following holds:

(a) The algebra $A$ is complete with respect to $\nu$ if and only if the center $Z(A)$ is complete with respect to $\nu|_{Z(A)}$.

(b) If $A$ is a composition algebra which is complete with respect to $\nu$, we have

$$\forall x \in A : \quad \nu(x) = \frac{\nu(N(x))}{2} = \frac{\nu(N(-x))}{2} = \nu(-x).$$

Proof

(a) This is proposition (23.14) of [W].

(b) This results from proposition 1 of [P].

(3.40) Definition Let $A$ be a composition division algebra over $\mathbb{K}$ which is complete with respect to a discrete valuation $\nu$ and such that its residue field $\bar{A}$ is a composition algebra over the residue field $\bar{K}$. Then $A$ is unramified if we have $\nu(\bar{A}) = \nu(\bar{K})$, and ramified otherwise.
Chapter 4 Quadratic Spaces

Quadrangles of quadratic form type are parametrized by quadratic spaces.

§ 4.1 Basic Definitions and Basic Properties

(4.1) Definition

- An (anisotropic) quadratic space is a triple \((L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\) such that \(\mathbb{K}\) is a field, \(L_0\) is a right vector space over \(\mathbb{K}\) and \(q\) is an (anisotropic) quadratic form on \(L_0\), i.e., \(q : L_0 \to \mathbb{K}\) is a map such that the following holds:

\[
(\forall \ a \in L_0, \ t \in \mathbb{K} : \ q(at) = q(a)t^2).
\]

\[
(\text{Q2) The map } f_q : L_0 \times L_0 \to \mathbb{K}, \ (a, b) \mapsto q(a + b) - q(a) - q(b) \text{ is bilinear.}
\]

\[
(\text{Q3) } \forall \ a \in L_0 : \ q(a) = 0_\mathbb{K} \iff a = 0_{L_0}.
\]

- A quadratic space \((L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\) is proper if we have \(f_q \not\equiv 0_\mathbb{K}\).

- Two quadratic spaces \((L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\) and \((\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q})\) are isomorphic if there is an isomorphism

\[
\Phi = (\varphi, \phi) : (L_0, \mathbb{K}) \to (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}})
\]

of vector spaces such that

\[
\tilde{q} \circ \varphi = \phi \circ q.
\]

- A quadratic space \((L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\) is unital if there is a basepoint \(\epsilon \in L_0\) such that \(q(\epsilon) = 1_\mathbb{K}\).

- Given a quadratic space \((L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\) with basepoint \(\epsilon\), we set

\[
\sigma : L_0 \to L_0, \ x \mapsto x - \epsilon \cdot T(x) - x.
\]

Given \(a \in L_0^*\), we set

\[
\pi_a : L_0 \to L_0, \ v \mapsto v - a \cdot f_q(a, v)/q(a), \quad h_a : L_0 \to L_0, \ v \mapsto \pi_a \pi_\epsilon (v) \cdot q(a).
\]

(4.2) Lemma Let \((L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\) and \((\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q})\) be quadratic spaces with basepoints \(\epsilon\) and \(\tilde{\epsilon}\), respectively, and let \((\varphi, \phi) : (L_0, \mathbb{K}, q) \to (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q})\) be an isomorphism of quadratic spaces such that \(\varphi(\epsilon) = \tilde{\epsilon}\). Then we have

\[
\tilde{T} \circ \varphi = \phi \circ T, \quad \tilde{\sigma} \circ \varphi = \varphi \circ \sigma.
\]

Proof

Given \(x, y \in L_0\), we have

\[
f_q(\varphi(x), \varphi(y)) = \tilde{q}(\varphi(x) + \varphi(y)) - \tilde{q}(\varphi(x)) - \tilde{q}(\varphi(y))
\]

\[
= \phi(q(x + y) - q(x) - q(y)) = \phi(f_q(x, y)) .
\]

In particular, we have

\[
\tilde{T}(\varphi(x)) = f_{\tilde{q}}(\varphi(x), \tilde{\epsilon}) = \phi(f_q(x, \epsilon)) = \phi(T(x))
\]

and thus

\[
\varphi(x)^\tilde{\sigma} = \tilde{\epsilon} \cdot \tilde{T}(\varphi(x)) - \varphi(x) = \tilde{\epsilon} \cdot \phi(T(x)) - \varphi(x) = \varphi(\epsilon \cdot T(x) - x) = \varphi(x^\sigma)
\]

for each \(x \in L_0\). \(\square\)
(4.3) Notation Throughout this paragraph, \((L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\) is a quadratic space with basepoint \(\epsilon\).

(4.4) Lemma The maps \(T : L_0 \to \mathbb{K}\) and \(\sigma : L_0 \to L_0\) are \(\mathbb{K}\)-linear.

Proof Given \(x \in L_0\) and \(s \in \mathbb{K}\), we have

\[
T(x \cdot s) = f_q(\epsilon, x \cdot s) = f_q(\epsilon, x)s = T(x)s
\]

and thus

\[
(x \cdot s)^\sigma = \epsilon \cdot T(x \cdot s) - x \cdot s = \epsilon \cdot T(x)s - x \cdot s = (\epsilon \cdot T(x) - x) \cdot s = x^\sigma \cdot s.
\]

Given \(x, y \in L_0\), we have

\[
T(x + y) = f_q(\epsilon, x + y) = f_q(\epsilon, x) + f_q(\epsilon, y) = T(x) + T(y)
\]

and thus

\[
(x + y)^\sigma = \epsilon \cdot T(x + y) - (x + y) = \epsilon \cdot T(x) - x + \epsilon \cdot T(y) - y = x^\sigma + y^\sigma.
\]

(4.5) Lemma Given \(x \in L_0\), \(a \in L_0^*\), we have

\[
h_a(x) = a \cdot f_q(a, x^\sigma) - x^\sigma \cdot q(a).
\]

Proof Given \(x \in L_0\), \(a \in L_0^*\), we have

\[
h_a(x) = \pi_a \pi_\epsilon(x) \cdot q(a) = \pi_a (x - \epsilon \cdot f_q(\epsilon, x)) \cdot q(a)
\]

\[
= -\pi_a(x^\sigma) \cdot q(a) = -(x^\sigma - a \cdot f_q(a, x^\sigma)/q(a))q(a) = a \cdot f_q(a, x^\sigma) - x^\sigma \cdot q(a).
\]

(4.6) Corollary Given \(a \in L_0^*\), the corresponding Hua map \(h_a\) is \(\mathbb{K}\)-linear.

Proof Let \(a \in L_0^*, x, y \in L_0\) and \(s \in \mathbb{K}\). By lemma (4.5) and lemma (4.4), we have

\[
h_a(x \cdot s) = a \cdot f_q(a, x^\sigma \cdot s) - x^\sigma \cdot sq(a) = (a \cdot f_q(a, x^\sigma) - x^\sigma \cdot q(a)) \cdot s = h_a(x) \cdot s
\]

and

\[
h_a(x + y) = a \cdot f_q(a, (x + y)^\sigma) - (x + y)^\sigma \cdot q(a)
\]

\[
= a \cdot (f_q(a, x^\sigma) + f_q(a, y^\sigma)) - x^\sigma \cdot q(a) - y^\sigma \cdot q(a) = h_a(x) + h_a(y).
\]

(4.7) Lemma Given \(x \in L_0\), \(a \in L_0^*\) and \(s \in \mathbb{K}\), we have

\[
h_{a \cdot s}(x) = h_a(x \cdot s^2) = h_a(x) \cdot s^2,
\]

\[
h_{a \cdot s} = s^2 \cdot h_a.
\]

Proof Let \(x \in L_0\), \(a \in L_0^*\) and \(s \in \mathbb{K}\). By lemma (4.5), lemma (4.4) and corollary (4.6), we have

\[
h_{a \cdot s}(x) = a \cdot sf_q(a \cdot s, x^\sigma) - x^\sigma \cdot q(a \cdot s) = a \cdot f_q(a, x^\sigma)s^2 - x^\sigma \cdot q(a)s^2
\]

\[
= a \cdot f_q(a, (xs^2)^\sigma) - (xs^2)^\sigma \cdot q(a) = h_a(x \cdot s^2) = h_a(x) \cdot s^2.
\]
(4.8) **Lemma**  Given \( x, y \in L_0 \), we have
\[
f_q(x^\sigma, y) = f_q(y^\sigma, x) = f_q(x, y^\sigma)
\]

**Proof**
Given \( x, y \in L_0 \), we have
\[
f_q(x^\sigma, y) = f_q(\epsilon \cdot T(x) - x, y) = -f_q(x, y) + f_q(\epsilon, y)T(x) = -f_q(x, y) + T(x)T(y),
\]
which is symmetric in \( x \) and \( y \).

(4.9) **Remark**

(a) Given \( x \in L_0 \), we have
\[
f_q(x, x) = q(2x) - q(x) - q(x) = 4q(x) - 2q(x) = 2q(x)
\]
(b) We have
\[
\epsilon^\sigma = \epsilon \cdot f_q(\epsilon, \epsilon) - \epsilon = \epsilon \cdot 2 - \epsilon = \epsilon.
\]

(4.10) **Corollary**  Given \( x \in L_0 \), we have
\[
T(x^\sigma) = T(x).
\]

**Proof**
Let \( x \in L_0 \). By remark (4.9) (b) and lemma (4.8), we have
\[
T(x) = f_q(\epsilon, x^\sigma) = f_q(\epsilon^\sigma, x^\sigma) = f_q(\epsilon, (x^\sigma)^\sigma) = T(x^\sigma).
\]

(4.11) **Corollary**  We have \( \sigma^2 = \text{id}_{L_0} \).

**Proof**
Given \( x \in L_0 \), we have
\[
(x^\sigma)^\sigma = \epsilon \cdot T(x^\sigma) - x^\sigma = \epsilon \cdot T(x) - (\epsilon \cdot T(x) - x) = x.
\]

§ 4.2 Small Dimensions

Quadratic spaces of small dimension are in fact quadratic spaces corresponding to fields.

(4.12) **Theorem**  Let \((L_0, K, q)\) be a quadratic space with basepoint \(\epsilon\) such that \(\dim_K L_0 \leq 2\).

Then there is a unique multiplication \(\ast : L_0 \times L_0 \to L_0\) such that the following holds:

(i) The triple \(\overline{F} := (L_0, +, \ast)\) is a field.

(ii) The subspace \(\overline{K} := \langle \epsilon \rangle_K\) is a subfield of \(\overline{F}\).

(iii) The map \(\phi : K \to \overline{K}, \ s \mapsto \epsilon \cdot s\) is an isomorphism of fields.

(iv) Given \(x \in L_0\), we have
\[
\phi(q(x)) = x \ast x^\sigma.
\]
Proof
Condition (iii) forces
\[ \forall s, t \in K : \quad (\epsilon \cdot s) \ast (\epsilon \cdot t) = \phi(s) \ast \phi(t) = \phi(st) = \epsilon \cdot st, \]
which makes \( \tilde{K} \) really into a field, hence (ii) and (iii) hold.

• If we have \( \dim_{K} L_{0} = 1 \), then \( \tilde{F} = \tilde{K} \) is a field. By lemma (4.4) and remark (4.9) (b), we have

\[ \forall s \in K : \quad (\epsilon \cdot s)^{\sigma} = \epsilon \cdot s = \epsilon \cdot s \]
and thus
\[ \forall s \in K : \quad \phi(q(\epsilon \cdot s)) = \phi(s^{2}) = \epsilon \cdot s^{2} = (\epsilon \cdot s) \ast (\epsilon \cdot s) = (\epsilon \cdot s) \ast (\epsilon \cdot s)^{\sigma}. \]

• If we have \( \dim_{K} L_{0} = 2 \), there is an element \( \tilde{x} \in L_{0} \setminus \tilde{K} \). Conditions (i) and (ii) force \( \tilde{x} \ast \epsilon := \tilde{x} := \epsilon \ast \tilde{x} \), and condition (iv) forces

\[ \tilde{x} \ast T(\tilde{x}) = \tilde{x} \ast (\epsilon \cdot T(\tilde{x}) - \tilde{x}) = \epsilon \cdot q(\tilde{x}) \]
and thus \( \tilde{x} \ast \tilde{x} := \tilde{x} \ast T(\tilde{x}) - \epsilon \cdot q(\tilde{x}) \). Given \( s, t, \tilde{s}, \tilde{t} \in K \), we set

\( (\epsilon \cdot s + \tilde{x} \cdot t) \ast (\epsilon \cdot \tilde{s} + \tilde{x} \cdot \tilde{t}) := (s \cdot \tilde{s} - q(\tilde{x})T) + \tilde{x} \cdot (s \tilde{t} + \tilde{s} \cdot t + T(\tilde{x})t) \).

Let \( f := y^{2} - xT(\tilde{x}) + q(\tilde{x}) \in K[y] \). Given \( s \in K \), we have

\[ s^{2} - sT(\tilde{x}) + q(\tilde{x}) = q(\epsilon(s)) - sT(\tilde{x}) + q(\tilde{x}) + q(\epsilon(s)) + q(\tilde{x}) - f(q(\epsilon(s), \tilde{x})) = 0. \]

Therefore, the polynomial \( f \in K[y] \) is irreducible. Let \( x \) be an element in the algebraic closure of \( K \) such that \( f(x) = 0_{K} \). Then \( \tilde{F} := K(x) \) is a field with \( \dim_{K} \tilde{F} = \deg(f) = 2 \) and multiplication given by

\[ x^{2} = xT(\tilde{x}) - q(\tilde{x}). \]

Therefore, the map

\( \Phi : \tilde{F} \rightarrow \tilde{F}, \quad s + xt \mapsto \epsilon \cdot s + \tilde{x} \cdot t \)

is an isomorphism of fields, hence (i) holds. Given \( s, t \in K \), we finally have

\[ \phi(q(\epsilon \cdot s + \tilde{x} \cdot t)) = \epsilon \cdot (s^{2} + q(\tilde{x})T + f_{q}(\epsilon \cdot s, \tilde{x} \cdot t)) = \epsilon \cdot (s^{2} + f_{q}(\epsilon \cdot s, \tilde{x} \cdot t)T + f_{q}(\epsilon \cdot s, \tilde{x} \cdot t)) \]
\[ = \epsilon \cdot (s^{2} + T(\tilde{x})st + q(\tilde{x})T^{2}) + \tilde{x} \cdot (-st + st + T(\tilde{x})T - T(\tilde{x})T^{2}) \]
\[ = (\epsilon \cdot s + \tilde{x} \cdot t) \ast (\epsilon \cdot s + \tilde{x} \cdot t) \ast \tilde{x} \cdot t \]
\[ = (\epsilon \cdot s + \tilde{x} \cdot t) \ast (\epsilon \cdot s + \tilde{x} \cdot t)^{\sigma}, \]

hence (iv) holds.

\[ \square \]

(4.13) Definition

Given a quadratic space \((L_{0}, K, q)\) with basepoint \(\epsilon\) and \(\dim_{K} L_{0} \leq 2\), we set

\[ \mathcal{F}(L_{0}, K, q) := \tilde{F}, \]

where \(\tilde{F}\) is as in theorem (4.12).

(4.14) Corollary

Let \((L_{0}, K, q)\) be a quadratic space with basepoint \(\epsilon\) and \(\dim_{K} L_{0} \leq 2\), let \(\tilde{F} := \mathcal{F}(L_{0}, K, q)\), let \(\tilde{K} := (\epsilon)_{K}\) and let \(\phi : K \rightarrow \tilde{K}, \quad s \mapsto \epsilon \cdot s\). Then \(\tilde{F}\) is quadratic over \(\tilde{K}\), we have \(N_{\tilde{F}}^{\tilde{K}} = \phi \circ q\), the map \((id_{L_{0}}, \phi) : (L_{0}, K, q) \rightarrow (\tilde{F}, \tilde{K}, N_{\tilde{F}}^{\tilde{K}})\) is an isomorphism of quadratic spaces, and exactly one of the following holds:

(i) \(\text{Char} \tilde{F} = 2, \tilde{F}^{2} \subseteq \tilde{K} \neq \tilde{F}\) and \(\sigma = \text{id}_{\tilde{F}}\), which means that \(\tilde{F}/\tilde{K}\) is inseparable.

(ii) \(\tilde{K} = \tilde{F}\) and \(\sigma = \text{id}_{\tilde{F}}\).

(iii) \(\tilde{F}/\tilde{K}\) is a separable quadratic extension and \(\langle \sigma \rangle = \text{Gal}(\tilde{F}/\tilde{K})\).
A quadratic space

(4.16) Definition

Let \(\mathbf{F}\) be a field with \(\text{Char}\mathbf{F} = 2\), \(\mathbf{F}^2 \subseteq \mathbb{K} \neq \mathbf{F}\). A quadratic space \((L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\) is said to be of type \((m)\) if it has one of the following forms:

(i) if \(\mathbf{F} := L_0\) is a field with \(\text{Char}\mathbf{F} = 2\), \(\mathbf{F}^2 \subseteq \mathbb{K} \neq \mathbf{F}\), \(\sigma = \text{id}_\mathbf{F}\) and \(q = N^\mathbb{K}_{\mathbf{F}}\),

(ii) if \(L_0 = \mathbb{K}\), \(\sigma = \text{id}_\mathbb{K}\) and \(q = N^\mathbb{K}_{\mathbb{K}}\),

(iii) if \(\mathbb{E} := L_0\) is a field, \(\mathbb{E}/\mathbb{K}\) is a separable quadratic extension, \(\langle \sigma \rangle = \text{Gal}(\mathbb{E}/\mathbb{K})\) and \(q = N^\mathbb{E}_{\mathbb{K}}\),

(iv) if \(\mathbb{H} := L_0\) is a quaternion division algebra over \(\mathbb{K}\), \(\sigma = \sigma_s\) and \(q = N^\mathbb{H}_{\mathbb{K}}\),

(v) if \(\mathbb{O} := L_0\) is an octonion division algebra over \(\mathbb{K}\), \(\sigma = \sigma_s\) and \(q = N^\mathbb{O}_{\mathbb{K}}\).

(4.17) Remark

These are exactly the quadratic spaces such that the corresponding Moufang set of quadratic form type is isomorphic to a Moufang set of linear type, cf. theorem (31.7) and lemma (31.23). This explains the terminology.
§ 4.3 Clifford Algebras and the Clifford Invariant

(4.18) Definition

• A central simple algebra is a finite-dimensional associative algebra \((A, K)\) which is simple as a ring and such that \(Z(A) \cong K\) as fields.

• Two central simple algebras \((A, K)\) and \((\tilde{A}, \tilde{K})\) are isomorphic if there is an isomorphism \((\gamma, \phi) : (A, K) \to (\tilde{A}, \tilde{K})\) of vector spaces such that \(\gamma\) is an isomorphism of rings.

• Let \((L_0, K, q)\) be a quadratic space, let \(T(L_0)\) be the tensor algebra of \(L_0\) and let \(I(q) := \langle u \otimes u - 1_K \cdot q(u) \mid u \in L_0 \rangle\).

Then \(C(q) := T(L_0)/I(q)\) is the Clifford algebra of \(q\).

(4.19) Lemma

Let \((L_0, K, q)\) be a non-defective quadratic space such that \(\dim_K L_0\) is even. Then \((C(q), K)\) is a central simple algebra.

Proof

This results from proposition (11.6) of [EKM].

(4.20) Theorem (Wedderburn)

Given a central simple algebra \((A, K)\), there are a unique natural number \(n \in \mathbb{N}^*\) and an associative division algebra \((D, K)\) such that \((A, K) \cong (M_n(D), K)\) as algebras. The algebra \((D, K)\) is unique up to isomorphism of algebras.

Proof

Cf. theorem (1.1) of [KMRT].

(4.21) Definition

• Given a central simple algebra \((A, K)\), we set \(S(A, K) := [(D, K)]\), where \((D, K)\) is a division algebra as in theorem (4.20) and \([(D, K)]\) denotes its isomorphism class.

• Let \((L_0, K, q)\) be a non-defective quadratic space such that \(\dim_K L_0\) is even. Then

\[
\text{Clif}(q) := S(C(q), K)
\]

is the Clifford invariant of \(q\).

(4.22) Lemma

Given two isomorphic central simple algebras \((A, K)\) and \((\tilde{A}, \tilde{K})\), we have \(S(A, K) = S(\tilde{A}, \tilde{K})\).

Proof

Let \(n, \tilde{n}\) and \((D, K), (\tilde{D}, \tilde{K})\) be as in theorem (4.20). Then we have

\[
(M_n(D), K) \cong (A, K) \cong (\tilde{A}, \tilde{K}) \cong (M_n(\tilde{D}), \tilde{K})
\]

as algebras and thus \((D, K) \cong (\tilde{D}, \tilde{K})\) by theorem (4.20).

(4.23) Lemma

Let \((L_0, K, q), (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q})\) be isomorphic quadratic spaces. Then we have

\[
(C(q), K) \cong (C(\tilde{q}), \tilde{K})
\]

as algebras. In particular, we have \(\text{Clif}(q) = \text{Clif}(\tilde{q})\) if the dimensions are even and at least one (and thus both) quadratic spaces are non-defective.

Proof

This results from (12.23) of [TW]. In particular, we may apply lemma (4.22).
§ 4.4 Norm Splittings

(4.24) Definition Let \((L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\) be a quadratic space. A norm splitting of \(q\) is a triple \((E, \cdot, \{v_1, \ldots, v_d\})\) such that the following holds:

(N1) \(E/\mathbb{K}\) is a separable quadratic extension,

(N2) \(\cdot : L_0 \times E \to L_0\) is a scalar multiplication extending the scalar multiplication \(\cdot : L_0 \times \mathbb{K} \to L_0\),

(N3) \(\{v_1, \ldots, v_d\}\) is an \(E\)-Basis of \(L_0\) with

\[ q(\sum_{i=1}^{d} v_i t_i) = \sum_{i=1}^{d} s_i N(t_i), \]

where \(s_i = q(v_i)\) for each \(i \in \{1, \ldots, n\}\) and \(N = N^E_\mathbb{K}\).

The elements \(s_1, \ldots, s_d \in \mathbb{K}\) are called the constants of the norm splitting.

(4.25) Lemma Let \(\mathcal{O}\) be an octonion division algebra with center \(\mathbb{K} := Z(\mathcal{O})\) and let \(E\) be a subfield such that \(E/\mathbb{K}\) is a separable quadratic extension (which exists by lemma (3.23) and (20.19) of [TW]). Then there are \(v_1, \ldots, v_4 \in \mathcal{O}\) such that \((E, \cdot, \{v_1, \ldots, v_4\})\) is a norm splitting of \((\mathcal{O}, \mathbb{K}, N)\), satisfying \(s_1 \cdots s_4 \in N(\mathbb{E})\).

\[
N\left(\sum_{i=1}^{4} t_i v_i\right) = (t_1 v_1 + t_2 v_2 + t_3 v_3 + t_4 v_4) \cdot (\bar{v}_1 \bar{t}_1 + \bar{v}_2 \bar{t}_2 + \bar{v}_3 \bar{t}_3 + \bar{v}_4 \bar{t}_4)
\]

\[
= \sum_{i=1}^{4} t_i v_i \bar{v}_i \bar{t}_i + \sum_{i \neq j} (t_i v_i)(\bar{v}_j \bar{t}_j) + (t_j v_j)(\bar{v}_i \bar{t}_i)
\]

\[
= \sum_{i=1}^{4} N(v_i) N(t_i) + \sum_{i \neq j} (\bar{v}_j (\bar{v}_i \bar{t}_i \bar{t}_j) + (v_j \bar{t}_j) (\bar{v}_i \bar{t}_i))
\]

\[
= \sum_{i=1}^{4} N(v_i) N(t_i) + \sum_{i \neq j} (\bar{v}_j (\bar{v}_i \bar{t}_i \bar{t}_j) + v_j (\bar{v}_i \bar{t}_i \bar{t}_j))
\]

\[
= \sum_{i=1}^{4} N(v_i) N(t_i) + \sum_{i \neq j} ((\bar{v}_j + v_j) (\bar{v}_i \bar{t}_i \bar{t}_j))
\]

\[
= \sum_{i=1}^{4} N(v_i) N(t_i) + \sum_{i \neq j} ((-v_j + v_j) (\bar{v}_i \bar{t}_i \bar{t}_j)) = \sum_{i=1}^{4} N(v_i) N(t_i).
\]

In particular, we have \(s_i = N(v_i)\) for each \(i \in \{1, \ldots, 4\}\), and thus, by lemma (3.26) again,

\[
s_1 \cdots s_4 = N(v_1) \cdots N(v_4) = N(v_1 \cdots v_4) = N(v_2 v_3 v_2 v_3) = N(-v_2^2 v_3^2) \in N(\mathbb{K}) \subseteq N(\mathbb{E}).
\]
**Chapter 4 Quadratic Spaces**

(4.26) **Definition**  A quadratic space \((L_0, K, q)\) is

- **of type** \(E_6\) if \(\dim K L_0 = 6\) and \(q\) has a norm splitting,
- **of type** \(E_7\) if \(\dim K L_0 = 8\) and \(q\) has a norm splitting \((E, \cdot, \{v_1, \ldots, v_4\})\) such that
  \[s_1 \cdots s_4 \notin N(E)\, ,\]
- **of type** \(E_8\) if \(\dim K L_0 = 12\) and \(q\) has a norm splitting \((E, \cdot, \{v_1, \ldots, v_6\})\) such that
  \[-s_1 \cdots s_6 \in N(E)\, .\]

(4.27) **Remark**  As we only deal with anisotropic quadratic spaces and since each anisotropic space having a norm splitting is automatically non-defective by remark (12.12) of [TW] (and thus proper), we may reformulate remark (12.30) of [TW] as follows:

(4.28) **Lemma**  Let \((L_0, K, q)\) be a quadratic space having a norm splitting \((E, \cdot, \{v_1, \ldots, v_d\})\) with constants \(s_1, \ldots, s_d\) and let

\[\gamma := (-1)^{[d/2]} s_1 \cdots s_d\, .\]

Then the following holds:

(a) We have \(C(q) \cong M_{2^d}(K)\) if \(\gamma \in N(E)\) and thus \(\Clif(q) = [(K, K)]\).

(b) We have \(C(q) \cong M_{2^d-1}(H)\) if \(\gamma \notin N(E)\) and thus \(\Clif(q) = [(H, K)]\), where \(H = (E/K, \gamma)\).

**Proof**  This is remark (12.30) of [TW].

(4.29) **Corollary**  Let \(\mathcal{O}\) be an octonion division algebra with norm \(N\) and center \(K := Z(\mathcal{O})\) and let \((\tilde{L}_0, K, \tilde{q})\) be a quadratic space of type \(E_7\). Then the following holds:

(a) We have \(\Clif(N) = [(K, K)]\).

(b) We have \(\Clif(\tilde{q}) = [(\tilde{H}, \tilde{K})]\) for some quaternion division algebra \(\tilde{H}\) with center \(\tilde{K}\).

(c) We have \((\mathcal{O}, K, N) \not\cong (\tilde{L}_0, K, \tilde{q})\) as quadratic spaces.

**Proof**  

(a) By lemma (4.25), \(N\) has a norm splitting \((E, \cdot, \{v_1, \ldots, v_4\})\) such that

\[\gamma = s_1 \cdots s_4 \in N(E)\, ,\]

hence \(\Clif(N) = [(K, K)]\) by lemma (4.28) (a).

(b) By definition, \(q\) has a norm splitting \((\tilde{E}, \cdot, \{v_1, \ldots, v_4\})\) such that

\[\gamma = s_1 \cdots s_4 \notin N(\tilde{E})\, ,\]

hence we may apply lemma (4.28) (b).

(c) Since \(K\) is a field and \(\tilde{H}\) is non-commutative, we have \((K, K) \not\cong (\tilde{H}, \tilde{K})\) as algebras and thus

\[\Clif(N) \neq \Clif(q)\, .\]

Now the quadratic spaces can’t be isomorphic by lemma (4.23).

\[\Box\]
§ 4.5 Quadratic Spaces of Type $F_4$

(4.30) Definition Let $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ be a quadratic space.

- Given a subset $W \subseteq L_0$, we set
  \[
  W^\perp := \{ v \in L_0 \mid f_q(v, W) = 0_\mathbb{K} \} .
  \]

- The subspace $\text{Def}(q) := L_0^\perp$ is the defect of $q$.

- The quadratic space $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ is non-defective if $\text{Def}(q) = \{ 0_{L_0} \}$, and defective otherwise.

(4.31) Remark Let $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ be a non-proper quadratic space, i.e., we have $f_q \equiv 0_\mathbb{K}$. Then we have $\text{Def}(q) = L_0$, and $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ is defective. In particular, a quadratic space is proper if it is non-defective.

(4.32) Definition Let $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ be a quadratic space and let $R_0 := \text{Def}(q)$. Then $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ is a quadratic space of type $F_4$ if we have $\text{Char} \mathbb{K} = 2$ and the following holds:

- $q(R_0)/q(\rho) \in \mathbb{K}$ is a subfield of $\mathbb{K}$ for some $\rho \in R_0^*$.

- For some complement $S_0$ of $R_0$ in $L_0$, the restriction of $q$ to $S_0$ has a norm splitting $(\mathbb{E}, \varnothing, \{ v_1, v_2 \})$ with constants $s_1, s_2$ such that $s_1s_2 \in q(R_0)/q(\rho)$.

(4.33) Remark By (14.2) of [TW], the field $q(R_0)/q(\rho)$ is independent of the choice of $\rho \in R_0^*$. In particular, we have

\[
F := q(R_0)/q(\epsilon) = q(R_0)
\]

if $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ is a quadratic space with basepoint $\epsilon \in R_0^*$.

(4.34) Notation Let $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ be a quadratic space of type $F_4$ and let $\rho \in R_0^*$. We set

\[
\mathbb{F} := q(R_0)/q(\rho) .
\]

(4.35) Lemma A quadratic space $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ of type $F_4$ is proper.

Proof By definition, there is a complement $S_0$ of $R_0$ in $L_0$ such that the restriction of $q$ to $S_0$ has a norm splitting $(\mathbb{E}, \varnothing, \{ v_1, v_2 \})$ with constants $s_1, s_2$ such that $s_1s_2 \in F$. Moreover, $q$ is anisotropic, hence $(S_0, \mathbb{K}, q|_{S_0})$ is non-defective by (12.12) of [TW]. In particular, $(S_0, \mathbb{K}, q|_{S_0})$ and thus $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ is proper. \(\square\)

(4.36) Lemma Let $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ be a quadratic space of type $F_4$ and let $(\hat{\mathbb{K}}, \bar{\mathbb{K}}, \bar{N})$ be a quadratic space of type (in). Then we have

\[
(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q) \not\cong (\hat{\mathbb{K}}, \bar{\mathbb{K}}, \bar{N})
\]

as quadratic spaces.

Proof Assume $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q) \cong (\hat{\mathbb{K}}, \bar{\mathbb{K}}, \bar{N})$. Since $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ is proper by lemma (4.35), $(\bar{\mathbb{K}}, \hat{\mathbb{K}}, \bar{N})$ is proper as well and thus (m) $\notin \{ (i),(ii) \}$ since we have $\text{Char} \mathbb{K} = 2$. But a quadratic space of type (m)$\in \{ (iii), \ldots, (v) \}$ is non-defective by (20.15) of [TW] and the proof of corollary (3.24), while a quadratic space of type $F_4$ is defective by definition since $\mathbb{F} = q(R_0)/q(\rho)$ is a field. \(\square\)
Chapter 5 Involutory Sets

Quadrangles of purely involutory type are parametrized by proper involutory sets.

§ 5.1 Basic Definitions

(5.1) Definition

- An involutory set is a triple \((K, K_0, \sigma)\), where \(K\) is a skew-field, \(\sigma\) is an involution of \(K\) and \(K_0\) is an additive subgroup of \(K\) such that
  \[1_K \in K_0, \quad \{a + a^\sigma \mid a \in K\} =: K_\sigma \subseteq K_0 \subseteq \text{Fix}(\sigma), \quad \forall a \in K: a^\sigma K_0 a \subseteq K_0.\]

- An involutory set \((K, K_0, \sigma)\) is proper if we have \(\sigma \neq \text{id}_K\) and \(\langle K_0 \rangle = K\) as rings.

- Two involutory sets \((K, K_0, \sigma)\) and \((\tilde{K}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})\) are isomorphic if there is an isomorphism \(\phi: K \to \tilde{K}\) of skew-fields such that
  \[\phi(K_0) = \tilde{K}_0, \quad \phi \circ \sigma = \tilde{\sigma} \circ \phi.\]

(5.2) Lemma

Let \((K, K_0, \sigma)\) be an involutory set. If \(K_0\) is commutative, then \((K, K_0, \sigma)\) is non-proper. In particular, \(K\) is non-commutative if \((K, K_0, \sigma)\) is proper.

Proof

Suppose that we have \(\langle K_0 \rangle = K\) and \(\sigma \neq \text{id}_K\). Then \(K\) is commutative and \(K_0 = \text{Fix}(\sigma) \subseteq K\) is a field, cf. remark (11.3) of [TW]. But then we have

\[K = \langle K_0 \rangle = K_0 \neq K\]

\(\square\)

§ 5.2 Jordan Isomorphisms of Involutory Sets

The following result is essential for the classification of Jordan isomorphisms of pseudo-quadratic spaces on the one hand, and on the other hand, it is essential for the classification of a certain class of 443-foundations.

Parts of the solution can be deduced from paragraph 4.10 of [K]. However, there are still some details which have to be worked out. But for reasons of brevity, we don’t try to complete the proof at this point and suppose the result to be true.

(5.3) Theorem

Let \((K, K_0, \sigma)\) be a proper involutory set, let \((\tilde{K}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})\) be an involutory set and let \(\gamma: K_0 \to \tilde{K}_0\) be a Jordan isomorphism such that \(\gamma(1_K) = 1_{\tilde{K}}\). Then \(\gamma\) is induced by an isomorphism

\[\phi: (K, K_0, \sigma) \to (\tilde{K}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma}).\]

In particular, \((\tilde{K}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})\) is proper as well.
§ 5.3 Involutory Sets of Quadratic Type

Quadrangles parametrized by non-proper involutory sets can equally be described by quadratic spaces, cf. chapter 38 of [TW]. Although they don’t appear explicitly in the description of the six families, they occur as substructures of proper pseudo-quadratic spaces, the parametrizing structures for quadrangles of purely pseudo-quadratic form type.

(5.4) Definition Let \((A, F, \sigma)\) be an involutory set (with \(A\) possibly an alternative division ring) and \(K := Z(A)\). Then the involutory set is quadratic of type

(i) if we have \(A = K\), \(\text{Char } K = 2\), \(K^2 \subseteq F \neq K\) and \(\sigma = \text{id}_A\),

(ii) if we have \(A = K = F\) and \(\sigma = \text{id}_A\),

(iii) if we have \(A = K\), \(K/F\) is a separable quadratic extension and \(\langle \sigma \rangle = \text{Gal}(K/F)\),

(iv) if \(A\) is a quaternion division algebra over \(K\), \(F = K\) and \(\sigma = \sigma_s\),

(v) if \(A\) is an octonion division algebra over \(K\), \(F = K\) and \(\sigma = \sigma_s\),

where \(\sigma_s\) denotes the standard involution, cf. proposition (3.32). We denote the corresponding norm by \(N\) and the corresponding trace by \(T\).

(5.5) Remark The following lemma gives a criterion when an involutory set is of quadratic type. We will need it for the classification of a certain class of 443-foundations.

(5.6) Lemma Let \((K, K_0, \sigma)\) be an involutory set, let \(F\) be a subfield of the center \(Z(K)\) and let \(\gamma \in \text{Aut}(K, +)\) such that

\[ \gamma(1_K) = 1_K, \quad \forall x \in K : \gamma(x)x \in F. \]

Then the following holds:

(a) \(K\) is quadratic over \(F\).

(b) If \(K\) is non-commutative, then \(K\) is a quaternion division algebra and we have

\[ F = Z(K), \quad \gamma = \sigma_s. \]

Proof

(a) Given \(x \in K\), we have

\[ \gamma(x) + x = 1_K + \gamma(x) + x + \gamma(x)x - 1_K - \gamma(x)x = (1_K + \gamma(x))(1_K + x) - 1_K - \gamma(x)x = \gamma(1_K + x)(1_K + x) - 1_K - \gamma(x)x \in F. \]

If we set

\[ m_x := t^2 - \gamma(x)x \cdot t + \gamma(x)x \in F[t], \]

we have

\[ m_x(x) = x^2 - \gamma(x)x - x^2 + \gamma(x)x = 0_K, \]

thus \(K\) is quadratic over \(F\).

(b) If \(K\) is non-commutative, proposition (3.32) implies that \(K\) is a quaternion division algebra with \(F = Z(K)\). Moreover, we have

\[ \forall x \in K : \sigma_s(x) = T(x) - x = \gamma(x) + x - x = \gamma(x) \]

and therefore

\[ \gamma = \sigma_s. \]
(5.7) **Remark**  The following results will be needed for the solution of the isomorphism problem for Moufang sets of pseudo-quadratic form type in §11.

(5.8) **Lemma**  Let $\mathbb{D}$ be a skew-field and let $\mathbb{E}$ be a maximal subfield of $\mathbb{D}$. Then we have

$$C_\mathbb{D}(\mathbb{E}) = \mathbb{E}.$$ 

**Proof**

This results from corollary (4.9) in chapter 8 of [WSch].

(5.9) **Notation**  Let $\mathbb{H}$ be a quaternion division algebra with center $\mathbb{K}$. Given $x \in \mathbb{H} \setminus \mathbb{K}$, let $\mathbb{E}_x := (1_{\mathbb{H}}, x)_{\mathbb{K}}$ be the quadratic subfield of $\mathbb{H}$ generated by $1_{\mathbb{H}}$ and $x$, cf. (20.9) of [TW].

(5.10) **Corollary**  Let $\mathbb{H}$ be a quaternion division algebra and let $x, y \in \mathbb{H} \setminus \mathbb{Z}(\mathbb{H})$. Then we have

$$xy = yx \Rightarrow \mathbb{E}_x = \mathbb{E}_y.$$ 

**Proof**

By lemma (5.8), we have

$$\mathbb{E}_x = (1, x)_{\mathbb{Z}(\mathbb{H})} \subseteq C_\mathbb{H}(\mathbb{E}_y) = \mathbb{E}_y.$$  

(5.11) **Lemma**  For $i = 1, 2$, let $(\mathbb{A}_i, \mathbb{F}_i, \sigma_i)$ be quadratic of type (iii), (iv) or (v) with corresponding norms and traces $N_i$ and $T_i$, respectively, and let $\phi : \mathbb{A}_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_2$ be an isomorphism of alternative rings such that $\phi(\mathbb{F}_1) = \mathbb{F}_2$. Then we have

$$\forall x \in \mathbb{A}_i : \quad \phi(N_1(x)) = N_2(\phi(x)),$$

$$\phi(T_1(x)) = T_2(\phi(x)).$$

**Proof**

Given $x \in \mathbb{A}_i$, we have

$$x^2 - T_1(x)x + N_1(x) = 0_{\mathbb{A}_i}, \quad \phi(x)^2 - T_2(\phi(x))\phi(x) + N_2(\phi(x)) = 0_{\mathbb{A}_2}$$

and hence

$$0_{\mathbb{A}_i} = \phi^{-1}(\phi(x)^2 - T_2(\phi(x))\phi(x) + N_2(\phi(x)))$$

$$= \phi^{-1}(x^2 - \phi^{-1}(T_2(\phi(x)))x + \phi^{-1}(N_2(\phi(x)))) = x^2 - \phi^{-1}(T_2(\phi(x)))x + \phi^{-1}(N_2(\phi(x))).$$

As the maps $T_1$ and $N_1$ are uniquely determined by the minimum equation, we obtain

$$N_1(x) = \phi^{-1}(N_2(\phi(x))), \quad \phi(N_1(x)) = N_2(\phi(x)),$$

$$T_1(x) = \phi^{-1}(T_2(\phi(x))), \quad \phi(T_1(x)) = T_2(\phi(x)).$$

(5.12) **Corollary**  For $i = 1, 2$, let $(\mathbb{A}_i, \mathbb{F}_i, \sigma_i)$ be quadratic of type (iii), (iv) or (v) with corresponding norms and traces $N_i$ and $T_i$, respectively, and let $\phi : \mathbb{A}_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{A}_2$ be an isomorphism of alternative rings such that $\phi(\mathbb{F}_1) = \mathbb{F}_2$. Then we have

$$\phi \circ \sigma_1 = \sigma_2 \circ \phi.$$ 

**Proof**

Given $x \in \mathbb{A}_1$, we have

$$\phi\sigma_1(x) = \phi(\bar{x}) = \phi(N_1(x) \cdot x^{-1}) = \phi(N_1(x)) \cdot \phi(x^{-1}) = N_2(\phi(x)) \cdot \phi(x)^{-1} = \overline{\phi(x)} = \sigma_2(\phi(x)).$$
(5.13) **Lemma** Let \( H \) be a quaternion division algebra, let \( E \) be a separable quadratic subfield and let \( y \in H \setminus E \). Then we have
\[
y \in E^\perp \iff \forall x \in E : xy = y\overline{x}.
\]

**Proof**
```
"\(\Rightarrow\)" This holds by lemma (3.26) (c).

"\(\Leftarrow\)" Let \( e \in E^\perp \) and \( y_1, y_2 \in E \) such that \( y = y_1 + ey_2 \). Given \( x \in E \setminus \mathbb{Z}(H) \), we have
\[
y_1x + ey_2\overline{x} = y_1x + e\overline{xy_2} = x(y_1 + e \cdot y_2) = xy = y\overline{x} = y_1\overline{x} + ey_2\overline{x},
\]

hence
\[
y_1x = y_1\overline{x}, \quad y_1(x - \overline{x}) = 0_H, \quad y_1 = 0_H, \quad y = ey_2 \in E^\perp.
\]

Notice that we use lemma (3.26) several times.
```

(5.14) **Remark** The following results give a description for some extensions of isomorphisms between subfields of two given composition algebras.

(5.15) **Lemma** For \( i = 1, 2 \), let \( E_i/\mathbb{K}_i \) be a separable quadratic extension and let \( t_i \in E_i \setminus \mathbb{K}_i \). Let \( \phi : \mathbb{K}_1 \to \mathbb{K}_2 \) be an isomorphism of fields. Then the map
\[
\tilde{\phi} : E_1 \to E_2, \quad x + t_1 \cdot y \mapsto \phi(x) + t_2 \cdot \phi(y)
\]
is an isomorphism of fields if and only if we have
\[
\phi(N_1(t_1)) = N_2(t_2), \quad \phi(T_1(t_1)) = T_2(t_2).
\]

**Proof**
```
"\(\Rightarrow\)" This holds by lemma (5.11).

"\(\Leftarrow\)" This is a direct calculation using the minimum equation.
```

(5.16) **Lemma** For \( i = 1, 2 \), let \( \mathbb{H}_i = (E_i/\mathbb{K}_i, \beta_i) \) be a quaternion division algebra and let \( t_i \in E_i^\perp \). Let \( \phi : E_1 \to E_2 \) be an isomorphism of fields. Then the map
\[
\tilde{\phi} : \mathbb{H}_1 \to \mathbb{H}_2, \quad x + t_1 \cdot y \mapsto \phi(x) + t_2 \cdot \phi(y)
\]
is an isomorphism of skew-fields if and only if we have
\[
\phi(N_1(t_1)) = N_2(t_2).
\]

**Proof**
```
"\(\Rightarrow\)" This holds by lemma (5.11).

"\(\Leftarrow\)" This is a direct calculation using the minimum equation and lemma (5.13).
```

(5.17) **Remark** We finally recall the list of quadratic spaces corresponding to involutory sets of quadratic type.
(5.18) Definition A quadratic space \((L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\) is of type

(i) if \(\mathbb{F} := L_0\) is a field with \(\text{Char} \mathbb{F} = 2\), \(\mathbb{F}^2 \subseteq \mathbb{F} \neq \mathbb{F}\), \(\sigma = \text{id}_\mathbb{F}\) and \(q = N^2_\mathbb{F}\),

(ii) if we have \(L_0 = \mathbb{K}, \sigma = \text{id}_\mathbb{K}\) and \(q = N^1_\mathbb{K}\),

(iii) if \(\mathbb{E} := L_0\) is a field, \(\mathbb{E}/\mathbb{K}\) is a separable quadratic extension, \(\langle \sigma \rangle = \text{Gal}(\mathbb{E}/\mathbb{K})\) and \(q = N^3_\mathbb{E}\),

(iv) if \(\mathbb{H} := L_0\) is a quaternion division algebra over \(\mathbb{K}\), \(\sigma = \sigma_s\) and \(q = N^4_\mathbb{H}\),

(v) if \(\mathbb{O} := L_0\) is an octonion division algebra over \(\mathbb{K}\), \(\sigma = \sigma_s\) and \(q = N^5_\mathbb{O}\).

(5.19) Remark

(a) By corollary (4.14), a quadratic space \((L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\) with \(\dim_\mathbb{K} L_0 \leq 2\) is of type (i)-(iii).

(b) We will see that the Moufang sets of a quadratic space \((\mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F}, N^2_\mathbb{F})\) of type (m) and of the corresponding alternative division ring \(\mathbb{A}\) coincide, cf. lemma (31.23).

Chapter 6 Indifferent Sets

Quadrangles of purely indifferent type are parametrized by proper indifferent sets.

(6.1) Definition

- An indifferent set is a triple \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0)\), where \(\mathbb{K}\) is a field with \(\text{Char} \mathbb{K} = 2\) and \(\mathbb{K}_0\) and \(\mathbb{L}_0\) are additive subgroups of \(\mathbb{K}\) containing \(1_\mathbb{K}\) such that

\[ \mathbb{K}_0^2 \mathbb{L}_0 \subseteq \mathbb{L}_0, \quad \mathbb{L}_0 \mathbb{K}_0 \subseteq \mathbb{K}_0, \quad \langle \mathbb{K}_0 \rangle = \mathbb{K} \text{ as rings}. \]

- An indifferent set is proper if we have \(\mathbb{K}_0 \neq \mathbb{K}\) and \(\mathbb{L}_0 \neq \mathbb{L} := \langle \mathbb{L}_0 \rangle\).

- Two indifferent sets \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0)\) and \((\mathbb{K}, \tilde{\mathbb{K}_0}, \tilde{\mathbb{L}_0})\) are isomorphic if there is an isomorphism \(\phi : \mathbb{K} \to \mathbb{K}\) of fields such that

\[ \phi(\mathbb{K}_0) = \tilde{\mathbb{K}_0}, \quad \phi(\mathbb{L}_0) = \tilde{\mathbb{L}_0}. \]

(6.2) Lemma Let \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0)\) be an indifferent set. Then \((\mathbb{L}, \mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K}_0^2)\) is an indifferent set.

Proof This is (10.2) of [TW].

(6.3) Definition The opposite of an indifferent set \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0)\) is the indifferent set \((\mathbb{L}, \mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K}_0^2)\).

(6.4) Lemma Given a proper indifferent set \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0)\), its opposite \((\mathbb{L}, \mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K}_0^2)\) is proper.

Proof Since \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0)\) is proper, we have \(\mathbb{L}_0 \neq \mathbb{L}\). We have to show \(\mathbb{K}_0^2 \neq \langle \mathbb{K}_0^2 \rangle\). By remark (10.8) of [TW], the opposite of \((\mathbb{L}, \mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K}_0^2)\) is \((\mathbb{K}^2, \mathbb{K}_0^2, \mathbb{L}_0^2)\), and we have

\[ (\mathbb{K}^2, \mathbb{K}_0^2, \mathbb{L}_0^2) \cong (\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0) \]

as indifferent sets. In particular, we have \(\langle \mathbb{K}_0^2 \rangle = \mathbb{K}^2\). Moreover, we have \(\mathbb{K}_0^2 \neq \mathbb{K}^2\) since the map \(\text{Fr} : \mathbb{K} \to \mathbb{K}, x \mapsto x^2\) is injective and \(\mathbb{K}_0 \neq \mathbb{K}\) by assumption. We finally obtain

\[ \mathbb{K}_0^2 \neq \mathbb{K}^2 = \langle \mathbb{K}_0^2 \rangle. \]

□

- 45 -
Chapter 7  Pseudo-Quadratic Spaces

Quadrangles of purely pseudo-quadratic form type are parametrized by proper pseudo-quadratic spaces.

§ 7.1  Basic Definitions and Basic Properties

First of all we give the basic definitions and introduce the Moufang set of pseudo-quadratic form type, more precisely, its associated group, corresponding to a pseudo-quadratic space.

(7.1) Definition

- An (anisotropic) right (resp. left) pseudo-quadratic space is a quintuple \( \Xi = (K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q) \) such that \((K, K_0, \sigma)\) is an involutory set, \(L_0\) is a right (resp. left) vector space over \(K\) and \(q\) is an (anisotropic) pseudo-quadratic form on \(L_0\) with respect to \(\sigma\), i.e., there is a skew-hermitian form \(f\) on \(L_0\) such that the following holds:

\[
\begin{align*}
(P1) & \quad \forall a, b \in L_0 : \quad q(a + b) \equiv q(a) + q(b) + f(a, b) \mod K_0, \\
(P2) & \quad \forall a \in L_0, t \in K : \quad q(at) \equiv t^\sigma q(a)t \mod K_0 \text{ (resp. } q(ta) \equiv tq(a)t^\sigma \mod K_0), \\
(P3) & \quad q(a) \equiv 0_K \mod K_0 \iff a = 0_{L_0}.
\end{align*}
\]

- A pseudo-quadratic space \((K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)\) is proper if we have \(\sigma \neq \text{id}_K\), \(L_0 \neq \{0\}\) and if the associated skew-hermitian form \(f\) is non-degenerate.

- Two pseudo-quadratic space \(\Xi\) and \(\tilde{\Xi}\) are isomorphic if there is an isomorphism \(\Phi = (\varphi, \phi) : (L_0, K) \to (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K})\) of vector spaces such that \(\phi : (K, K_0, \sigma) \to (\tilde{K}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})\) is an isomorphism of involutory sets and such that

\[
\phi \circ q \equiv \tilde{q} \circ \varphi \mod \tilde{K}_0.
\]

(7.2) Lemma  The skew-hermitian form \(f\) is uniquely determined by (7.1) (P1) and satisfies

\[
\forall a \in L_0 : \quad f(a, a) = q(a) - q(a)^\sigma.
\]

Proof

This is (11.19) of [TW]. Notice that we have \(K_0 \neq K\) since \(\Xi\) is proper.

(7.3) Corollary  Given an isomorphism \(\Phi = (\varphi, \phi) : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi}\) of pseudo-quadratic spaces, we have

\[
\forall a, b \in L_0 : \quad f(\varphi(a), \varphi(b)) = \phi(f(a, b)).
\]

Proof

We have to show that

\[
\forall a, b \in L_0 : \quad \phi^{-1}(f(\varphi(a), \varphi(b))) \equiv q(a + b) - q(a) - q(b) \mod K_0.
\]

Given \(a, b \in L_0\), we have

\[
\phi^{-1}(f(\varphi(a), \varphi(b))) \equiv \phi^{-1}(\tilde{q}(\varphi(a+b)) - \tilde{q}(\varphi(a)) - \tilde{q}(\varphi(b)) + \tilde{K}_0) \\
= \phi^{-1}(\tilde{\phi}(q(a+b)) - \tilde{\phi}(q(a)) - \tilde{\phi}(q(b)) + \tilde{K}_0) \\
= q(a+b) - q(a) - q(b) + K_0.
\]

\[\square\]
Chapter 7 Pseudo-Quadratic Spaces

(7.4) Remark  Let $\Xi$ be a pseudo-quadratic space and let $a \in L_0$.

- Assume $\text{Char } K \neq 2$. Then we have
  \[ 4q(a) \equiv q(2a) \equiv 2q(a) + f(a,a) \mod K_0, \quad q(a) \equiv \frac{f(a,a)}{2} \mod K_0. \]

- Assume $\text{Char } K = 2$. Then we have $f(a,a) = q(a) + q(a)^\sigma \in K_0$.

(7.5) Definition  Given a pseudo-quadratic space $\Xi$, we set
  \[ T := T(\Xi) := \{(a,t) \in L_0 \times K \mid q(a) - t \in K_0\}. \]

(7.6) Notation  Throughout the rest of this chapter, let $\Xi$ be a proper pseudo-quadratic space and let $T$ be the corresponding set as in definition (7.5).

(7.7) Lemma  Given $(a,t) \in T$, $k \in K$, we have
  \[ (a,t+k) \in T \iff k \in K_0. \]

Proof  Given $(a,t) \in T$ and $k \in K$, we have
  \[ (a,t+k) \in T \iff q(a) - t - k \in K_0 \iff k \in q(a) - t + K_0 = K_0. \]

(7.8) Corollary  Given $(a,t) \in T$, we have $f(a,a) = t - t^\sigma$.

Proof  Let $(a,t) \in T$. By lemma (7.7), there is an element $k \in K_0$ such that $t = q(a) + k$, hence
  \[ t - t^\sigma = q(a) + k - q(a)^\sigma - k^\sigma = q(a) - q(a)^\sigma = f(a,a) \]
  by lemma (7.2).

(7.9) Corollary  Let
  \[ \cdot : T \times T \to T, \ (a,t) \cdot (b,v) := (a + b, t + v + f(b,a)) \ . \]
Then $(T,\cdot)$ is a group with $Z(T) = \{(0_{L_0},t) \mid t \in K_0\} \cong K_0$ and $(a,t)^{-1} = (-a,-t^\sigma)$ for each $(a,t) \in T$.

Proof  This results from (11.24) and (38.10) of [TW]. Notice that $\Xi$ is proper.

(7.10) Remark  In the following, we don’t distinguish between $Z(T)$ and $K_0$, i.e., we consider $K_0$ to be a subset of $T$ via the above identification.

(7.11) Lemma  Given $(a,t),(b,v) \in T$, we have
  \[ (a,t) \cdot (b,v) \in K_0 \iff a = -b. \]

Proof  Given $(a,t),(b,v) \in T$, we have
  \[ (a,t) \cdot (b,v) \in K_0 \iff (a + b, t + v + f(b,a)) \in K_0 \iff a + b = 0_{L_0} \iff a = -b. \]

- 47 -
§ 7.2 Jordan Isomorphisms

We collect some first results about isomorphisms preserving the Moufang set structure.

(7.12) Notation Throughout this paragraph, let $\tilde{\Xi}$ be an additional pseudo-quadratic space, let $\tilde{T}$ be the corresponding group as in definition (7.5) and let $\gamma : T \to \tilde{T}$ be an isomorphism of groups.

(7.13) Remark As $T$ is non-abelian and $\gamma$ is an isomorphism of groups, we have $\tilde{\sigma} \neq \text{id}_{\tilde{\Xi}}$, $L_0 \neq \{0\}$, and the associated skew-hermitian form is not identically zero, i.e., $\Xi$ is pre-proper. Moreover, it is proper if we have $\text{Char} \tilde{\mathbb{K}} \neq 2$, and, if $\text{Char} \mathbb{K} = 2$, we may replace $\Xi$ by a proper pseudo-quadratic space, cf. definition (35.5) of [TW].

Thus we get a satisfying solution of the isomorphism problem for Moufang sets of pseudo-quadratic form type if we restrict to the case of two proper pseudo-quadratic spaces.

(7.14) Corollary We have $\gamma(K_0) = \tilde{K}_0$.

Proof We have $\gamma(K_0) = \gamma(Z(T)) = Z(\tilde{T}) = \tilde{K}_0$.

(7.15) Lemma Let $\varphi_1 : T \to \tilde{L}_0$, $\varphi_2 : T \to \tilde{\mathbb{K}}$ defined by

$$\gamma(a, t) = (\varphi_1(a, t), \varphi_2(a, t)) .$$

Then we have

$$\forall (a, t) \in T : \varphi_1(a, t) = \varphi_1(a) .$$

Moreover, the $\varphi_1 : L_0 \to \tilde{L}_0$ is an isomorphism of groups.

Proof

• Given $(a, t), (a, u) \in T$, we have

$$(a, t) \cdot (a, u)^{-1} = (a, t) \cdot (-a, -u^\sigma) \in K_0 = Z(T)$$

by lemma (7.11); therefore,

$$\left(\varphi_1(a, t), \varphi_2(a, t)\right) \cdot \left(-\varphi_1(a, u), -\varphi_2(a, u)^\sigma\right) = \gamma_2(a, t) \cdot \gamma_2(a, u)^{-1}$$

$$= \gamma_2((a, t) \cdot (a, u)^{-1}) \in Z(\tilde{T}) = \tilde{K}_0$$

and thus $\varphi_1(a, t) = \varphi_1(a, u)$ by lemma (7.11) again.

• We have $(a, q(a)) \in T$ for each $a \in L_0$, hence $\varphi_1$ is well-defined.

• As the multiplication in $T$ is additive in the first component, $\varphi_1$ is additive.

• Let $(a, t) \in T$ such that $a \in \text{Ker} \varphi_1$. Then we have

$$\gamma(a, t) = (0_{L_0}, \varphi_2(a, t)) \in \mathbb{K}_0 \subseteq Z(\tilde{T}) ,$$

hence $(a, t) \in Z(T) = K_0$ by corollary (7.9) and thus $a = 0_{L_0}$.

• We have $(a, q(a)) \in \tilde{T}$ for each $a \in \tilde{L}_0$. As $\gamma$ is surjective, $\varphi_1$ is surjective as well.

- 48 -
(7.16) Definition A Jordan isomorphism is an isomorphism of groups \( \gamma : T \rightarrow \tilde{T} \) with \( \gamma(0,1_k) = (0,1_{\tilde{k}}) \) such that the maps \( \varphi_1 : T \rightarrow \tilde{L}_0, \varphi_2 : T \rightarrow \tilde{K} \) defined by
\[
\gamma(a,t) = (\varphi_1(a,t) = \varphi_1(a), \varphi_2(a,t))
\]
satisfy
\[
\begin{align*}
\varphi_1(bt^\sigma - at^{-1}f(a,b)t^\sigma) &= \varphi_1(b)\varphi_2(a,t)^\delta - \varphi_1(a)\varphi_2(a,t)^{-1}\tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a),\varphi_1(b))\varphi_2(a,t)^\delta, \\
\varphi_2(bt^\sigma - at^{-1}f(a,b)t^\sigma, tvt^\sigma) &= \varphi_2(a,t)\varphi_2(b,v)\varphi_2(a,t)^\delta
\end{align*}
\]
for all \((a,t), (b,v) \in T\).

(7.17) Definition Given \((a,t) \in T^*\), the Hua-map with respect to \((a,t)\) is
\[
h_{(a,t)} : T \rightarrow T, \ (b,v) \mapsto (bt^\sigma - at^{-1}f(a,b)t^\sigma, tvt^\sigma).
\]

(7.18) Remark A Jordan isomorphism could equally be defined as an isomorphism of groups \( \gamma : T \rightarrow \tilde{T} \) satisfying \( \gamma(0,1_k) = (0,1_{\tilde{k}}) \) and preserving the Hua-maps, i.e., given \((a,t), (b,v) \in T^*\), we have
\[
\gamma(h_{(a,t)}(b,v)) = \tilde{h}_{\gamma(a,t)}(\gamma(b,v)).
\]

(7.19) Lemma We have \( h_{(a,t)} \in \text{Aut}(T) \) for each \((a,t) \in T^*\).

Proof This is theorem 2 of [DW].

\(\square\)

(7.20) Notation Since the first component in \( h_{(a,t)}(b,v) \) is independent of \( v \), we may restrict \( h_{(a,t)} \) to the first component, i.e., given \( b \in L_0 \), we set
\[
h_{i(a,t)}(b) := bt^\sigma - at^{-1}f(a,b)t^\sigma.
\]

(7.21) Lemma Let \( \gamma : T \rightarrow \tilde{T} \) be a Jordan isomorphism. Then the following holds:

(a) Given \( b \in L_0, (0_{L_0}, t) \in K_0 \), we have \( \varphi_1(b \cdot t) = \varphi_1(b) \cdot \varphi_2(0_{L_0}, t) \).

(b) Given \((a,t) \in T, (0_{L_0}, v) \in K_0 \), we have \( \varphi_2(0_{L_0}, tvt^\sigma) = \varphi_2(a,t) \cdot \varphi_2(0_{L_0}, v) \cdot \varphi_2(a,t)^\delta \).

(c) The map \( \phi : K_0 \rightarrow \tilde{K}_0, t \mapsto \varphi_2(0_{L_0}, t) \) is a Jordan isomorphism as in definition (5.1).

(d) Given \((a,t) \in T \) and \( s \in K_0 \), we have \( \varphi_2(a,t+s) = \varphi_2(a,t) + \phi(s) \).

Proof

(a) This results from identity (7.1) with \( a = 0_{L_0} \). Notice that we have
\[
K_0 \subseteq \text{Fix}(\sigma), \quad \gamma(K_0) = \tilde{K}_0 \subseteq \text{Fix}(\tilde{\sigma}).
\]

(b) This results from identity (7.2) with \( b = 0_{L_0} \).

(c) By corollary (7.14), \( \phi \) is an isomorphism of groups. Given \((0_{L_0}, t), (0_{L_0}, v) \in K_0 \), we have
\[
\varphi_2(0,tvt) = \varphi_2(0,tvt^\sigma) = \varphi_2(0,t) \cdot \varphi_2(0,v) \cdot \varphi_2(a,t)^\delta = \varphi_2(0,t) \cdot \varphi_2(0,v) \cdot \varphi_2(0,t).
\]

(d) Given \((a,t) \in T \) and \( s \in K_0 \), we have
\[
(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_2(a,t+s)) = \gamma(a,t+s) = \gamma(a,t) \cdot \gamma(0,s) = (\varphi_1(a), \varphi_2(a,t)) \cdot (0, \phi(s)) = (\varphi_1(a), \varphi_2(a,t) + \phi(s)).
\]

\(\square\)
Part III

Jordan Isomorphisms of Pseudo-Quadratic Spaces
For the classification of 443-foundations in part IX, we will need a part of the solution of the isomorphism problem for Moufang sets of pseudo-quadratic form type. We state a version of the result at this point and break up the proof into several steps. The main point is that under certain conditions, a Jordan isomorphism of pseudo-quadratic spaces is induced by an isomorphism of the corresponding pseudo-quadratic spaces, and we handle the possible cases one by one.

Then we have a closer look at the exceptions, which only occur in small dimensions, before we finally show that each of the appearing maps really induces a Jordan isomorphism.

Chapter 8 A Partial Result

(8.1) Theorem  Let $\Xi$ and $\tilde{\Xi}$ be proper pseudo-quadratic spaces, let $\gamma : T \to \tilde{T}$ be a Jordan isomorphism and suppose that one of the following holds:

(i) The involutory set $(K, K_0, \sigma)$ is proper.

(ii) The involutory set $(K, K_0, \sigma)$ is quadratic of type (iii) or (iv) and $\dim L_0 \geq 3$.

(iii) The involutory set $(K, K_0, \sigma)$ is quadratic of type (iii) or (iv), $\dim L_0 \leq 2$ and $\tilde{K} \cong K \neq F_4$.

Then $\gamma$ is induced by an isomorphism $\Phi : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi}$ of pseudo-quadratic spaces.

Proof 
This results from theorem (9.8), theorem (10.38), theorem (11.11) and theorem (12.18).

(8.2) Notation Throughout this part, let $\Xi$ and $\tilde{\Xi}$ be proper pseudo-quadratic spaces, let $\gamma : T \to \tilde{T}$ be a Jordan isomorphism and let $\phi : K_0 \to \tilde{K}_0$, $t \mapsto \phi_2(0, L_0, t)$.

Chapter 9 The Involutory Set Is Proper

The first case is that of a proper involutory set $(K, K_0, \sigma)$. The solution of the isomorphism problem for proper involutory sets yields an isomorphism $\phi : K \to \tilde{K}$. From identity (7.1) and the fact that $K_0$ generates $K$ as a ring, we deduce that $(\varphi_1, \phi) : (L_0, K) \to (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K})$ is an isomorphism of vector spaces.

Finally, we show that the second component of $\gamma$ is induced by $\phi$, using identity (7.2) and the fact that the dimension of $\langle K_0 \rangle_{Z(K)}$ over $Z(K)$ is at least 2.

(9.1) Notation Throughout this chapter, let $(K, K_0, \sigma)$ be proper.

(9.2) Lemma Let $(\tilde{K}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})$ be a proper involutory set and let $s, t \in \tilde{K}$ be such that

$$\forall u \in \tilde{K}_0 : \quad sus^\tilde{\sigma} = tut^\tilde{\sigma}.$$ 

Then we have $t^{-1}s \in Z(\tilde{K})$.

Proof First of all we notice that

$$ss^\tilde{\sigma} = s \cdot 1_{\tilde{K}} \cdot s^\tilde{\sigma} = t \cdot 1_{\tilde{K}} \cdot t^\tilde{\sigma} = tt^\tilde{\sigma}$$

and thus

$$\forall u \in \tilde{K}_0 : \quad sus^{-1} = sus^\tilde{\sigma}(ss^\tilde{\sigma})^{-1} = tut^\tilde{\sigma}(tt^\tilde{\sigma})^{-1} = tut^{-1}.$$ 

It follows that

$$\forall u \in \langle \tilde{K}_0 \rangle = \tilde{K} : \quad t^{-1}su(t^{-1}s) = u,$$

hence $t^{-1}s \in Z(\tilde{K})$.  

- 53 -
(9.3) Remark  As \((K, K_0, \sigma)\) is proper, the map \(\phi : K_0 \rightarrow \tilde{K}_0\) as defined in notation (8.2) is induced by an isomorphism \(\phi : (K, K_0, \sigma) \rightarrow (\tilde{K}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})\) of involutory sets, and \((\tilde{K}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})\) is proper, cf. theorem (5.3).

(9.4) Corollary  Let \((a, t) \in T\). Then there is an element \(\lambda \in Z(\tilde{K})\) such that
\[
\varphi_2(a, t) = \lambda \cdot \phi(t) .
\]
Proof  By lemma (7.21) (b), we have
\[
\phi(t)\phi(v)\phi(t)^\sigma = \varphi_2(0, tv\sigma) = \varphi_2(a, t)\varphi_2(0, v)\varphi_2(a, t)^\sigma = \varphi_2(a, t)\phi(v)\varphi_2(a, t)^\sigma
\]
for all \((a, t) \in T, v \in K_0\) and thus
\[
\phi(t) \cdot \tilde{v} \cdot \phi(t)^\sigma = \varphi_2(a, t) \cdot \tilde{v} \cdot \varphi_2(a, t)^\sigma
\]
for all \((a, t) \in T, \tilde{v} \in \tilde{K}_0\). Now the assertion results from lemma (9.2).

(9.5) Lemma  We have
\[
\dim_{Z(\tilde{K})}(\tilde{K}_0) \geq 2 .
\]
Proof  As \((K, K_0, \sigma)\) is proper, there is an element \(x \in K_0 \setminus Z(\tilde{K})\) by lemma (5.2).

(9.6) Corollary  Let \((a, s) \in T\). Then there is an element \(t \in K\) such that
\[
(a, t) \in T , \quad s \notin \langle t^\sigma \rangle_{Z(\tilde{K})} .
\]
Proof  We have \((a, -s^\sigma) \in T\). By lemma (9.5), there is an element \(u \in K_0\) such that \(s \notin \langle u \rangle_{Z(\tilde{K})}\), thus
\[
s \notin \langle -s + u \rangle_{Z(\tilde{K})} = \langle (-s^\sigma + u)^{\sigma^2} \rangle_{Z(\tilde{K})} = \langle (-s^\sigma + u)^\sigma \rangle_{Z(\tilde{K})} ,
\]
and by lemma (7.7), we have \((a, -s^\sigma + u) \in T\).

(9.7) Lemma  Given \((a, s) \in T\), we have
\[
\varphi_2(a, s) = \phi(s) .
\]
Proof  Let \((a, s) \in T\) and let \(t \in K\) be as in corollary (9.6). Notice that \(s + t^\sigma \in K_0\). By corollary (9.4), there are \(\lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in Z(\tilde{K})\) such that
\[
\varphi_2(a, s) = \lambda_1 \cdot \phi(s) , \quad \varphi_2(-a, t) = \lambda_2 \cdot \phi(t) .
\]
Observeing corollary (7.8), we obtain
\[
(0, \phi(s) + \phi(t^\sigma)) = \gamma(0, s + t^\sigma) = \gamma(0, s + t - f(a, a))
\]
\[
= \gamma(a, s) \cdot \varphi_2(-a, t) = (\varphi_2(a, a)) \cdot (\varphi_1(-a), \varphi_2(-a, t))
\]
and thus \(\lambda_1 = 1_{\tilde{K}}\) by the linear independence of \(\phi(s)\) and \(\phi(t^\sigma)\), cf. remark (9.3).
\textbf{(9.8) Theorem} If \((\mathbb{K}, K_0, \sigma)\) is proper, the map \(\Phi : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi}\) defined by
\[
\Phi := (\varphi_1, \phi) : (L_0, \mathbb{K}) \to (\tilde{L}, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}), \quad (a, t) \mapsto (\varphi_1(a), \phi(t))
\]
is an isomorphism of pseudo-quadratic spaces satisfying
\[
\forall (a, t) \in T : \quad \Phi(a, t) = \gamma(a, t) .
\]

\textit{Proof}

- By remark (9.3), the map \(\phi : (\mathbb{K}, K_0, \sigma) \to (\tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})\) is an isomorphism of involutory sets.

- By lemma (7.15), the map \(\varphi_1 : L_0 \to \tilde{L}_0\) is an isomorphism of groups. Given \(a \in L_0\) and \(t_1, \ldots, t_n \in K_0\), we have
\[
\varphi_1(a \cdot t_1 \cdots t_n) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi(t_1) \cdots \phi(t_n) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi(t_1 \cdots t_n)
\]
by lemma (7.21) (a), thus \((\varphi_1, \phi)\) is an isomorphism of vector spaces as we have \(\langle K_0 \rangle = \mathbb{K}\).

- Given \((a, t) \in T\), we have
\[
\tilde{q}(\varphi_1(a)) \in \varphi_2(a, t) + \tilde{K}_0 = \phi(t) + \tilde{K}_0 = \phi(t + K_0) = \phi(q(a) + K_0) = \phi(q(a)) + \tilde{K}_0
\]
by lemma (9.7).

- Given \((a, t) \in T\), we have
\[
\Phi(a, t) = (\varphi_1(a), \phi(t)) = (\varphi_1(a), \varphi_2(a, t)) = \gamma(a, t) .
\]

\(\Box \)

\textbf{(9.9) Remark} If \((\mathbb{K}, K_0, \sigma)\) is non-proper, then \((\mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F}, \sigma) := (\mathbb{K}, K_0, \sigma)\) is quadratic of type (iii) or (iv), cf. (38.14) of [TW]. It would be nice to have the same result in this case. However, this is false in general, thus we will need some additional assumptions.

\section*{Chapter 10 The Involutory Set Is of Quadratic Type}

The second case is that of an involutory set which is of quadratic type and \(\dim_{\mathbb{K}} L_0 \geq 3\). The crucial step is to show that \(\varphi_1\) maps orthogonal vectors to orthogonal vectors and hence subspaces to subspaces. In particular, we may apply the fundamental theorem of projective geometry to get an isomorphism \((\varphi_1, \phi) : (L_0, \mathbb{K}) \to (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}})\) of vector spaces.

In order to prove this, we introduce a technical condition concerning orthogonality which is preserved by the Hua-maps. However, this condition is only enough to handle separable elements which results in a separate treatment of inseparable elements.

Finally, we show that the second component of \(\gamma\) is induced by \(\phi\), using identity (7.1) and the fact that the dimension of \(L_0\) over \(\mathbb{K}\) is at least 3, which ensures the existence of enough orthogonal vectors.

\textbf{(10.1) Notation} Throughout this chapter, we suppose \((\mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F}, \sigma) := (\mathbb{K}, K_0, \sigma)\) (and therefore \((\mathbb{A}, \tilde{\mathbb{F}}, \tilde{\sigma}) := (\tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})\)) to be quadratic of type (iii) or (iv).

\textbf{(10.2) Definition}

- An element \(a \in L_0\) with \(f(a, a) = 0_\mathbb{A}\) is called \textit{inseparable}.

- Otherwise, it is called \textit{separable}. 
Part III Jordan Isomorphisms of Pseudo-Quadratic Spaces

(10.3) Remark
(a) If \( a \in L_0 \) is separable, we have
\[
q(a) - q(a) = f(a, a) \neq 0_A, \quad q(a) = q(a).
\]
(b) If \( a \in L^*_0 \) is inseparable, we have
\[
q(a) = q(a), \quad q(a) \in \text{Fix}(\sigma) \setminus \mathbb{F},
\]
which implies \( \text{Char} \mathcal{A} = 2 \). Moreover, \((\mathcal{A}, \mathbb{F}, \sigma)\) is quadratic of type (iv) in this case.

(10.4) Lemma
An element \( a \in L^*_0 \) is inseparable iff we have \( (a, t)^2 = 0_T \) for each \((a, t) \in T\).

Proof
Notice that we have \( \text{Char} \mathcal{A} = 2 \) by remark (10.3) (b). Given \((a, t) \in T\), we have
\[
0_T = (a, t)^2 = (a + a, t + t + f(a, a)) = (0_L, f(a, a)) \iff f(a, a) = 0_A.
\]
\[\Box\]

(10.5) Corollary
An element \( a \in L^*_0 \) is inseparable if and only if \( \varphi_1(a) \in \tilde{L}^*_0 \) is inseparable.

Proof
Given \((a, t) \in T\), we have
\[
(a, t)^2 = 0_T \iff \gamma(a, t)^2 = 0_T.
\]
\[\Box\]

(10.6) Notation
- We set
\[
g : L_0 \times L_0 \to \mathbb{F}, \quad (a, b) \mapsto f(b, a) - q(a + b) + q(a) + q(b).
\]
- Given \( x \in \mathcal{A} \setminus \mathbb{F} \), let \( \mathbb{E}_x \) be the quadratic subfield of \( \mathcal{A} \) generated by \( 1_A \) and \( x \).
- Given \( a \in L^*_0 \), we set \( \mathbb{E}_a := \mathbb{E}_{q(a)} \). It is a separable quadratic subfield iff \( a \) is separable.
- Given \( a \in L^*_0 \), we set
\[
R_a := \langle a, a \cdot q(a) \rangle = a \cdot \mathbb{E}_a,
\]
so that \( R_a \) is a 2-dimensional \( \mathbb{F} \)-subspace of \( L_0 \).
- Suppose \((\mathcal{A}, \mathbb{F}, \sigma)\) to be quadratic of type (iv). Given a separable element \( a \in L_0 \), let \( e_a \) be an element of \( \mathcal{A} \) orthogonal to \( \mathbb{E}_a \) (with respect to the standard trace of \( \mathcal{A} \)). For each \( x \in \mathcal{A} \), let \( \alpha_a(x) \) and \( \beta_a(x) \) be the unique elements of \( \mathbb{E}_a \) such that
\[
x = \alpha_a(x) + e_a \beta_a(x).
\]
- Given \( a \in L^*_0 \), we set
\[
X_a := \{ t \in \mathbb{K} \mid (a, t) \in T \} = \{ s + q(a) \mid s \in \mathbb{F} \} \subseteq \mathbb{E}_a.
\]

(10.7) Remark
Given \( a \in L^*_0 \), we have \( X_a \subseteq \mathbb{E}_a \setminus \mathbb{F} \) which implies
\[
\forall t \in X_a : \quad \mathbb{E}_t = \mathbb{E}_a.
\]
In particular, we have \( \mathbb{E}_a = \mathbb{E}_t \) for each \((a, t) \in T\) such that \( a \neq 0_{L_0} \).

\(^1\)We assume \( e_a = e_a \) for each \( a' \in R_a \), hence \( \alpha_a = \alpha_a \) and \( \beta_a = \beta_a \) for each \( a' \in R_a \).
(10.8) Lemma  Let \( a \in L_0^* \) be such that \( N(t) = T(t)^2 \) for each \( t \in X_a \). Then we have \( |F| = 2 \).

**Proof**

Let \( t \in X_a \). Given \( s \in F \), we have

\[
0_a = T(t)^2 - N(t) = T(t + s)^2 - N(t) = N(t + s) - N(t) = sT(t) + N(s) = s(T(t) + s)
\]

and therefore

\[
\forall \ s \in F^*: \quad s = -T(t),
\]

which implies \( |F| = 2 \). \( \square \)

(10.9) Lemma  Let \( a \in L_0^* \) and \( |F| \geq 3 \). Then we have

\[
\{t^\sigma - t^{-1}f(a,a)t^\sigma \mid t \in X_a \} \not\subseteq F.
\]

**Proof**

Notice that we have

\[
\{t^\sigma - t^{-1}f(a,a)t^\sigma \mid t \in X_a \} = \{(1_a - t^{-1}(t - t^\sigma))t^\sigma \mid t \in X_a \} = \{t^{-1}(t^\sigma)^2 \mid t \in X_a \}. \tag{10.2}
\]

Assume \( \{t^{-1}(t^\sigma)^2 \mid t \in X_a \} \subseteq F \). Then we have

\[
\forall \ t \in X_a : \quad (t^\sigma)^3 = t^{-1}(t^\sigma)^2 \cdot N(t) \in F, \quad t^3 \in F.
\]

Therefore, we have

\[
(T(t)^2 - N(t)) \cdot t - T(t)N(t) = (T(t)t - N(t)) \cdot t = t^3 \in F \tag{10.3}
\]

and thus \( T(t)^2 = N(t) \) for each \( t \in X_a \). Now lemma (10.8) yields \( |F| = 2 \). \( \square \)

(10.10) Remark

(a) The map

\[
\phi : F \to \tilde{F}, \quad t \mapsto \varphi_2(0,t)
\]

is a Jordan isomorphism by lemma (7.21) (c), hence an isomorphism of fields by Hua’s theorem, cf. theorem (19.31). Therefore, the map \( \varphi_1 : L_0 \to \tilde{L}_0 \) is an isomorphism of vector spaces over \( F \) by lemma (7.21) (a).

(b) Given \( (a, t) \in T \), we have \( \langle \varphi_1(a), \varphi_2(a, t) \rangle \in \tilde{T} \), hence \( \tilde{E}_{\varphi_2(a, t)} = \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(a)} \) by remark (10.7).

(10.11) Corollary  Given \( a \in L_0^* \), we have

\[
\varphi_1(R_a) = \tilde{R}_{\varphi_1(a)}.
\]

**Proof**

- Assume \( |F| \geq 3 \). By lemma (10.9), we have

\[
\langle 1_a, \{t^\sigma - t^{-1}f(a,a)t^\sigma \mid t \in X_a \} \rangle _F = E_a,
\]

hence

\[
\varphi_1(R_a) = \varphi_1(a \cdot E_a) \subseteq \varphi_1(a \cdot \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(a)}) = \tilde{R}_{\varphi_1(a)}
\]

by remark (10.10) (a), identity (7.1) with \( (b, v) := (a, t) \), corollary (7.8) and remark (10.10) (b).
Remark

The following lemma is due to Tom De Medts.

Let $a \in L_0^r$ and $t \in X_a$, we have

$$N(t) = 1_{\tilde{A}} = T(t) = f(a,a),$$

hence

$$(at,t) = (at,t^*tt) \in T.$$

Substituting $(a,t)$ by $(at,t)$ and $(b,v)$ by $(a,t)$ in identity (7.1) yields

$$\varphi_1(a) = \varphi_1(a \cdot (t^* + t)) = \varphi_1(a \cdot t^* + (at) \cdot t^{-1}f(at,a)t^*)$$

$$= \varphi_1(a) \cdot \varphi_2(at,t)^\sigma + \varphi_1(at) \cdot \varphi_2(at,t)^{-1}f(\varphi_1(at),\varphi_1(a))\varphi_2(at,t)^\sigma.$$

Because of $\varphi_2(at,t) \notin \tilde{\mathbb{F}}$ we have

$$\varphi_2(at,t)^{-1}f(\varphi_1(at),\varphi_1(a))\varphi_2(at,t)^\sigma \neq 0_{\tilde{A}}$$

and thus

$$\varphi_1(at) = (\varphi_1(a) + \varphi_1(a) \cdot \varphi_2(at,t)^r) \cdot (\varphi_2(at,t)^{-1}f(\varphi_1(at),\varphi_1(a))\varphi_2(at,t)^\sigma)^{-1} \in \tilde{R}_{\varphi_1(a)}.$$

\hfill \Box

(10.12) Remark

The following lemma is due to Tom De Medts.

(10.13) Lemma

Let $x \in \tilde{A}$ with $x^\sigma \neq x$. Then the set

$$S := \left\{(s+x)^{-1}(s+x)\sigma \mid s \in \mathbb{F}\right\}$$

cannot be completely contained in a one-dimensional $\mathbb{F}$-subspace of $\tilde{A}$.

Proof

Suppose that $|\mathbb{F}| = 2$. Then we have $\tilde{A} \cong \mathbb{F}_4$, hence

$$S = \left\{x, x + 1_{\tilde{A}}\right\},$$

and the assertion is true. So assume $|\mathbb{F}| \geq 3$ and $S \subseteq y \cdot \mathbb{F}$ for some $y \in \tilde{A}^*$. Then for each $s \in \mathbb{F}$, there is an element $t_s \in \mathbb{F}$ such that $(s+x)^\sigma = (s+x)yt_s$. In particular, $x^\sigma = xyt_0$, and hence we also have $(s+x)^\sigma = s + x^\sigma = s + xyt_0$. Therefore, $(s+x)yt_s = s + xyt_0$ for all $s \in \mathbb{F}$. Multiplying on the right by $s^{-1}y^{-1}$ yields

$$s^{-1}(s+x)t_s - xt_0 = y^{-1}$$

for all $s \in \mathbb{F}^*$. It follows that

$$r^{-1}((r + x)t_r - xt_0) = s^{-1}((s + x)t_s - xt_0)$$

for all $r,s \in \mathbb{F}^*$. This can be rearranged to get

$$rs(t_s - t_r) = x(st_r - st_0 - rt_s + rt_0)$$

for all $r,s \in \mathbb{F}^*$. Since $x \notin \mathbb{F}$, this can only happen if both sides are zero. Hence $t_s = t_r$ for all $r,s \in \mathbb{F}^*$, and substituting this in the right hand side gives $(s-r)(t_r - t_0) = 0_{\tilde{A}}$ for all $r,s \in \mathbb{F}^*$ and hence $t_r = t_0$ for all $r \in \mathbb{F}$, where we use the fact that $\mathbb{F}^*$ has at least two elements. Substituting this in equation (10.4) yields $t_0 = y^{-1}$, but then $x^\sigma = xyt_0 = x$. This contradiction finishes the proof. \hfill \Box
\textbf{(10.14) Remark} Let \( d \in L_0^* \) be separable. Then for all \( s \in \mathbb{F} \) and \( x \in \mathbb{A} \), we have
\[
(s + q(d))^{-1} x (s + q(d)) = \alpha_d(x) (s + q(d))^{-1} (s + q(d))^{\sigma} + c_d \beta_d(x) ,
\]
and by lemma (10.13), the set
\[
S := \left\{ (s + q(d))^{-1} (s + q(d))^{\sigma} \mid s \in \mathbb{F} \right\}
\]
cannot be completely contained in a one-dimensional \( \mathbb{F} \)-subspace of \( \mathbb{A} \).

\textbf{(10.15) Lemma} Let \( \mathbb{A} \) be a quaternion division algebra and let \( a, b \in L_0^* \) be separable. Then there are \( a' \in R_a \) and \( b' \in R_b \) such that \( a + b' \) and \( a' \cdot q(a') + b' \) are separable.

\textbf{Proof}
\begin{itemize}
  \item Let \( \text{Char} \mathbb{A} \neq 2 \). By remark (10.3) (b), it is enough to choose \( a' := a \) and \( s \in \mathbb{F} \) such that
  \[
b' := b \cdot s \notin \{-a, -a \cdot q(a)\} .
  \]
  \item Let \( \text{Char} \mathbb{A} = 2 \). Given \( x \in L \), we have
  \[
f(x, x) = q(x) + q(x)^{\sigma} \in \mathbb{F}
  \]
  and thus
  \[
  F_a(s) := f(x + b \cdot s, x + b \cdot s) = s^2 \cdot f(b, b) + s \cdot \left( f(x, b) + f(b, x) \right) + f(x, x)
  = s^2 \cdot f(b, b) + s \cdot \left( f(x, b) + f(x, b)^{\sigma} \right) + f(x, x) \in \mathbb{F}[s] .
  \]
  Since \( \mathbb{A} \) is non-commutative, we have \(|\mathbb{F}| = \infty \). As a consequence, there is an element \( s \in \mathbb{F} \) not contained in the set of zeroes of \( F_a(s) \) and \( F_{a \cdot q(a)}(s) \). Then \( a' := a \) and \( b' := b \cdot s \) satisfy the required conditions.
\end{itemize}

\textbf{(10.16) Notation} Given \( a, b, c \in L_0^* \), \( s, t, r \in \mathbb{F} \), we set
\[
M_{(a, s), (b, t), r}(c) := h_{(a, s + q(a))} \cdot (b + q(b)) \cdot (0, r) - h_{(a, s + q(a))}(c) - h_{(b, t + q(b))}(c) .
\]

\textbf{(10.17) Remark} Given \( a, b, c \in L_0^* \), \( s, t, r \in \mathbb{F} \) and \( r' := r + s + t + q(a, b) \), we have
\[
(a, s + q(a)) \cdot (b, t + q(b)) \cdot (0, r) = (a + b, r' + q(a + b)) .
\]
Now it follows from equation (10.1) and definition (7.17) that we have
\[
M_{(a, s), (b, t), r}(c) = c \cdot \left( r - f(a, b) \right) + a \cdot \left( (s + q(a))^{-1} f(a, c) (s + q(a))^{\sigma} - (r' + q(a + b))^{-1} f(a + b, c) (r' + q(a + b))^{\sigma} \right) + b \cdot \left( (t + q(b))^{-1} f(b, c) (t + q(b))^{\sigma} - (r' + q(a + b))^{-1} f(a + b, c) (r' + q(a + b))^{\sigma} \right) .
\]

\textbf{(10.18) Remark} The following lemma shows that orthogonality can be encoded in a condition that is preserved by Jordan isomorphisms. Notice that we need three pairwise orthogonal vectors. This is the point where the assumption about the dimension will come in.
Let $x, y, z \in L_0^*$. Suppose that $f(x, y) = f(x, z) = f(y, z) = 0_L$. Then we have
\[ \forall \, r, s, t \in F, \; a \in R_{a'}, b \in R_{b'}, c \in R_{c'} : \; M_{(a, s), (b, t), r}(c) = c \cdot r \] (10.5)
for each permutation $(a', b', c')$ of $(x, y, z)$.

**Proof**

For each permutation $(a', b', c')$ of $(x, y, z)$ and for all $a \in R_{a'}, b \in R_{b'}$ and $c \in R_{c'}$, we have
\[ f(a, b) = f(a, c) = f(b, c) = 0_L \]
as well, and hence $M_{(a, s), (b, t), r}(c) = c \cdot r$ for all $r, s, t \in F$, which shows (10.5).

(10.20) **Remark**

Let $a \in L_0^*$. Then we have
\[ \forall \, t \in X_a : \; \varphi_2(a, t) \in \tilde{q}(\varphi_1(a)) + \tilde{F} = \tilde{X}_{\varphi_1(a)} \cdot \]
Since $\gamma$ is surjective, it follows that
\[ \{ \varphi_2(a, t) \mid t \in X_a \} = \tilde{X}_{\varphi_1(a)} \cdot \]

(10.21) **Corollary**

Let $x, y, z \in L_0^*$. Suppose that
\[ f(x, y) = f(x, z) = f(y, z) = 0_L \cdot \]
Then (10.5) holds for each permutation $(a', b', c')$ of $(\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y), \varphi_1(z))$.

**Proof**

By lemma (10.19), (10.5) holds for each permutation $(a', b', c')$ of $(x, y, z)$. Since $\gamma$ preserves the Hua-maps and $\varphi : L_0 \to \tilde{L}_0$ is an isomorphism of vector spaces over $F$ by remark (10.10) (a), we have
\[ \tilde{M}_{(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_2(a, s)), (\varphi_1(b), \varphi_2(b, t)), r}(\varphi_1(c)) = \varphi_1(M_{(a, s), (b, t), r}(c)) = \varphi_1(c \cdot r) = \varphi_1(c) \cdot \varphi(r) \]
for all $a \in R_{a'}, b \in R_{b'}, c \in R_{c'}, r, s, t \in F$ and for each permutation $(a', b', c')$ of $(x, y, z)$. Corollary (10.11) and remark (10.20) yield
\[ \forall \, a \in \tilde{R}_{a'}, b \in \tilde{R}_{b'}, c \in \tilde{R}_{c'}, \; r, s, t \in \tilde{F} : \; \tilde{M}_{(a, s), (b, t), r}(c) = c \cdot r \]
for each permutation $(a', b', c')$ of $(\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y), \varphi_1(z))$.

(10.22) **Remark**

The following lemma is essentially due to Tom De Medts. It shows that we can reconstruct the orthogonality from the above condition if we suppose all appearing elements to be separable. In this situation, we know that we have a one-dimensional $F$-subspace on the right side of (10.5), but on the left side we have terms which are not contained in a one-dimensional $F$-subspace if we vary the coefficients. As a consequence, the occurring scalar products necessarily vanish.

Afterwards we will have a closer look at inseparable elements. In order to obtain the same result in this case, we need to establish a connection between the corresponding quadratic extensions. For this purpose, it is convenient to use an inseparable element in (10.5) twice so that we can deduce more information about the occurring terms.

(10.23) **Lemma**

Let $x, y, z \in L_0^*$. Suppose that (10.5) holds for each permutation $(a', b', c')$ of $(x, y, z)$. If $x, y, z$ are separable, we have
\[ f(x, y) = f(x, z) = f(y, z) = 0_L \cdot \]
Proof
Assume that (10.5) holds for each permutation \((a', b', c')\) of \((x, y, z)\). In particular, for all \(a \in R_{a'}\), \(b \in R_{b'}\) and \(c \in R_{c'}\), the set
\[
\{ M_{(a,s),(b,t),r}(c) \mid r, s, t \in \mathbb{F} \}
\]
is a one-dimensional \(\mathbb{F}\)-subspace of \(L_0\).

- Suppose that \(A\) is a quaternion division algebra. By lemma (10.15), there are \(a \in R_{a'}\), \(b \in R_{b'}\) such that \(a + b\) and \(a \cdot q(a) + b\) are separable. By varying \(s\) over \(\mathbb{F}\) in \(M_{(a,s),(b,t),r}(c)\) but keeping \(r' := r + s + t + q(a,b)\) and \(t\) invariant (by the right choice for \(r\), remark (10.14)) yields\(^2\) \(\alpha_a(f(a,c)) = 0_\mathbb{K}\). Similarly,
\[
\alpha_b(f(b,c)) = 0_\mathbb{K} = \alpha_{a+b}(f(a+b,c)) .
\]
Now the expression for \(M_{(a,s),(b,t),r}(c)\) can be simplified\(^3\) to
\[
M_{(a,s),(b,t),r}(c) = c \cdot (r - f(a,b)) - a \cdot f(b,c) - b \cdot f(a,c)
\]
for all \(c \in R_{c'}\), \(r, s, t \in \mathbb{F}\). By assumption, we have
\[
c \cdot f(a,b) + a \cdot f(b,c) + b \cdot f(a,c) = 0_\mathbb{K}
\]
(10.6)
for each \(c \in R_{c'}\).

Now suppose that \(f(a,b) \neq 0_\mathbb{K}\); we will derive a contradiction. If we interchange \(a\) and \(b\) in equation (10.6), we get \(f(a,b) = f(b,a)\), and if we replace \(a\) by \(a \cdot q(a) \in R_{a'}\), then
\[
f(a \cdot q(a), b) = f(b, a \cdot q(a))
\]
and hence
\[
q(a)^\sigma f(a,b) = f(a,b)q(a) .\]
(10.7)
Now let \(t\) be an arbitrary element of \(E_c\). On the one hand, we can multiply equation (10.6) by \(t\); on the other hand, we can replace \(c\) by \(ct \in R_c\). Comparing these two resulting equations yields \(tf(a,b) = f(a,b)t\) for all \(t \in E_c\), which implies \(f(a,b) \in C_{a}(E_c) = E_c\). If we now replace \(a\) by \(a \cdot q(a) \in R_a = a \cdot E_a\), we get \(E_a f(a,b) \subseteq E_c\), which implies \(E_a = E_c\) and hence \(f(a,b) \in E_a\). But then \(q(a)f(a,b) = f(a,b)q(a)\), and comparing this with equation (10.7) yields \(q(a) = q(a)^\sigma\), which gives us the required contradiction and hence
\[
f(a',b') = f(a,b) = 0_\mathbb{K} .
\]

Permuting \(a', b'\) and \(c'\) now yields
\[
f(x,y) = f(x,z) = f(y,z) = 0_\mathbb{K} .
\]

- If \(A\) is commutative, we immediately obtain
\[
f(a,c) = 0_\mathbb{K} = f(b,c)
\]
by the same arguments, followed by
\[
f(a + b,c) = f(a,c) + f(b,c) = 0_\mathbb{K}
\]
and finally \(f(a,b) = 0_\mathbb{K}\).
\[\square\]

\(^2\)Notice that we need \(a, b\) and \(a + b\) to be separable so that we can apply Lemma (10.13) at this point. This follows from the assumption that \(x, y, z\) are separable and from the choice of \(a, b\). As we will replace \(a\) by \(a \cdot q(a)\), we additionally need \(a \cdot q(a) + b\) to be separable.

\(^3\)Notice that we have \(e_a \beta_b \{ f(a,c) \} = \alpha_a \{ f(a,c) \} + e_a \beta_b \{ f(a,c) \} = f(a,c)\) etc.
**Lemma (10.23)** Lemma (10.23) is enough to handle the cases where \( \text{Char} \mathbb{A} \neq 2 \) or where \((\mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F}, \sigma)\) is quadratic of type (iii) since there are no inseparable elements in this situation. But with some technical effort, we can handle the remaining case as well.

**Remark (10.25)** Notation Until proposition (10.30), we suppose \((\mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F}, \sigma)\) to be quadratic of type (iv) with \( \text{Char} \mathbb{A} = 2 \).

**Remark (10.26)** Let \( x \in L_0 \) be inseparable and let \( y \in L_0 \) be such that \( f(x, y) = f(x, y)^\sigma \). Then we have
\[
f(x + y, x + y) = 0_\mathbb{A} \iff f(x, x) + f(x, y) + f(y, x) + f(y, y) = 0_\mathbb{A} \iff f(y, y) = 0_\mathbb{A} .
\]

**Lemma (10.27)** Let \( x, y, z \in L_0^* \) be such that (10.5) holds for each permutation \((a', b', c')\) of \((x, y, z)\). If \( x = y \) is inseparable and \( f(x, z) \neq 0_\mathbb{A} \), we have \( f(x, z) \in E_x = E_{x+z} \), and \( z \) is inseparable.

**Proof** Since \( x \) is inseparable and \( f(x, z) \neq 0_\mathbb{A} \), we have \( z \notin \langle x \rangle_\mathbb{A} \). Putting \( a' = c' = x \), \( b' = z \) and \( a = c \) in (10.5) and comparing the coefficients of \( a = c \) yield
\[
f(a, b) = (r' + q(a + b))^{-1} f(b, a)(r' + q(a + b))^\sigma
\]
for all \( a \in R_x, b \in R_z \), and putting \( a' = z \), \( b' = c' = x \) and \( b = c \) in (10.5) and comparing the coefficients of \( b = c \) yield
\[
f(a, b) = (r' + q(a + b))^{-1} f(a, b)(r' + q(a + b))^\sigma
\]
for all \( a \in R_x, b \in R_z \), hence
\[
\forall a \in R_x, b \in R_z : f(a, b) = f(b, a) = f(a, b)^\sigma.
\]
In particular, we have
\[
f(x, z) = f(z, x) , \quad q(x)f(x, z) = f(x, z)q(x) , \quad f(x, z) \in C_\mathbb{A}(q(x)) = E_x
\]
Putting \( a' = z \), \( b' = c' = x \), \( a = z \), \( b = x \) and \( c = x \cdot q(x) \) in (10.5) and comparing the coefficients of \( x \) yield
\[
q(x)f(x, z) = q(x + z)^{-1} f(x, z)q(x + z)^\sigma = q(x + z)^{-1} q(x)f(z, x)q(x + z)^\sigma .
\]
Using equation (10.8) with \( a = z \) and \( b = c = x \) and multiplying by \( q(x) \) yield
\[
q(x)f(z, x) = q(x)q(x + z)^{-1} f(z, x)q(x + z)^\sigma .
\]
As a consequence, we have
\[
q(x) \in C_\mathbb{A}(q(x + z)) = E_{x+z} , \quad E_x = E_{x+z} .
\]
Since \( x \) is inseparable, \( x + z \) has to be inseparable as well. Finally, \( z \) is inseparable by remark (10.26).

**Corollary (10.28)** Let \( x \in L_0^* \) be inseparable and let \( y \in x^\perp \) be separable. Then we have
\[
\varphi_1(x) \in \varphi_1(y)^\perp.
\]

**Proof** By corollary (10.21), identity (10.5) holds for each permutation \((a', b', c')\) of \((\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y))\).

By corollary (10.5), \( \varphi_1(x) \) is inseparable and \( \varphi_1(y) \) is separable, thus lemma (10.27) yields
\[
(\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y)) \neq 0_\mathbb{A} .
\]
Chapter 10 The Involutory Set Is of Quadratic Type

(10.29) Lemma  Let \( x \in L^*_0 \) and \( y \in x^\perp \setminus \langle x \rangle_\Lambda \) both be inseparable. Then we have
\[
\varphi_1(x) \in \varphi_1(y)^\perp .
\]

Proof
By corollary (10.21), identity (10.5) holds for each permutation \((a', b', c')\) of \((\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y))\) and \((\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y), \varphi_1(y))\), respectively. Suppose that \( f(\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y)) \neq 0_\Lambda \). By corollary (10.5), \( \varphi_1(x) \) and \( \varphi_1(y) \) are inseparable, hence lemma (10.27) yields
\[
\tilde{f}(\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y)) \in \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(x)} = \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(x+y)} = \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(y)} .
\]
By identity (7.1) with \( b := y \) and \( (a, t) := (x, q(x)) \), we have
\[
\varphi_1(y \cdot q(x)^\sigma) = \varphi_1(y)\varphi_2(x, q(x))^\sigma - \varphi_1(x) \cdot \varphi_2(x, q(x))^{-1} \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y))\varphi_2(x, q(x))^\sigma
\]
with
\[
\varphi_2(x, q(x))^\sigma \in \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(x)} = \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(y)} , \quad \varphi_2(x, q(x))^{-1} \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y))\varphi_2(x, q(x))^\sigma \in \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(x)} .
\]
By corollary (10.11), there are elements \( s, t \in \Lambda \) such that
\[
\varphi_1(y \cdot s) = \varphi_1(y)\varphi_2(x, q(x))^\sigma \quad \text{and} \quad \varphi_1(x \cdot t) = \varphi_1(x) \cdot \varphi_2(x, q(x))^{-1} \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y))\varphi_2(x, q(x))^\sigma ,
\]
which yields
\[
y \cdot q(x)^\sigma + y \cdot s + x \cdot t = 0_{L_0} , \quad s = q(x)^\sigma , \quad t = 0_\Lambda
\]
and finally
\[
0_{L_0} = \varphi_1(x \cdot t) = \varphi_1(x) \cdot \varphi_2(x, q(x))^{-1} \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y))\varphi_2(x, q(x))^\sigma , \quad \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y)) = 0_\Lambda .
\]

(10.30) Proposition  Let \( x \in L^*_0 \) be inseparable and let \( y \in x^\perp \). If \( \dim_\Lambda L_0 \geq 3 \), we have
\[
\varphi_1(x) \in \varphi_1(y)^\perp .
\]

Proof
If \( y \) is separable, we may apply lemma (10.28), and if \( x \) and \( y \) are linearly independent over \( \Lambda \), we may apply lemma (10.29) so that we may assume \( y \in \langle x \rangle_\Lambda \). By assumption, there is an element \( z \in x^\perp \setminus \langle x \rangle_\Lambda \). As a consequence, we have
\[
y + z \in x^\perp \setminus \langle x \rangle_\Lambda .
\]
Now corollary (10.28) and lemma (10.29), respectively, yield
\[
\tilde{f}(\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y)) = \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y+z)) + \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(z)) = 0_\Lambda + 0_\Lambda = 0_\Lambda .
\]

(10.31) Lemma  Assume \( \dim_\Lambda L_0 \geq 3 \) and let \( a, b \in L^*_0 \). Then \( f(a, b) = 0_\Lambda \) if and only if there is an element \( c \in L^*_0 \) such that
\[
f(a, b) = f(a, c) = f(b, c) = 0_\Lambda .
\]

Proof
If \( a \) or \( b \) is inseparable, we may choose \( c := a \) or \( c := b \), respectively. So assume that \( a \) and \( b \) are separable and \( f(a, b) = 0_\Lambda \). Since \( \dim_\Lambda L_0 \geq 3 \) and \( \dim_\Lambda (a, b)_\Lambda \leq 2 \), there is some element \( d \in X \setminus (a, b)_\Lambda \). Then
\[
c := d - a \cdot f(a, a)^{-1}f(a, d) - b \cdot f(b, b)^{-1}f(b, d) \neq 0_\Lambda
\]
satisfies the required conditions.
Part III Jordan Isomorphisms of Pseudo-Quadratic Spaces

(10.32) Remark We return to the general case.

(10.33) Proposition Let \(x \in L_0\) be separable and let \(y \in x^\perp\). If \(\dim_L L_0 \geq 3\), we have
\[
\varphi_1(x) \in \varphi_1(y)^\perp.
\]

Proof

- If \(y\) is inseparable, we may apply proposition (10.30).
- If \(y\) is separable, lemma (10.31) yields an element \(z \in L_0^*\) such that
\[
f(x, z) = 0 = f(y, z),
\]
thus (10.5) holds for each permutation \((a', b', c')\) of \((\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y), \varphi_1(z))\) by corollary (10.21).

\(\circ\) If \(z\) is inseparable, proposition (10.30) yields
\[
\tilde{f}((\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(z)) = 0 = \tilde{f}((\varphi_1(y), \varphi_1(z))
\]
followed by
\[
\tilde{f}((\varphi_1(x + y), \varphi_1(z)) = 0 = \tilde{f}((\varphi_1(y), \varphi_1(z))
\]
and finally \(\tilde{f}((\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y)) = 0\) by (10.5).

\(\circ\) If \(z\) is separable, then \(\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y), \varphi_1(z)\) are separable by corollary (10.5), thus we may apply lemma (10.23) to obtain
\[
\tilde{f}((\varphi_1(x), \varphi_1(y)) = 0.
\]

(10.34) Corollary If we have \(\dim_L L_0 \geq 3\), the map \(\varphi_1 : L_0 \to \tilde{L}_0\) is an isomorphism of vector spaces.

Proof By proposition (10.30) and proposition (10.33), we have
\[
\forall a \in L_0 : \quad \varphi_1(a^\perp) = \varphi_1(a)^\perp.
\]
Since \(f\) is non-degenerate, this implies that we have
\[
\forall a \in L_0 : \quad \varphi_1((a)_\mathbb{A}) = \varphi_1(a^\perp) = \varphi_1(a)^\perp = (\varphi_1(a))_\mathbb{A}.
\]
Now the assertion results from the fundamental theorem of projective geometry. \(\square\)

(10.35) Notation Let \(\phi : \mathbb{A} \to \tilde{\mathbb{A}}\) be the isomorphism of skew-fields defined by
\[
\forall a \in L_0, \ t \in \mathbb{A} : \quad \varphi_1(a \cdot t) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi(t).
\]

(10.36) Remark Notice that \(\phi\) is an extension of the isomorphism \(\phi : F \to \tilde{F}\) of fields.

(10.37) Remark We state the theorem using the general notation.

(10.38) Theorem Let \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\) be quadratic of type (iii) or (iv) and let \(\dim_L L_0 \geq 3\). Then the map \(\Phi : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi}\) defined by
\[
\Phi := (\varphi_1, \phi) : (L_0, \mathbb{K}) \to (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}), \ (a, t) \mapsto (\varphi_1(a), \phi(t))
\]
is an isomorphism of pseudo-quadratic spaces satisfying
\[
\forall (a, t) \in T : \quad \Phi(a, t) = \gamma(a, t).
\]
\textbf{Proof}

- By corollary (10.34) and notation (10.35), the map \((\varphi_1, \phi) : (L_0, K) \to (L_0, \bar{K})\) is an isomorphism of vector spaces.

- By remark (10.36), we have \(\phi(K_0) = \bar{K}_0\).

- By corollary (5.12), we have
  \[\forall x \in K : \quad \phi(x^\sigma) = \phi(x)^\sigma.\]

- Let \((a, t) \in T \text{ and } 0_{L_a} \neq b \in a^\perp.\) Then we have
  \[\varphi_1(b) \cdot \phi(t)^\sigma = \varphi_1(b) \cdot \phi(t^\sigma) = \varphi_1(b) \cdot \varphi_2(a, t)^\sigma\]
  by identity (7.1), proposition (10.30) and proposition (10.33), thus
  \[\varphi_2(a, t) = \phi(t)\]
  and therefore
  \[\tilde{q}(\varphi_1(a)) \in \varphi_2(a, t) + \bar{K}_0 = \phi(t) + \phi(K_0) = \phi(t + K_0) = \phi(q(a) + K_0) = \phi(q(a)) + \bar{K}_0\]
  as well as
  \[\Phi(a, t) = (\varphi_1(a), \phi(t)) = (\varphi_1(a), \varphi_2(a, t)) = \gamma(a, t).\]

\[\Box\]

\textbf{Chapter 11 Small Dimensions I}

First we refine some results of the previous chapter, without assuming additional assumptions. The first step is to show that the map \(\varphi_1 : R_a \to R_{\varphi_1(a)}\) is an isomorphism of vector spaces for each \(a \in L_0\). We manage to do this by proving that the map \(\varphi_2 : X_a \to X_{\varphi_1(a)}, \quad t \mapsto \varphi_2(a, t)\) is induced by an isomorphism between the associated separable extensions.

Once we have done this, it is easy to prove theorem (8.1) (iii) if the involutory sets are quadratic of type (iii). Afterwards we will need some more considerations to handle the case of involutory sets which are quadratic of type (iv), cf. chapter 12.

\textbf{(11.1) Notation} Throughout this chapter, the involutory sets \((\mathfrak{A}, \mathcal{F}, \sigma)\) and \((\tilde{\mathfrak{A}}, \tilde{\mathcal{F}}, \tilde{\sigma})\) are still quadratic of type (iii) or (iv).

\textbf{(11.2) Lemma} Let \(a \in L_0\). Then the following holds:

(a) \(\forall t \in X_a : \quad \phi(N(t)) = \tilde{N}(\varphi_2(a, t)).\)

(b) \(\forall t \in X_a : \quad \phi(T(t)) = \tilde{T}(\varphi_2(a, t)).\)

\textbf{Proof}

(a) By lemma (7.21) (b) with \((b, v) := (0_{L_a}, 1_\mathfrak{A})\), we have
  \[\phi(tt^\sigma) = \varphi_2(0_{L_a}, t \cdot 1_\mathfrak{A} \cdot t^\sigma) = \varphi_2(a, t) \cdot \varphi_2(0_{L_a}, 1_\mathfrak{A}) \cdot \varphi_2(a, t)^\sigma = \tilde{N}(\varphi_2(a, t)).\]

(b) By part (a) and lemma (7.21) (d), we have
  \[\phi(N(t)) + \phi(T(t)) + 1_\mathfrak{A} = \phi((t + 1_\mathfrak{A})(t + 1_\mathfrak{A})^\sigma) = \phi(N(t + 1_\mathfrak{A})) = \tilde{N}(\varphi_2(a, t + 1_\mathfrak{A})) = \tilde{N}(\varphi_2(a, t)) + \tilde{T}(\varphi_2(a, t)) + 1_\mathfrak{A},\]
  hence
  \[\phi(T(t)) = \tilde{T}(\varphi_2(a, t))\]
  by part (a) again. \(\Box\)
(11.3) Lemma Let \( a \in L_0^\ast \) and \( t \in X_a \). Then the map

\[
\phi_{(a,t)} : E_a \to \tilde{E}_{\varphi(a)}, \quad x + t \cdot y \mapsto \phi(x) + \varphi_2(a,t) \cdot \phi(y) \quad (x,y \in \mathbb{F})
\]

is an isomorphism of fields such that

\[
\forall u \in X_a : \quad \varphi_2(a,u) = \phi_{(a,t)}(u).
\]

Proof

By lemma (11.2), we have

\[
\phi(N(t)) = \tilde{N}(\varphi_2(a,t)), \quad \phi(T(t)) = \tilde{T}(\varphi_2(a,t))
\]

so that we may apply lemma (5.15). By lemma (7.21) (d), we have

\[
\forall s \in \mathbb{F} : \quad \varphi_2(a,t+s) = \varphi_2(a,t) + \phi(s) = \phi_{(a,t)}(t) + \phi_{(a,t)}(s) = \phi_{(a,t)}(t+s).
\]

(11.4) Corollary Let \( a \in L_0^\ast \). Given \( t, u \in X_a \), we have

\[
\phi_a := \phi_{(a,t)} = \phi_{(a,u)}.
\]

Proof

We have \( \phi_{(a,u)}(u) = \varphi_2(a,u) = \phi_{(a,t)}(u) \) and \( u \notin \mathbb{F} \).

(11.5) Remark Let \( a \in L_0^\ast \).

(a) Notice that \( \phi_a \) is an extension of the isomorphism \( \phi : \mathbb{F} \to \tilde{\mathbb{F}} \) of fields.

(b) We have \( \phi_a(E_a) = \tilde{E}_{\varphi_a(a)} \).

(c) Given \( t \in A \), we have

\[
(t^a)^2 = \frac{(t^a)^3}{N(t)} = \frac{(T(t)^2 - N(t)) \cdot t^a - T(t) N(t)}{N(t)}
\]

\[
= \frac{(T(t)^2 - N(t))(T(t) - t - T(t) N(t))}{N(t)} = \frac{N(t) - T(t)^2}{N(t)} \cdot t.
\]

(d) Assume \( |\mathbb{F}| \geq 3 \). By lemma (10.8), there is an element \( t \in X_a \) such that \( T(t)^2 \neq N(t) \).

(11.6) Lemma Assume \( |\mathbb{F}| \geq 3 \). Let \( a \in L_0^\ast \) and \( t \in X_a \) be as in remark (11.5) (d), i.e., we have \( N(t) \neq T(t)^2 \) and thus \( \phi(N(t)) \neq \phi(T(t))^2 \). Then we have

\[
\varphi_1(a \cdot t) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \varphi_2(a,t).
\]

Proof

By remark (11.5) (c), equation (10.2) and identity (7.1) with \( b = a \), we have

\[
\varphi_1(a) \cdot \frac{\phi(T(t))^2 - 2\phi(T(t))\phi(N(t))}{\phi(N(t))} + \varphi_1(a \cdot t) \cdot \frac{\phi(N(t)) - \phi(T(t))^2}{\phi(N(t))} = \varphi_1(a) \left( \frac{T(t)^3 - 2T(t)N(t) + N(t) - T(t)^2 \cdot t}{N(t)} \right)
\]

\[
= \varphi_1(a) \left( \frac{\tilde{T}(\varphi_2(a,t))^3 - 2\tilde{T}(\varphi_2(a,t))\tilde{N}(\varphi_2(a,t))}{\tilde{N}(\varphi_2(a,t))} + \frac{\tilde{N}(\varphi_2(a,t)) - \tilde{T}(\varphi_2(a,t))^2}{\tilde{N}(\varphi_2(a,t))} \cdot \varphi_2(a,t) \right)
\]

Notice that we may cancel scalars by assumption.
(11.7) **Remark**  
By corollary (10.11), we have \( \varphi_1(R_a) = \tilde{R}_{\varphi_1(a)} \) even in the case \(|F| = 2\). Notice that we have
\[
A = E_a \cong F_a \cong \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(a)} = \tilde{A}
\]
in this situation which shows that we have \( \varphi_1((a)\tilde{A}) = (\varphi_1(a))\tilde{A} \). As a consequence, the map \( \phi_a : \tilde{A} \to \tilde{A} \) defined by
\[
\forall t \in \tilde{A} : \quad \varphi_1(a \cdot t) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi_a(t)
\]
is an isomorphism of skew-fields. However, it doesn’t necessarily satisfy \( \phi_a(t) = \varphi_2(a, t) \) for each \( t \in X_a \). We will discuss this case later and go on with assuming \(|F| \geq 3\).

(11.8) **Proposition**  
Given \( a \in L_0^* \), the map
\[
(\varphi_1, \phi_a) : (R_a, E_a) \to (\tilde{R}_{\varphi_1(a)}, \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(a)})
\]
is an isomorphism of vector spaces such that \( \phi_a(t) = \varphi_2(a, t) \) for each \( t \in X_a \).

**Proof**  
Let \( t \in X_a \) be as in remark (11.5) (d). By remark (10.10) (a), lemma (11.6) and lemma (11.3), we have
\[
\forall x, y \in F : \quad \varphi_1(a \cdot (x + ty)) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot (\phi(x) + \varphi_2(a, t)\phi(y)) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi_a(x + ty).
\]
The second assertion results from lemma (11.3). \( \square \)

(11.9) **Lemma**  
Let \( (\tilde{A}, F, \sigma) \) and \( (\tilde{A}, \tilde{F}, \tilde{\sigma}) \) both be quadratic of type (iii). Then we have
\[
\forall a, b \in L_0^* : \quad \phi := \phi_a = \phi_b.
\]

**Proof**  
By assumption, we have \( A = E_a = E_b \) and \( \tilde{A} = \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(a)} = \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(b)} \) for all \( a, b \in L_0^* \).

- Let \( b = a \cdot s \) for some \( s \in A^* \). Given \( t \in \tilde{A} \), we have
  \[
  \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi_b(t) = \varphi_1(a \cdot t) = \varphi_1(a \cdot s^{-1} t) = \varphi_1(b) \cdot \phi_a(s^{-1} t) = \varphi_1(b) \cdot \phi_b(t) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi_b(t).
  \]

- Let \( b \not\in (a)\tilde{A} = R_a \), hence \( \varphi_1(b) \not\in \tilde{R}_{\varphi_1(a)} = (\varphi_1(a))\tilde{A} \) by proposition (11.8). Given \( t \in \tilde{A} \), we have
  \[
  \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi_a(t) + \varphi_1(b) \cdot \phi_b(t) = \varphi_1(a \cdot t) + \varphi_1(b \cdot t) = \varphi_1((a + b) \cdot t)
  = \varphi_1(a + b) \cdot \phi_a+b(t) + \varphi_1(b) \cdot \phi_a(t),
  \]
  thus
  \[
  \phi_a(t) = \phi_{a+b}(t) = \phi_b(t).
  \]

(11.10) **Remark**  
(a) The proof shows that we have
\[
\forall t \in E_a : \quad \phi_a = \phi_{at},
\]
  independent of the type of \((\tilde{A}, F, \sigma)\).

(b) Notice that \( \phi \) is an extension of the (Jordan) isomorphism \( \phi : F \to \tilde{F} \).

(c) We state the theorem using the general notation.
(11.11) Theorem Let \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\) and \((\tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}_0, \tilde{\sigma})\) both be quadratic of type (iii) such that \(|\mathbb{K}_0| \geq 3\). Then the map \(\Phi : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathbb{Z}}\) defined by
\[
\Phi := (\varphi_1, \phi) : (L_0, \mathbb{K}) \rightarrow (\tilde{L}, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}), \ (a,t) \mapsto (\varphi_1(a), \phi(t))
\]
is an isomorphism of pseudo-quadratic spaces satisfying
\[
\forall \ (a,t) \in T : \quad \Phi(a,t) = \gamma(a,t) .
\]
In particular, we have \(\mathbb{K} \cong \tilde{\mathbb{K}}\).

Proof

- By proposition (11.8) and lemma (11.9), the map \((\varphi_1, \phi) : (L_0, \mathbb{K}) \rightarrow (\tilde{L}, \tilde{\mathbb{K}})\) is an isomorphism of vector spaces.
- By remark (11.10) (b), we have \(\phi(\mathbb{K}_0) = \tilde{\mathbb{K}}_0\).
- By corollary (5.12), we have \(\phi \circ \sigma = \tilde{\sigma} \circ \phi\).
- Let \(a \in L_0^+\) and \(t \in X_a\). By proposition (11.8), we have
\[
\varphi_2(a,t) = \phi_0(t) = \phi(t) ,
\]
hence
\[
\tilde{q}(\varphi_1(a)) \in \varphi_2(a,t) + \tilde{\mathbb{K}}_0 = \phi(t) + \phi(\mathbb{K}_0) = \phi(t + \mathbb{K}_0) = \phi(q(a) + \mathbb{K}_0) = \phi(q(a)) + \tilde{\mathbb{K}}_0 .
\]
- Given \((a,t) \in T\), we have
\[
\Phi(a,t) = (\varphi_1(a), \phi(t)) = (\varphi_1(a), \varphi_2(a,t)) = \gamma(a,t) .
\]

Chapter 12 Small Dimensions II

Now we prove theorem (8.1) (iii) for the case that \((A, \mathbb{F}, \sigma)\) is quadratic of type (iv). As in the previous paragraph, we exploit the identities (7.1) and (7.2) to show that \(\phi_a : E_a \rightarrow \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(a)}\) is induced by an isomorphism \(\phi_{a,e} : A \rightarrow \tilde{A}\) of skew-fields, where \(a \in L_0^+\) is a separable element and \(e \in E_a^\perp\).

Notice that we restrict to a separable element \(a \in L_0^+\) because of the helpful decomposition \(A = E_a \oplus eE_a\) with \(eE_a = E_a^\perp\). If we assume \(\varphi_1(a \cdot e) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \tilde{e}\) for some \(\tilde{e} \in \tilde{A}\), the isomorphisms \(\phi_a\) and \(\phi_{ae}\) of fields induce a map
\[
\phi_{a,e} : A \rightarrow \tilde{A}, \ s + et \mapsto \phi_a(s) + \tilde{e}\phi_{ae}(t) \quad (s, t \in E_a)
\]
which turns out to be an isomorphism of skew-fields. As a consequence, the two isomorphisms \(\varphi_1 : R_a \rightarrow \tilde{R}_{\varphi_1(a)}\) and \(\varphi_1 : R_{ae} \rightarrow \tilde{R}_{\varphi_1(ae)}\) of vector spaces over \(E_a\) are induced by an isomorphism \(\varphi_1 : (a)_A \rightarrow (\varphi_1(a))_{\tilde{A}}\) of vector spaces over \(A\).

(12.1) Notation Throughout this chapter, let \((A, \mathbb{F}, \sigma)\) be quadratic of type (iv), and let \((\check{A}, \check{\mathbb{F}}, \check{\sigma})\) be quadratic of type (iii) or (iv). Until corollary (12.12), let \(a \in L_0^+\) be separable and let \(e \in E_a^\perp\).

(12.2) Lemma Given \(t \in X_a \subseteq E_a\), we have
\[
ae \cdot t = ae \cdot t^\sigma - a \cdot t^{-1} f(a, ae)t^\sigma .
\]
Proof
We have
\[ ae \cdot t^\sigma - a \cdot t^{-1} f(a, ae) t^\sigma = ae \cdot t^\sigma - a \cdot t^{-1} f(a, a) t^\sigma \]
\[ = ae \cdot t^\sigma - a \cdot t^{-1} (t - t^\sigma) t^\sigma t^\sigma = ae \cdot t^\sigma - (t^\sigma - t) t^{-\sigma} t^\sigma = ae \cdot t. \]

(12.3) Lemma
We have
\[ X_{ae} = -N(e) \cdot X_a. \]

Proof
We have
\[ q(ae) \equiv e^\sigma q(a)e = N(e)q(a)^\sigma \mod F, \]
hence
\[ -N(e) \cdot X_a = -N(e) \cdot \{ s + q(a) | s \in F \} = -N(e) \cdot \{ s - q(a)^\sigma | s \in F \} \]
\[ = \{ -N(e)s + N(e)q(a)^\sigma | s \in F \} = \{ s + q(ae) | s \in F \} = X_{ae}. \]

(12.4) Lemma
We have
\[ E_{ae} = E_a. \]

Proof
We have
\[ q(ae) \in N(e)q(a)^\sigma + F \subseteq E_a. \]

(12.5) Lemma
The isomorphisms \( \phi_{ae} \) and \( \phi_a \) of fields as in remark (11.4) satisfy
\[ \phi_{ae}(E_a) = \phi_a(E_a). \]

Proof
Let \( t \in X_a \subseteq E_{ae} \). Then we have \(-N(e)t \in X_{ae}\) by lemma (12.3), hence
\[ (a, t) \in T, \quad (ae, -N(e)t) \in T. \]
Notice that we have
\[ \phi_a(t) \phi_a(t)^\sigma = \tilde{N}(\phi_a(t)) = \tilde{N}(\phi_a(t)) = \phi(N(t)) \]
by lemma (11.2) (a). Remarks (11.5) (a), (11.10) (a) and identity (7.2) with \((b, v) := (ae, -N(e)t)\) yield
\[ \phi_{ae}(t) \phi_{ae}(t)^\sigma \phi(-N(e)) = \phi_{ae}(t) \phi(N(t)) \phi(-N(e)) \]
\[ = \phi_{ae}(t) \phi_{ae}(-N(e)) \phi_a(N(t)) = \phi_{ae}(t(-N(e))N(t)) \]
\[ = \phi_{ae}(t \cdot (-N(e)t) \cdot t^\sigma) = \phi_{ae}(t \cdot (-N(e)t) \cdot t^\sigma) \]
\[ = \phi_{ae}(t \cdot t^\sigma - a \cdot t^{-1} f(a, ae)t^\sigma) \cdot (-N(e)t) = \phi_{ae}(t \cdot t^\sigma - (t^\sigma - t) t^{-\sigma} t^\sigma) \]
\[ = \phi_{ae}(t \cdot t^\sigma - (t^\sigma - t) t^{-\sigma} t^\sigma) = \phi_{ae}(t \cdot t^\sigma - (t^\sigma - t) t^{-\sigma} t^\sigma) \]
\[ = \phi_{ae}(t \cdot t^\sigma - (t^\sigma - t) t^{-\sigma} t^\sigma), \]
which implies \( \phi_{ae}(t) \phi_{ae}(t) = \phi_{ae}(t) \phi_{ae}(t) \) and thus
\[ \phi_{ae}(E_a) = \phi_{ae}(E_{ae}) = \tilde{E}_{\phi_{ae}(t)} = \tilde{E}_{\phi_a(t)} = \tilde{E}_{\phi_{ae}(t)} = \phi_a(E_a), \]
cf. lemma (12.4), remark (11.5) (b), lemma (12.3), remark (10.10) (b) and corollary (5.10).
Suppose that we have \( (12.8) \) Lemma

The following lemma provides the assumptions which are necessary to show \( (12.7) \) Remark

We have \( (12.6) \) Corollary

The field \( \tilde{E} := \phi_a(\mathbb{E}_a) = \phi_a(\mathbb{E}_a) \) is a quadratic separable extension with \( \text{Aut}(\tilde{E} : \tilde{F}) = \langle \tilde{\sigma} \rangle \), and by remark \( (11.5) \) \( (a) \), we have

\[ \phi_a \circ \phi_a^{-1} \in \text{Aut}(\tilde{E} : \tilde{F}). \]

\( \square \)

\( (12.7) \) Remark

The following lemma provides the assumptions which are necessary to show that we can extend the isomorphism \( \phi_a : \mathbb{E}_a \rightarrow \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(a)} \) of fields to an isomorphism \( \phi : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \tilde{A} \) of skew-fields which induces \( \phi_{ae} \). As a consequence, the map \( \varphi_1 : \langle a \rangle_\mathbb{A} \rightarrow \langle \varphi_1(a) \rangle_{\tilde{A}} \) is an isomorphism of vector spaces.

\( (12.8) \) Lemma

Suppose that we have \( \varphi_1(ae) = \varphi_1(a)\tilde{c} \) for some \( \tilde{c} \in \tilde{A} \) and let \( t \in X_a \). Then the following holds:

(a) We have \( \phi := \phi_{ae} = \phi_a \).

(b) We have

\[ \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(ae), \varphi_1(ae)) = -\phi(N(e))\tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(a)). \]

(c) We have

\[ \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(a))\tilde{c} = -\tilde{c}\tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(a)). \]

(d) We have \( \tilde{N}(\tilde{c}) = \phi(N(e)). \)

(e) We have \( \tilde{c} \in \tilde{E}_{\tilde{\varphi}_1(a)} \).

\textbf{Proof}

(a) By corollary \( (10.5), \varphi_1(a) \) is separable, hence

\[ \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(a)) = \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(a))\tilde{c} \neq 0_{\tilde{A}}. \]

By identity \( (7.1) \) with \( (b, v) := (ae, -N(e)t) \) and lemma \( (12.2), \) we have

\[ \varphi_1(ae)\phi_{ae}(t) = \varphi_1(ae \cdot t) = \varphi_1(ae \cdot t^e - a \cdot t^{-1}f(a, ae)t^e) = \varphi_1(ae) \cdot \varphi_2(a, t)^e - \varphi_1(a) \cdot \varphi_2(a, t)^{-1}\tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(ae))\varphi_2(a, t)^e \]

\[ = \varphi_1(ae) \cdot \phi_a(t)^e - \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi_a(t)^{-1}\tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(ae))\phi_a(t)^e, \]

hence

\[ \phi_{ae}(t) \neq \phi_a(t)^e \]

for each \( t \in X_a \) and thus \( \phi_{ae} \neq \tilde{\sigma} \circ \phi_a \). Now corollary \( (12.6) \) yields

\[ \phi_{ae} = \phi_a. \]

(b) By lemma \( (12.3), \) we have \( -N(e)t \in X_{ae}, \) hence

\[ \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(ae), \varphi_1(ae)) = \phi_{ae}(-N(e)t) - \phi_{ae}(-N(e)t)^e \]

\[ = -\phi(N(e))(\phi_a(t) - \phi_a(t)^e) = -\phi(N(e))\tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(a)) \],

cf. remark \( (10.20) \) and proposition \( (11.8) \).
Remark

Suppose that we have $\varphi_1(a)\tilde{e} \cdot \phi(t) = \varphi_1(ac) \cdot \phi(t)^{12.1}) \cdot \phi_1(a) \cdot \phi(t)^{12.1}) - \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi(t)^{12.1}) \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(ac)) \phi(t)^{12.1})$

\[\begin{align*}
\varphi_1(ac) \cdot \phi(t)^{12.1}) & = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi(t)^{12.1}) - \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi(t)^{12.1}) \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(ac)) \phi(t)^{12.1}) \\
& = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi(t)^{12.1}) - \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi(t)^{12.1}) \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(ac)) \phi(t)^{12.1}) \\
& = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi(t)^{12.1}) \tilde{e} \phi(t)^{12.1}) \\
\end{align*}\]

hence

\[\tilde{e} \phi(t) = \phi(t)^{-1} \phi(t)^{12.1}) \tilde{e} \phi(t)^{12.1}), \quad \phi(t) \tilde{e} \phi(t) = \phi(t)^{12.1}) \tilde{e} \phi(t)^{12.1})\]

Since $t \in X_a$ is arbitrary, we may replace $t$ by $t + 1_A$ to obtain

\[\tilde{e} \phi(t) + \phi(t) \tilde{e} = \tilde{e} \phi(t)^{12.1}) + \phi(t)^{12.1}) \tilde{e}, \quad \tilde{e} \phi(t) = \phi(t) \tilde{e} \phi(t)^{12.1}) = -(\phi(t) - \phi(t)^{12.1}) \tilde{e} .\]

(d) We have

\[-\tilde{e} \tilde{N}(\tilde{e})^{-1} \phi(N(e)) \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(a)) \overset{(b)}{=} \tilde{e}^{-\sigma} \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(ac), \varphi_1(ac)) = \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(ac), \varphi_1(ac)) = \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(a)) \tilde{e}\]

hence

\[\tilde{N}(\tilde{e})^{-1} \phi(N(e)) = 1_A, \quad \tilde{N}(\tilde{e}) = \phi(N(e)) .\]

(e) We have

\[\varphi_1(a) \cdot \tilde{e} \phi(t) \overset{(12.2)}{=} \varphi_1(a) \cdot \tilde{e} \phi(t)^{12.2}) - \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi(t)^{-1} \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(a)) \tilde{e} \phi(t)^{12.2}) ,\]

hence

\[\varphi_1(a) \cdot \tilde{e} \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(a)) = -\varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi(t)^{-1} \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(a)) \tilde{e} \phi(t)^{12.2}) \overset{(c)}{=} \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi(t)^{-1} \tilde{e} \phi(t)^{12.2}) \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(a)) \]

which yields

\[\tilde{e} = \phi(t)^{-1} \tilde{e} \phi(t)^{12.2}), \quad \phi(t) \tilde{e} = \tilde{e} \phi(t)^{12.2}) .\]

Because of $\phi(t) \in \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(a)} \setminus \tilde{F}$, we have $\tilde{e} \in \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(a)}^A$ by lemma (5.13).

\[\square\]

(12.9) Remark Suppose that we have $\varphi_1(ac) = \varphi_1(a)\tilde{e}$ for some $\tilde{e} \in \tilde{A}$. Since we have $\varphi_1(R_a) = \tilde{R}_{\varphi_1(a)}$ and $a \cdot e \notin R_a$, the skew-field $\tilde{A}$ is necessarily a quaternion division algebra since $\tilde{A} \cdot \tilde{e} \sigma$ is quadratic of type (iii) or (iv). Moreover, we have $\varphi_1(\langle a \rangle) = \langle \varphi_1(a) \rangle$.

(12.10) Lemma Suppose that we have $\varphi_1(ac) = \varphi_1(a)\tilde{e}$ for some $\tilde{e} \in \tilde{A}$. Then the map

\[\phi_{a,e} : \tilde{A} \rightarrow \tilde{A}, \quad x + ey \mapsto \phi(x) + \tilde{e} \phi(y) \quad (x, y \in \mathbb{E}_a)\]

is an isomorphism of skew-fields such that

\[\forall t \in X_a : \varphi_2(a, t) = \phi_{a,e}(t) .\]
By lemma (12.8), we have
\[ \bar{\phi}(\mathcal{N}(e)) = \tilde{N}(\tilde{e}) , \quad \tilde{e} \in \tilde{E}_{\varphi_1(a)}^{1} \]
so that we may apply lemma (5.16). By lemma (11.3), we have
\[ \forall \ t \in X_{a} \subseteq E_{a} : \quad \varphi_2(a, t) = \phi_{a}(t) = \phi_{a,e}(t) . \]

(12.11) **Proposition** Suppose that we have \( \varphi_1(ac) = \varphi_1(a)\tilde{e} \) for some \( \tilde{e} \in \tilde{A} \). Then the map
\[ (\varphi_1, \phi_{a,e}) : ((a)_{\lambda}, \tilde{A}) \to ((\varphi_1(a))_{\lambda}, \tilde{A}) \]
is an isomorphism of vector spaces.

**Proof**
By lemma (12.4) and lemma (12.8) (a), we have
\[ \forall \ x, y \in E_{a} : \quad \varphi_1(a \cdot (x + ey)) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot (\phi(x) + \tilde{e}\phi(y)) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi_{a,e}(x + ey) . \]

(12.12) **Corollary** Suppose that we have \( \varphi_1(ac) = \varphi_1(a)\tilde{e} \) for some \( \tilde{e} \in \tilde{A} \) and let \( f \in E_{a}^{1} \). Then we have \( \varphi_1(af) = \varphi_1(a)f \) for some \( f \in \tilde{A} \) and \( \phi_{a} := \phi_{a,e} = \phi_{a,f} \).

**Proof**
By remark (12.9), the first assertion holds, hence \( \phi_{a,f} \) is well-defined. Given \( x \in A \), we have
\[ \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi_{a,f}(x) = \varphi_1(a \cdot x) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi_{a,e}(x) . \]

(12.13) **Lemma** Suppose that we have \( \varphi_1((a)_{\lambda}) = \langle \varphi_1(a)_{\lambda} \rangle \) for each separable element \( a \in L_{0}^{*} \) and let \( a, b \in L_{0}^{*} \) be separable. Then we have
\[ \phi := \phi_{a} = \phi_{b} . \]

**Proof**
- Let \( b = a \cdot s \) for some \( s \in A^{*} \). Given \( t \in A \), we have
\[ \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi_{a}(t) = \varphi_1(a \cdot t) = \varphi_1(as \cdot s^{-1}t) = \varphi_1(b) \cdot \phi_{b}(s^{-1}t) = \varphi_1(b) \cdot \phi_{b}(s^{-1}) \cdot \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi_{b}(t) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi_{b}(t) . \]
- Let \( b \notin (a)_{\lambda} \), hence \( \varphi_1(b) \notin (\varphi_1(a))_{\lambda} \). By lemma (10.15), there are \( a' \in R_{a} \) and \( b' \in R_{b} \) such that \( a' + b' \) is separable. Given \( t \in A \), we have
\[ \varphi_1(a') \cdot \phi_{a}(t) + \varphi_1(b') \cdot \phi_{b}(t) = \varphi_1(a') \cdot \phi_{a'}(t) + \varphi_1(b') \cdot \phi_{b'}(t) = \varphi_1(a' \cdot t) + \varphi_1(b' \cdot t) = \varphi_1((a' + b') \cdot t) = \varphi_1(a' + b') \cdot \phi_{a'+b'}(t) = \varphi_1(a') \cdot \phi_{a'+b'}(t) + \varphi_1(b') \cdot \phi_{a'+b'}(t) , \]
thus
\[ \phi_{a}(t) = \phi_{a'+b'}(t) = \phi_{b}(t) . \]
(12.14) **Proposition**  Suppose that we have \( \varphi_1((a)_{\hat{A}}) = \langle \varphi_1(a) \rangle_{\hat{A}} \) for each separable element \( a \in L_0^* \) and that \( L_0^* \) has a basis \( \{ a_i \mid i \in I \} \) of separable elements. Then the map
\[
(\varphi_1, \phi) : (L_0, \hat{A}) \rightarrow (\hat{L}_0, \hat{A})
\]
is an isomorphism of vector spaces.

**Proof**  Let \( a = \sum_{i \in I} a_i \lambda_i \in L_0 \) and \( t \in \hat{A} \). By lemma (12.13), we have
\[
\varphi_1(a \cdot t) = \varphi_1 \left( \sum_{i \in I} a_i \lambda_i \cdot t \right) = \sum_{i \in I} \varphi_1(a_i \lambda_i) \cdot t
\]
for each \( a, b \in L_0^* \) that
\[
(\varphi_1^1, \phi) : (L_0, \hat{A}) \rightarrow (\hat{L}_0, \hat{A})
\]
is an isomorphism of vector spaces.

(12.15) **Remark**  Let \( \dim_{\mathbb{K}} L_0 = 2 \) and \( a \in L_0^* \). Then \( (a)_{\hat{A}} \) is of the form \( L_{a,b} = \langle R_a, R_b \rangle_{\mathbb{F}} \) for some element \( b \in L_0 \), and for each \( c \in L_{a,b} \), we have \( R_c \subseteq L_{a,b} \). Conversely, if we have a subspace \( L_{a,b} = \langle R_a, R_b \rangle_{\mathbb{F}} \) such that \( R_c \subseteq L_{a,b} \) for each \( c \in L_{a,b} \), we have \( L_{a,b} = (a)_{\hat{A}} \), for one of the three pairwise non-isomorphic quaternion division algebras \( \hat{A} =: \hat{A}_1, \hat{A}_2, \hat{A}_3 \) mentioned in [D], cf. proposition (3.2) in [D].

(12.16) **Lemma**  Let \( \dim_{\mathbb{K}} L_0 = 2 \), let \( a \in L_0^* \) be separable and let \( \hat{A} \) be a quaternion division algebra. Then we have
\[
\varphi_1((a)_{\hat{A}}) = \langle \varphi_1(a) \rangle_{\hat{A}}
\]
for one of the three pairwise non-isomorphic quaternion division algebras \( \hat{A} =: \hat{A}_1, \hat{A}_2, \hat{A}_3 \) mentioned in [D], and the map \( (\varphi_1, \phi_a) : ((a)_{\hat{A}}, \hat{A}) \rightarrow (\langle \varphi_1(a) \rangle_{\hat{A}}, \hat{A}) \) is an isomorphism of vector spaces. In particular, we have \( \hat{A}_i = \hat{A} \) if we assume \( \hat{A} \cong \mathbb{K} \).

**Proof**  By remark (12.15), the subspace \( (a)_{\hat{A}} \) is of the form \( L_{a,b} = \langle R_a, R_b \rangle_{\mathbb{F}} \) for some element \( b \in L_0 \), and for each \( c \in L_{a,b} \), we have \( R_c \subseteq L_{a,b} \). As \( \varphi_1 : L_0 \rightarrow \hat{L}_0 \) is \( \mathbb{F} \)-linear, we have
\[
\varphi_1(L_{a,b}) = \varphi_1(\langle R_a, R_b \rangle_{\mathbb{F}}) = \langle \hat{R}_{\varphi_1(a)}, \hat{R}_{\varphi_1(b)} \rangle_{\mathbb{F}} = \hat{L}_{\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(b)}
\]
by corollary (10.11). Now let \( \tilde{c} \in \hat{L}_{\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(b)} \). Because of \( c := \varphi_1^{-1}(\tilde{c}) \in L_{a,b} \) we have \( R_c \subseteq L_{a,b} \), hence
\[
\hat{R}_{\tilde{c}} = \varphi_1(R_c) \subseteq \varphi_1(L_{a,b}) = \hat{L}_{\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(b)}
\]
which shows that the first assertion holds. The second assertion holds by proposition (12.11). In particular, we have \( \hat{A}_i \cong \mathbb{K} \). As \( \hat{A}_1, \hat{A}_2, \hat{A}_3 \) are pairwise non-isomorphic, we must have \( \hat{A}_i = \hat{A} \) if we assume \( \hat{A} \cong \mathbb{K} \).

(12.17) **Remark**  Once again we switch to the general notation.

(12.18) **Theorem**  Let \( (\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma) \) be quadratic of type (iv), let \( \dim_{\mathbb{K}} L_0 \leq 2 \) and \( \mathbb{K} \cong \mathbb{K} \). Then the map \( \Phi : \Xi \rightarrow \hat{\Xi} \) defined by
\[
\Phi := (\varphi_1, \phi) : (L_0, \mathbb{K}) \rightarrow (\hat{L}, \hat{\mathbb{K}}), \ (a, t) \mapsto (\varphi_1(a), \phi(t))
\]
is an isomorphism of pseudo-quadratic spaces satisfying
\[
\forall \ (a, t) \in T : \quad \Phi(a, t) = \gamma(a, t)
\]
Part III Jordan Isomorphisms of Pseudo-Quadratic Spaces

**Proof**

- In the case $\dim_K L_0 = 1$, each $a \in L_0^* \setminus L_0^*$ is separable, and by assumption, we have
  
  $$\varphi_1((a)_{K}) = \varphi_1(L_0) = \tilde{L}_0 = \langle \varphi_1(a) \rangle_{\tilde{K}}$$

  so that we may apply proposition (12.14). Now assume $\dim_K L_0 = 2$. By theorem (6.3) in chapter 7 of [WSch], $L_0$ has an orthogonal basis, and lemma (12.16) implies that we have $\varphi_1((a)_{K}) = \langle \varphi_1(a) \rangle_{\tilde{K}}$ for each separable element $a \in L_0^* \setminus L_0^*$ so that we may apply proposition (12.14). In both cases, the map $\langle \varphi_1, \phi \rangle : (L_0, K) \to (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K})$ is an isomorphism of vector spaces.

- By remark (11.10) (b), we have $\phi(K_0) = \tilde{K}_0$.

- By corollary (5.12), we have $\phi \circ \sigma = \tilde{\sigma} \circ \phi$.

- Let $a \in L_0^*$ and let $t \in X_a$ be as in remark (11.5) (d). By proposition (11.8), we have

  $$\phi(t) = \phi_a(t) = \varphi_2(a, t),$$

  hence

  $$\tilde{q}(\varphi_1(a)) \in \varphi_2(a, t) + \tilde{K}_0 = \phi(t) + \phi(K_0) = \phi(t + K_0) = \phi(q(a) + K_0) = \phi(q(a)) + K_0$$

- Given $(a, t) \in T$, we have

  $$\Phi(a, t) = (\varphi_1(a), \phi(t)) = (\varphi_1(a), \varphi_2(a, t)) = \gamma(a, t).$$

Chapter 13 Exceptional Isomorphisms I

Now we drop the condition $\tilde{\mathbb{A}} \cong \mathbb{A}$, i.e., we assume $\tilde{\mathbb{A}} \not\cong \mathbb{A}$. By theorem (10.38), this can only occur in small dimensions. As a consequence, there aren’t many possibilities for those exceptional isomorphisms which are, of course, not induced by an isomorphism of pseudo-quadratic spaces.

**(13.1) Lemma** Suppose that $\tilde{\mathbb{A}} \not\cong \mathbb{A}$. Then exactly one of the following holds:

- (i) The involutory sets $(\mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F}, \sigma)$ and $(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}, \tilde{\mathbb{F}}, \tilde{\sigma})$ both are quadratic of type (iv) and we have

  $$\dim_{\mathbb{A}} L_0 = 2 = \dim_{\tilde{\mathbb{A}}} \tilde{L}_0.$$  

- (ii) The involutory sets $(\mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F}, \sigma)$ and $(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}, \tilde{\mathbb{F}}, \tilde{\sigma})$ are quadratic of type (iv) and (iii), respectively, and we have

  $$\dim_{\mathbb{A}} L_0 = 1, \quad \dim_{\tilde{\mathbb{A}}} \tilde{L}_0 = 2.$$  

**Proof** By theorem (11.11) and remark (11.7), we have $\mathbb{A} \cong \tilde{\mathbb{A}}$ if $(\mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F}, \sigma)$ and $(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}, \tilde{\mathbb{F}}, \tilde{\sigma})$ both are quadratic of type (iii). Thus we may suppose $(\mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F}, \sigma)$ and $(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}, \tilde{\mathbb{F}}, \tilde{\sigma})$ both are quadratic of type (iv). By theorem (10.38), we have $\dim_{\mathbb{A}} L_0 \leq 2$ and $\dim_{\tilde{\mathbb{A}}} \tilde{L}_0 \leq 2$. Notice that we have

  $$\dim_{\mathcal{F}} L_0 = \dim_{\mathcal{F}} \tilde{L}_0.$$  

- (i) In the case $\dim_{\mathbb{A}} L_0 = 1 = \dim_{\tilde{\mathbb{A}}} \tilde{L}_0$, we may apply proposition (12.14) so that there is an isomorphism $\phi : \mathbb{A} \to \tilde{\mathbb{A}}$ of skew-fields.

- (ii) As we have $\dim_{\mathcal{F}} L_0 \geq 4$ and $\dim_{\mathcal{F}} \tilde{L}_0 \leq 4$, the assertion follows immediately.

$\blacksquare$

---

1Although we obtained $\phi$ only by taking separable elements into account, $\phi$ of course extends the isomorphism associated with inseparable elements as well since $\varphi_1 : L_0 \to L_0$ is an extension of $\varphi_1 : R_0 \to R_{\varphi_1(a)}$.  

- 74 -
(13.2) Notation Throughout this chapter, let $(\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{F}, \sigma)$ be quadratic of type (iv).

(13.3) Remark By lemma (13.1), there are two cases left. First of all, we deal with the case where both the involutory sets are quadratic of type (iv). We do this by using lemma (12.16) in a suitable way. The appearing isomorphisms turn out to be almost isomorphisms of pseudo-quadratic spaces, but modified by switching the parametrizing space.

(13.4) Notation Let $(\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{F}, \sigma)$ be quadratic of type (iv) and suppose that $\dim_{\mathbb{F}} L_0 = 2$. By [D], there are exactly three pseudo-quadratic spaces

$$(\mathcal{A}_1, \mathcal{F}, \sigma, L_0, q_1) = \Xi_1, \quad (\mathcal{A}_2, \mathcal{F}, \sigma, L_0, q_2) = \Xi_2, \quad (\mathcal{A}_3, \mathcal{F}, \sigma, L_0, q_3) = \Xi_3$$

with pairwise non-isomorphic quaternion division algebras $\mathcal{A}_1, \mathcal{A}_2, \mathcal{A}_3$ which define the group $T$. When we switch between the parametrizing pseudo-quadratic spaces, we indicate this by the map

$$\text{id}_T^l : T \to T, \quad (a, t) \mapsto (a, t),$$

i.e., after applying $\text{id}_T^l$, we consider $T$ to be defined by $\Xi_i$.

(13.5) Proposition Let $\mathcal{A}$ be quadratic of type (iv) and suppose that $\dim_{\mathcal{A}} L_0 = 2$. Then there are an $i \in \{1, 2, 3\}$ and an isomorphism $\Phi : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi}_i$ of pseudo-quadratic spaces such that $\gamma$ is induced by $(\text{id}_T^l)^{-1} \circ \Phi$.

**Proof**

Let $a \in L_0^+$ be separable. By lemma (12.16), there is an $i \in \{1, 2, 3\}$ such that

$$\varphi_1((a)_{\mathcal{A}}) = (\varphi_1(a))_{\tilde{\mathcal{A}}_i},$$

and the map $(\varphi_1, \phi_a) : ((a)_{\mathcal{A}}, \mathcal{A}) \to ((\varphi_1(a))_{\tilde{\mathcal{A}}_i}, \tilde{\mathcal{A}}_i)$ is an isomorphism of vector spaces. In particular, we have $\tilde{\mathcal{A}}_i \cong \mathcal{A}$, thus $i \in \{1, 2, 3\}$ is independent of the choice of $a$. Now the Jordan isomorphism

$$\text{id}_T^l \circ \gamma : T \to \tilde{T}$$

is induced by an isomorphism $\Phi : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi}_i$ of pseudo-quadratic spaces by theorem (12.18).

(13.6) Remark Now we consider the last case, where a quaternion division algebra “splits” into two separable quadratic extensions.

(13.7) Lemma Let $a \in L_0^+$ be separable and let $e \in E_+^\perp$. Suppose that $\varphi_1(ae) \notin (\varphi_1(a))_{\tilde{\mathcal{A}}_i}$. Then we have

$$\tilde{f}(\varphi_1(ae), \varphi_1(a)) = 0_{\tilde{\mathcal{A}}_i}, \quad \phi_{ae} = \tilde{\sigma} \circ \phi_a.$$

**Proof**

By equation (12.1), we have

$$\varphi_1(ae) \cdot \phi_{ae}(t) = \varphi_1(ae) \cdot \varphi_2(a, t)^{\bar{\sigma}} - \varphi_1(a) \cdot \varphi_2(a, t)^{-1} \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(ae)) \varphi_2(a, t)^{\bar{\sigma}}$$

for each $t \in X_a$, hence

$$\varphi_2(a, t)^{-1} \tilde{f}(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(ae)) \varphi_2(a, t)^{\bar{\sigma}} = 0_{\tilde{\mathcal{A}}_i}, \quad \forall t \in X_a : \phi_{ae}(t) = \varphi_2(a, t)^{\bar{\sigma}} = \phi_a(t)^{\bar{\sigma}}.$$

(13.8) Notation Throughout the rest of this chapter, we suppose $\tilde{\mathcal{A}}$ to be quadratic of type (iii).
Part III Jordan Isomorphisms of Pseudo-Quadratic Spaces

(13.9) Remark  By lemma (13.1), we have $\dim L_0 = 1$ and $\dim \tilde{L}_0 = 2$. As a consequence, each element $a \in L_0^*$ is separable. Moreover, we have

$$\varphi_1(ae) \notin \tilde{R}_{\varphi_1(a)} = (\varphi_1(a))_{\tilde{A}}$$

for each element $e \in E_a^\perp$. As a consequence, lemma (13.7) applies.

(13.10) Notation

- Throughout the rest of this chapter, let $a \in L_0^*$ (which is separable) and let $e \in E_a^\perp$.
- We set

$$\tilde{a} := \varphi_1(a), \quad \tilde{b} := \varphi_1(ae) \in \tilde{a}^\perp, \quad \phi := \phi_a.$$

(13.11) Remark  Given $x \in A$, we have

$$q(a \cdot x) \equiv x^\sigma q(a)x \mod F,$$

cf. definition (7.1) (P2), hence

$$(a \cdot x, x^\sigma q(a)x) \in T.$$

(13.12) Lemma  Given $x = s + et \in A$, we have

$$\gamma(a \cdot x, x^\sigma q(a)x) = (\tilde{a} \cdot \phi(s) + \tilde{b} \cdot \phi(t) \tilde{\sigma}, \phi(N(x)q(a))).$$

Proof

- We have

$$\varphi_1(a \cdot x) = \varphi_1(a \cdot s + ae \cdot t) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi(s) + \varphi_1(ae) \cdot \phi(t) \tilde{\sigma} = \tilde{a} \cdot \phi(s) + \tilde{b} \cdot \phi(t) \tilde{\sigma}$$

by lemma (13.7).
- By Proposition (11.8), we have

$$\varphi_1(ax \cdot x^\sigma q(a)x) = \varphi_1(ax) \cdot \varphi_2(ax, x^\sigma q(a)x).$$

On the other hand, we have

$$\varphi_1(a \cdot x x^\sigma q(a)x) = \varphi_1(a \cdot N(x)q(a)(s + et))$$

$$= \varphi_1(as \cdot N(x)q(a) + aet \cdot N(x)q(a) \sigma)$$

$$= \varphi_1(as) \cdot \phi(N(x)q(a)) + \varphi_1(aet) \cdot \phi(N(x)q(a) \sigma) \tilde{\sigma}$$

$$= \varphi_1(as + aet) \cdot \phi(N(x)q(a))$$

$$= \varphi_1(ax) \cdot \phi(N(x)q(a)).$$

\[ \square \]

(13.13) Proposition  Given $x = s + et \in A$ and $u \in F$, we have

$$\gamma(a \cdot x, x^\sigma q(a)x + u) = (\tilde{a} \cdot \phi(s) + \tilde{b} \cdot \phi(t) \tilde{\sigma}, \phi(N(x)q(a) + u)).$$

Proof

This results from lemma (13.12) and lemma (7.21) (d).

\[ \square \]

(13.14) Remark  This describes $\gamma$ completely.
(13.15) Theorem Suppose that $\bar{K} \not\cong K$. Then exactly one of the following holds:

(i) The involutory sets $(K, K_0, \sigma)$ and $(\bar{K}, \bar{K}_0, \bar{\sigma})$ both are quadratic of type (iv), we have \( \dim_K L_0 = 2 = \dim_{\bar{K}} \bar{L}_0 \) and there are an \( i \in \{2, 3\} \) and an isomorphism \( \Phi : \Xi \to \bar{\Xi}_i \) of pseudo-quadratic spaces such that \( \gamma \) is induced by \( (\text{id}_K^i)^{-1} \circ \Phi \), where \( \text{id}_K^i \) and \( \bar{\Xi} = \bar{\Xi}_1, \bar{\Xi}_2, \bar{\Xi}_3 \) are as in notation (13.4).

(ii) The involutory sets $(K, K_0, \sigma)$ and $(\bar{K}, \bar{K}_0, \bar{\sigma})$ are quadratic of type (iv) and (iii), respectively, we have \( \dim_K L_0 = 1 \), \( \dim_{\bar{K}} \bar{L}_0 = 2 \) and \( \gamma \) can be described by

\[
\forall x = s + et \in K, u \in K_0 : \gamma (ax, x^\sigma q(a)x + u) = (\varphi_1(a)\phi(s) + \varphi_1(ax)\phi(t)\bar{\sigma}, \phi(N(x)q(a) + u)),
\]

where \( a \in L_0^\circ \) is arbitrary, \( \phi = \phi_u, e \in E_a^\circ \) and \( \varphi_1(ax) \in \varphi_1(a)^\perp \).

Proof
This results from lemma (13.1), proposition (13.5), lemma (13.7) and proposition (13.13). Notice that we have \( i \neq 1 \) in (i) as we have \( K \not\cong \bar{K} \).

Chapter 14 The Reverse Direction

Now we consider the reverse direction, i.e., we prove that each map as above is a Jordan isomorphism.

(14.1) Remark Notice that we don’t assume \( \gamma \) to be a Jordan isomorphism any longer.

(14.2) Theorem Let \( \Xi \) and \( \bar{\Xi} \) be proper pseudo-quadratic spaces and let \( \gamma : T \to \bar{T} \) be a map that is induced by an isomorphism \( \Phi = (\varphi, \phi) : \Xi \to \bar{\Xi} \) of pseudo-quadratic spaces. Then \( \gamma \) is a Jordan isomorphism.

Proof
We have
\[
\gamma(0_{L_0}, 1_K) = (\varphi(0_{L_0}), \phi(1_K)) = (0_{L_0}, 1_{\bar{K}}).
\]

Given \( (a, t), (b, v) \in T \), we have
\[
\gamma((a, t) \cdot (b, v)) = \gamma(a + b, t + v + f(b, a)) = (\varphi(a + b), \phi(t + v + f(b, a)))
\]
\[
= (\varphi(a) + \varphi(b), \phi(t) + \phi(v) + \phi(f(b, a)))
\]
\[
= (\varphi(a) + \varphi(b), \phi(t) + \phi(v) + \bar{f}(\varphi(a), \varphi(b)))
\]
\[
= (\varphi(a), \phi(t)) \cdot (\varphi(b), \phi(v)) = \gamma((a, t)) \cdot \gamma((b, v))
\]

Let \( (a, t), (b, v) \in T \). By corollary (7.3), we have
\[
\gamma(\tilde{h}_{(a, t)}(b, v)) = \gamma(b \cdot t^\sigma - a \cdot t^{-1}f(a, b)t^\sigma, tvt^\sigma)
\]
\[
= (\varphi(b) \cdot t^\sigma - \varphi(a) \cdot \phi(t)^{-1}\phi(f(a, b)) \phi(t') \phi(v) \phi(t')^{-1})
\]
\[
= (\varphi(b) \cdot \phi(t)^\sigma - \varphi(a) \cdot \phi(t^{-1})\bar{f}(\varphi(a), \varphi(b)) \phi(t)^\sigma, \phi(t) \phi(v) \phi(t)^\sigma)
\]
\[
= \tilde{h}_{(\varphi(a), \phi(t))}(\gamma((b, v))) = \tilde{h}_{\gamma((a, t))}(\gamma((b, v))).
\]

(14.3) Remark This shows that each map as in proposition (13.5) is a Jordan isomorphism since \( \text{id}_K^i \) is a Jordan isomorphism for each \( i \in \{1, 2, 3\} \).
Throughout the rest of this chapter, let $\Xi$ and $\tilde{\Xi}$ be proper pseudo-quadratic spaces, let $(A, F, \sigma)$ and $(\tilde{A}, \tilde{F}, \tilde{\sigma})$ be quadratic of type (iv) and (iii), respectively, let $\dim_{\alpha} L_0 = 1$, $\dim_{\tilde{\alpha}} \tilde{L}_0 = 2$, let $a \in L_0^*$ and $e \in E_a \perp a$, and let $\phi : E_a \to \tilde{A}$ be an isomorphism of fields.

Moreover, let $\gamma : T \to \tilde{T}$ be a map such that for some $\tilde{a}, \tilde{b} \in \tilde{L}_0$ such that $\tilde{f}(\tilde{a}, \tilde{b}) = 0_{\tilde{\alpha}}$.

We set $b : = ae$ and

$$A := \{(a \cdot x, t) | x \in E_a, t \in X_{ax} \} \leq T, \quad B := \{(b \cdot x, t) | x \in E_a, t \in X_{bx} \} \leq T,$$

$$\tilde{A} := \{\tilde{a} \cdot x, t \in \tilde{A}, t \in X_{\tilde{ax}} \} \leq \tilde{T}, \quad \tilde{B} := \{\tilde{b} \cdot x, t \in \tilde{A}, t \in X_{\tilde{bx}} \} \leq \tilde{T}.$$

(14.5) Lemma Given $x, y \in E_a$, we have

$$f(a \cdot x, b \cdot y) = f(b \cdot y, a \cdot x).$$

Proof

Given $x, y \in E_a$, we have

$$f(a \cdot x, b \cdot y) = f(a \cdot x, ae \cdot y) = x^\sigma f(a, a)ey = eyf(a, a)^\sigma$$

$$= -y^\sigma ef(a, a)x = (ey)^\sigma f(a, a)x = f(a \cdot y, a \cdot x) = f(b \cdot y, a \cdot x).$$

(14.6) Lemma Given $(a, t), (b, v) \in T$, we have

$$(a, t) \in C_T((b, v)) \iff f(a, b) = f(b, a).$$

Proof

We have

$$(a, t)(b, v) = (b, v)(a, t) \iff (a + b + t + v + f(b, a)) = (b + a, v + t + f(a, b))$$

$$\iff f(b, a) = f(a, b).$$

(14.7) Corollary We have

$$A \subseteq C_T(B), \quad \tilde{A} \subseteq C_{\tilde{T}}(\tilde{B}).$$

Proof

The first assertion results from lemma (14.5), and given $x, y \in \tilde{A}$, we have

$$f(\tilde{a} \cdot x, \tilde{b} \cdot y) = 0_{\tilde{\alpha}} = f(\tilde{b} \cdot y, \tilde{a} \cdot x).$$

(14.8) Lemma We have

$$T = AB, \quad \tilde{T} = \tilde{A}\tilde{B}.$$
Chapter 14 The Reverse Direction

**Proof**
Let \((a \cdot x + b \cdot y, t) \in T\) where \(x, y \in \mathbb{E}_n\). Then we have
\[
t \equiv q(a \cdot x + b \cdot y) \equiv q(a \cdot x) + q(b \cdot y) + f(a \cdot x, b \cdot y) \mod F,
\]
hence
\[
\tilde{t} := t - q(a \cdot x) - q(b \cdot y) - f(a \cdot x, b \cdot y) \in F.
\]
Observe that we have \(f(a \cdot x, b \cdot y) = f(b \cdot y, a \cdot x)\) by lemma (14.5), thus
\[
(a \cdot x + b \cdot y, t) = (a \cdot x + b \cdot y, q(a \cdot x) + q(b \cdot y) + f(a \cdot x, b \cdot y) + \tilde{t})
\]
\[
= (a \cdot x + b \cdot y, q(a \cdot x) + q(b \cdot y) + f(b \cdot y, a \cdot x) + \tilde{t})
\]
\[
= (a \cdot x, q(a \cdot x)) + (b \cdot y, q(b \cdot y) + \tilde{t}) \in AB.
\]
The second assertion follows analogously. \(\square\)

(14.9) **Lemma**
The maps
\[
\Phi_1 : (\mathbb{E}_n, F, R_a, q) \rightarrow (\hat{A}, \hat{F}, \hat{\sigma}, (\hat{a})_{\hat{b}}, \hat{q}), \ (ax, t) \mapsto \hat{a} \phi(x), \phi(t) ,
\]
\[
\Phi_2 : (\mathbb{E}_n, F, \sigma, R_b, q) \rightarrow (\hat{A}, \hat{F}, \hat{\sigma}, (\hat{b})_{\hat{b}}, \hat{q}), \ (bx, t) \mapsto \hat{b} \phi(x)^\hat{\sigma}, \phi(t)^\sigma
\]
are isomorphisms of pseudo-quadratic spaces inducing \(\gamma_A := \gamma_{|A} : A \rightarrow \hat{A}\) and \(\gamma_B := \gamma_{|B} : B \rightarrow \hat{B}\), respectively.

**Proof**
We consider \(\Phi_2\), the first assertion follows analogously.

- Given \(x = et \in \mathbb{E}_n^+\) and \(u \in F\), we have
  \[
  \gamma_B(a \cdot x, x^\sigma q(a)x + u) = (b \cdot \phi(t)^\hat{\sigma}, \phi(N(x)q(a) + u))
  \]
  \[
  = (b \cdot \phi(t)^\hat{\sigma}, \phi((x^\sigma q(a)^\hat{\sigma} + u)^\hat{\sigma}))
  \]
  \[
  = (b \cdot \phi(t)^\hat{\sigma}, \phi(x^\sigma q(a)x + u)^\hat{\sigma}) = \Phi_2(a \cdot x, x^\sigma q(a)x + u).
  \]

- Given \(x \in \mathbb{E}_n\), we have
  \[
  \varphi_1(b \cdot x) = b \cdot \phi(x)^\hat{\sigma},
  \]
  thus \((\varphi_1|_{R_b}, \hat{\sigma} \circ \phi) : (R_b, \mathbb{E}_n) \rightarrow ((\hat{b})_{\hat{b}}, \hat{A})\) is an isomorphism of vector spaces.

- The map \(\hat{\sigma} \circ \phi : \mathbb{E}_n \rightarrow \hat{A}\) is clearly an isomorphism of involutory sets, cf. corollary (5.12).

- Given \(x = et \in \mathbb{E}_n^+\), we have \((\varphi_1(a \cdot x), \bar{q}(\varphi_1(a \cdot x))) \in \hat{B}\) and \((\varphi_1(a \cdot x), \phi(N(x)q(a))) \in \hat{B}\), thus
  \[
  \bar{q}(\varphi_1(x)) \in \phi(N(x)q(a)) + \tilde{F} = \phi(x^\sigma q(a)^\sigma x + \tilde{F}) = \phi((x^\sigma q(a)x)^\sigma + \tilde{F})
  \]
  \[
  = \phi(q(a \cdot x)^\hat{\sigma} + \hat{F}).
  \]
\(\square\)

(14.10) **Proposition**
The map \(\gamma : T \rightarrow \hat{T}\) is an isomorphism of groups.

**Proof**
By corollary (14.7), it is enough to consider the following two cases:

- By lemma (14.9) and theorem (14.2), \(\gamma_A : A \rightarrow \hat{A}\) and \(\gamma_B : B \rightarrow \hat{B}\) are Jordan isomorphisms. In particular, they are isomorphisms of groups.
Part III Jordan Isomorphisms of Pseudo-Quadratic Spaces

- Given $x \in \mathbb{E}_a$, $y = ct \in \mathbb{E}_a^+$ and $u, v \in \mathbb{F}$, we have

$$\gamma((a \cdot x, x^\sigma q(a)x + u) \cdot (a \cdot y, y^\sigma q(a)y + v))$$

$$= \gamma(a \cdot (x + y), x^\sigma q(a)x + y^\sigma q(a)y + f(ax, ay) + u + v)$$

$$= \gamma(a \cdot (x + y), x^\sigma q(a)x + y^\sigma q(a)y + x^\sigma f(a, ay) + u + v)$$

$$= \gamma(a \cdot (x + y), x^\sigma q(a)x + y^\sigma q(a)y + x^\sigma q(a)y' + u + v)$$

$$= \gamma(a \cdot (x + y), x^\sigma q(a)x + y^\sigma q(a)y + x^\sigma q(a)y + y^\sigma q(a)x + u + v)$$

$$= \gamma(a \cdot (x + y), x^\sigma q(a)x + y^\sigma q(a)y + y^\sigma q(a)x + u + v)$$

$$= \gamma((a + y, x^\sigma q(a)x) + u + v)$$

$$= (\tilde{a} \cdot \phi(x) + \tilde{b} \cdot \phi(t)^\sigma, \phi(N(x + y)q(a) + u + v))$$

$$= (\tilde{a} \cdot \phi(x) + \tilde{b} \cdot \phi(t)^\sigma, \phi(N(x)q(a) + N(y)q(a) + u + v))$$

$$= (\tilde{a} \cdot \phi(x), N(x)q(a) + u) \cdot (\tilde{b} \cdot \phi(t)^\sigma, \phi(N(y)q(a) + v))$$

$$= \gamma((a \cdot x, x^\sigma q(a)x + u)) \cdot \gamma((a \cdot y, y^\sigma q(a)y + v)) .$$

(14.11) Lemma Given $x \in \mathbb{A}$, $t := x^\sigma q(a)x + s \in X_{ax}$ and $\tilde{t} := N(x)q(a) + s \in \mathbb{E}_a$, we have

$$N(\tilde{t}) = N(t) .$$

Proof
We have

$$N(\tilde{t}) - N(t) = N(N(x)q(a) + s) - N(x^\sigma q(a)x + s)$$

$$= N(N(x)q(a)) + N(s) + T(N(x)q(a)s) - N(x^\sigma q(a)x) - N(s) - T(x^\sigma q(a)x)$$

$$= s(x^\sigma x(q(a) + q(a)^\sigma) - x^\sigma(q(a) + q(a)^\sigma)) = sx^\sigma(xT(q(a) - T(q(a))x) = 0_a .$$

(14.12) Lemma Given $x \in \mathbb{A}$, $t := x^\sigma q(a)x + s \in X_{ax}$ and $\tilde{t} := N(x)q(a) + s \in \mathbb{E}_a$, we have

$$xl^{-1}t^\sigma x^{-1} = \tilde{t}^{-1}\tilde{r}^\sigma \in \mathbb{E}_a .$$

Proof
By lemma (14.11), we have

$$xl^{-1}t^\sigma x^{-1} = (xt^\sigma x^{-1})^2 \cdot N(t) = (\tilde{t}^\sigma)^2 \cdot N(\tilde{t})^{-1} = \tilde{t}^{-1}\tilde{r}^\sigma \in \mathbb{E}_a .$$

(14.13) Corollary Given $x \in \mathbb{A}$ and $t := x^\sigma q(a)x + s \in X_{ax}$, we have

$$(x^{-\sigma}tt^{-\sigma}x^\sigma)q(a)(xt^{-1}t^\sigma x^{-1}) = q(a) .$$

Proof
First of all observe that we have

$$x^{-\sigma}tt^{-\sigma}x^\sigma = N(x)^{-1}xT^{-1}x^{-1}N(x) = (xt^{-1}t^\sigma x^{-1})^{-1} .$$

Now we have $xt^{-1}t^\sigma x^{-1} \in \mathbb{E}_a = C_a(\mathbb{E}_a)$ by lemma (14.12).  

(14.14) Lemma. Given \( x, y \in \mathbb{A}, \ t := x^\sigma q(a)x + s \in X_{ax} \) and \( u \in F \), we have
\[
\gamma(h_{(ax,t)}(a \cdot y, y^\sigma q(a)y + u)) = (\varphi_1(a \cdot z), \phi(N(t)N(y)q(a) + N(t)u)) ,
\]
where \( z = xt^{-1}t^\sigma x^{-1}yt^\sigma \).

**Proof.**
The first component of \( h_{(ax,t)}(a \cdot y, y^\sigma q(a)y + u) \) is
\[
ayt^\sigma - axt^{-1}f(ax, ay)t^\sigma = ayt^\sigma - axt^{-1}f(ax, ax)x^{-1}yt^\sigma = ayt^\sigma - axt^{-1}(t - t^\sigma)x^{-1}yt^\sigma
\]
and the second component of \( h_{(ax,t)}(a \cdot y, y^\sigma q(a)y + u) \) is
\[
t(y^\sigma q(a)y + u)t^\sigma = ty^\sigma q(a)yt^\sigma + N(t)u .
\]
By corollary (14.13), we have
\[
z^\sigma q(a)z = (xt^{-1}t^\sigma x^{-1}yt^\sigma)q(a)(xt^{-1}t^\sigma x^{-1}yt^\sigma)
\]
and
\[
\gamma(h_{(ax,t)}(a \cdot y, y^\sigma q(a)y + u)) = (\varphi_1(a \cdot z), \phi(N(z)q(a) + N(t)u)) ,
\]
where \( z = xt^{-1}t^\sigma x^{-1}yt^\sigma \).

Therefore, we have
\[
\gamma(h_{(ax,t)}(a \cdot y, y^\sigma q(a)y + u)) = (\varphi_1(a \cdot z), \phi(N(t)N(y)q(a) + N(t)u))
\]
\[
= (\varphi_1(a \cdot z), \phi(N(t)N(y)q(a) + N(t)u))
\]
\[
\square
\]

(14.15) Proposition. The map \( \gamma \) preserves the second component of the Hua-maps.

**Proof.**
Let \( x, y \in \mathbb{A}, \ t := x^\sigma q(a)x + s \in X_{ax} \), \( \tilde{t} := N(x)q(a) + s \in \mathbb{E}_a \) and \( u \in F \). The second component of \( h_{(ax,t)}(a \cdot y, y^\sigma q(a)y + u) \) is
\[
\hat{h}_{\gamma(ax,t)}(\gamma((a \cdot y, y^\sigma q(a)y + u))) = \hat{h}_{\gamma(\varphi_1(ax), \phi(\tilde{t}))}(\varphi_1(ax), \phi(N(y)q(a) + u))
\]

is
\[
\phi(\tilde{t})\phi(N(y)q(a) + u)\phi(\tilde{t}) = \phi(N(\tilde{t}) \cdot (N(y)q(a) + u)) = \phi(N(t)N(y)q(a) + N(t)u)
\]
by lemma (14.11). Now the assertion results from Lemma (14.14).

(14.16) Proposition. Let \( x = \lambda + e\mu \in \mathbb{A}, \ t := x^\sigma q(a)x + s \in A_{ax} \) and \( \tilde{t} := N(x)q(a) + s \in \mathbb{E}_a \).

Then the following holds:

(a) Given \( (a \cdot y, u) \in A \), we have
\[
\gamma(h_{(ax,t)}(a \cdot y, u)) = \hat{h}_{\gamma(ax,t)}(\gamma(a \cdot y, u)) .
\]

(b) Given \( (b \cdot y, u) \in B \), we have
\[
\gamma(h_{(ax,t)}(b \cdot y, u)) = \hat{h}_{\gamma(ax,t)}(\gamma(b \cdot y, u)) .
\]
Part III Jordan Isomorphisms of Pseudo-Quadratic Spaces

**Proof**

By proposition (14.15), it remains to check the first component.

(a) By lemma (14.14) and lemma (14.12), the first component of \(h_{(a,x,t)}(a \cdot y, u)\) is

\[
a \cdot \tilde{r}^{-1} \tilde{r}^a (y^\sigma) = a \cdot y \tilde{r}^{-1} \tilde{r}^a \cdot \left( N(\lambda)q(\gamma(a)) + N(e)N(\mu)q(a) + f(a, \lambda, ay \cdot \mu) + s \right).
\]

Therefore, the first component of \(\gamma(h_{(a,x,t)}(a \cdot y, u))\) is

\[
\tilde{a} \cdot \phi(y \tilde{r}^{-1} \tilde{r}^\sigma \cdot \left( N(\lambda)q(\gamma(a)) + N(e)N(\mu)q(a) + s \right)) = \tilde{b} \cdot \phi \left( y^\sigma \tilde{t} f(a, \lambda \mu) \right).
\]

On the other hand, the first component of

\[
\tilde{h}_{(a \phi(\lambda) + b \phi(\mu), \psi(x, \varphi_2 \cdot (a \cdot y, u))}
\]

is

\[
\tilde{a} \phi(y) (a \cdot y) = (\tilde{a} \phi(\lambda) + b \phi(\mu)) \cdot \phi(\tilde{t})^{-1} f(\tilde{a} \phi(\lambda) + b \phi(\mu), \tilde{a} \phi(y)) + b \phi(y^\sigma \tilde{t} f(a, \lambda \mu))
\]

(b) This follows analogously.

\[ \square \]

**Theorem (14.17)** Let \(\Xi\) and \(\hat{\Xi}\) be proper pseudo-quadratic spaces, let \((A, F, \sigma)\) and \((\hat{A}, \hat{F}, \hat{\sigma})\) be quadratic of type (iv) and (iii), respectively, let

\[
\dim A L_0 = 1, \quad \dim A \hat{L}_0 = 2,
\]

let \(a \in L_0\) and \(e \in E_0\), and let \(\phi : E_0 \to A\) be an isomorphism of fields. Moreover, let \(\gamma : T \to \hat{T}\) be a map such that

\[
\forall x = s + et \in A, \ u \in F \ : \ \gamma(a \cdot x^\sigma q(a)x + u) = (\hat{a} \cdot \phi(s) + \hat{b} \cdot \phi(t) x, \phi(N(x)q(a) + u))
\]

for some \(\hat{a}, \hat{b} \in \hat{L}_0\) such that \(\hat{f}(\hat{a}, \hat{b}) = 0\). Then \(\gamma\) is a Jordan isomorphism.

**Proof**

- Putting \(x := 0\) and \(u := 1\) yields

\[
\gamma(0_{L_0}, 1) = 0_{\hat{L}_0}, \phi(1) = 0_{L_0}, 1_{\hat{L}_0}.
\]

- By proposition (14.10), \(\gamma\) is an isomorphism of groups.

- Let \(x, y \in T\). By lemma (14.8), there are \(\hat{a} \in A\) and \(\hat{b} \in B\) such that \(y = \hat{a} \cdot \hat{b}\). By lemma (7.9) and proposition (14.16), we have

\[
\gamma(h_x(y)) = \gamma(h_{x}(\hat{a} \cdot \hat{b})) = \gamma(h_{x}(\hat{a}) \cdot h_x(\hat{b})) = \gamma(h_x(\hat{a}) \cdot \gamma(h_x(\hat{b}))
\]

\[
= \tilde{h}_y(\gamma(\hat{a})) \cdot \tilde{h}_y(\gamma(\hat{b})) = \tilde{h}_y(\gamma(\hat{b}) \cdot \gamma(\hat{a})).
\]

\[ \square \]
Chapter 15 Exceptional Isomorphisms II

We show that a Moufang set $T$ defined by a one-dimensional pseudo-quadratic space over a quaternion division algebra could equally be defined by a 2-dimensional pseudo-quadratic space over a separable quadratic extension and vice versa.

(15.1) Lemma Let $(\mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F}, \sigma)$ be quadratic of type (iii) and assume $\dim \mathbb{A} \mathbb{F} = 2$. Let $f$ be a skew-hermitian form on $L_0$ and let $\{a, b\}$ be an orthogonal basis of $L_0$. Then $f$ is anisotropic if and only if we have

$$f(b, b) f(a, a)^{-1} \not\in -N(\mathbb{A}) .$$

Proof

Given $s, t \in \mathbb{A}$, we have

$$f(as + bt, as + bt) = 0_{\mathbb{A}} \iff \ N(s) f(a, a) + N(t) f(b, b) = 0_{\mathbb{A}}$$

$$\iff f(b, b) f(a, a)^{-1} = -N(st^{-1}) \in -N(\mathbb{A}) .$$

(15.2) Lemma Let $\Xi$ be a pseudo-quadratic space such that $\dim \mathbb{A} \mathbb{F} = 1$ and such that $(\mathbb{A}, \mathbb{F}, \sigma)$ is quadratic of type (iv). Let $a \in L_0^\circ, e \in \mathbb{E}_a^\perp, \beta := -N(e)$ and $b := ae$. Then the following holds:

(a) The set $\{a, b\}$ is an $\mathbb{E}_a$-basis of $L_0$.

(b) The skew-hermitian form $\tilde{f} : L_0 \times L_0 \to \mathbb{E}_a$ defined by

$$\tilde{f}(a, a) := f(a, a) , \quad \tilde{f}(b, b) := N(e) f(a, a) , \quad \tilde{f}(a, b) := 0_{\mathbb{A}}$$

is anisotropic.

(c) There is a pseudo-quadratic form $\tilde{q}$ on $L_0$ with respect to $\mathbb{F}$, $\sigma$ and $\tilde{f}$ such that

$$\tilde{\Xi} := (\mathbb{E}_a, \mathbb{F}, \sigma, L_0, \tilde{q})$$

is a pseudo-quadratic space, satisfying $\tilde{q}(a) \equiv q(a) \Mod \mathbb{F}$ and $\tilde{q}(b) \equiv N(e)q(a) \Mod \mathbb{F}$.

(d) The map $\gamma : T \to \tilde{T}$ defined by

$$\forall x = s + et \in \mathbb{A}, \ u \in \mathbb{F} : \quad (a \cdot x, x^\sigma q(a) x + u) \mapsto (a \cdot s + b \cdot t^\sigma, N(x)q(a) + u)$$

is a Jordan isomorphism.

Proof

(a) We have $L_0 = a \cdot (\mathbb{E}_a + e\mathbb{E}_a) = a \cdot \mathbb{E}_a + b \cdot \mathbb{E}_a$.

(b) Since we have $\mathbb{A} \equiv (\mathbb{E}_a/\mathbb{F}, \beta)$, we have $\tilde{f}(b, b) \tilde{f}(a, a)^{-1} = N(e) = -\beta \not\in -N(\mathbb{E}_a)$.

(c) This results from (11.28) and (11.30) of [TW], respectively, and remark (7.4). Notice that $\tilde{f}$ is trace-valued with

$$\tilde{f}(a, a) = f(a, a) = q(a) + q(a)^\sigma , \quad \tilde{f}(b, b) = N(e) f(a, a) = N(e)q(a) + (N(e)q(a))^\sigma$$

if we have $\Char \mathbb{A} = 2$, so that we choose $\tilde{\beta}_a := q(a), \tilde{\beta}_b := N(e)q(a)$ in this case.

(d) By theorem (14.17), it suffices to show that $\gamma$ is well-defined. Given $s, t \in \mathbb{E}_a$, we have

$$\tilde{q}(a \cdot s + b \cdot t^\sigma) \equiv s^\sigma \tilde{q}(a)s + t^\sigma \tilde{q}(b)t + \tilde{f}(a \cdot s, b \cdot t^\sigma)$$

$$\equiv N(s)q(a) + N(e)N(t)q(a) = N(x)q(a) \equiv N(x)q(a) + u \Mod \mathbb{F} .$$

\qed
(15.3) Lemma  

Let $\Xi$ be a pseudo-quadratic space such that $\dim \dim_{A} L_{0} = 2$ and such that 

$(A,F,\sigma)$ is quadratic of type (iii). Let $\{a,b\}$ be an orthogonal basis of $L_{0}$ (which exists by theorem (6.3) in chapter 7 of [W.Sch]) and let 

$$\beta := -f(b,b)f(a,a)^{-1}.$$ 

Then the following holds:

(a) We have $\beta \in F \setminus N(A)$. In particular, $\mathbb{H} := (A/F,\beta)$ is a quaternion division algebra.

(b) Let $e \in A^\perp$ such that $N(e) = -\beta$. We extend the scalar multiplication on $L_{0}$ to $\mathbb{H}$ by $ae := b$. Then the skew-hermitian form $\tilde{f} : L_{0} \times L_{0} \to \mathbb{H}$ defined by $\tilde{f}(a,a) := f(a,a)$ is anisotropic, satisfying 

$$\tilde{f}(b,b) = -N(e)f(a,a), \quad \tilde{f}(a,b) = -ef(a,b).$$

(c) There is a pseudo-quadratic form $\tilde{q}$ on $L_{0}$ with respect to $F$, $\sigma$ and $\tilde{f}$ such that 

$$\Xi := (\mathbb{H},F,\sigma,L_{0},\tilde{q})$$

is a pseudo-quadratic space, satisfying $q(a) \equiv \tilde{q}(a) \mod F$ and $q(b) \equiv N(e)\tilde{q}(a) \mod F$.

(d) The map $\gamma : \tilde{T} \to T$ defined by 

$$\forall x = s + te \in \mathbb{H}, \ u \in F : \quad (a \cdot x, x^\sigma \tilde{q}(a)x + u) \mapsto (a \cdot s + b \cdot t^\sigma, N(x)\tilde{q}(a) + u)$$

is a Jordan isomorphism.

Proof

Notice that we have $\text{Fix}(\sigma) = F$ since $(A,F,\sigma)$ is quadratic of type (iii).

(a) We have 

$$\beta^\sigma = -f(b,b)^\sigma f(a,a)^{-\sigma} = -f(b,b)f(a,a)^{-1} = \beta, \quad \beta \in \text{Fix}(\sigma) = F.$$ 

By lemma (15.1), we have $\beta = -f(b,b)f(a,a)^{-1} \notin N(A)$.

(b) We have 

$$\tilde{f}(a,a) = f(a,a)_{A} \neq 0_{A}, \quad \tilde{f}(b,b) = \tilde{f}(ae,ae) = e^\sigma f(a,a)e = -N(e)f(a,a).$$

(c) This results from (11.28) and (11.30) of [TW], respectively, and remark (7.4). Notice that 

$$q(b) + q(b)^\sigma = N(e)(q(a) + q(a)^\sigma), \quad q(b) + N(e)q(a) = (q(b) + N(e)q(a))^\sigma \in \text{Fix}(\sigma) = F$$

and that $\tilde{f}$ is trace-valued with $\tilde{f}(a,a) = f(a,a) = q(a) + q(a)^\sigma$ if we have $\text{Char} A = 2$, so that we choose $\tilde{\beta}_{a} := q(a)$ in this case to obtain 

$$q(b) = f(b,b) + q(b)^\sigma = N(e)f(a,a) + q(b)^\sigma = N(e)q(a) + N(e)q(a)^\sigma + q(b)^\sigma \equiv N(e)q(a) \equiv N(e)\tilde{q}(a) \mod F.$$ 

(d) By theorem (14.17), it suffices to show that $\gamma$ is well-defined. Given $s,t \in A$, we have 

$$q(a \cdot s + b \cdot t^\sigma) \equiv s^\sigma q(a)s + t^\sigma q(b)t + f(a \cdot s,b \cdot t^\sigma)$$

$$\equiv N(s)\tilde{q}(a) + N(e)N(t)\tilde{q}(a) = N(x)\tilde{q}(a) \equiv N(x)\tilde{q}(a) + u \mod F.$$
Chapter 16 The Field $\mathbb{F}_4$

We return to the case $\mathbb{A} \cong \mathbb{F}_4$ which we excluded in chapter 11.

(16.1) Notation Throughout this chapter, let $a \in L_0^*$ and $\mathbb{A} \cong \mathbb{F}_4$, which implies $\tilde{\mathbb{A}} \cong \mathbb{F}_4$ and thus $\mathbb{F} \cong \mathbb{F}_2 \cong \overline{\mathbb{F}}$, and let $\gamma : T \rightarrow \tilde{T}$ be a Jordan isomorphism.

(16.2) Remark By remark (11.7), the map $(\nu_1, \phi_a) : ((a, \mathbb{A}), \mathbb{A}) \rightarrow ((\varphi_1(a), \tilde{\mathbb{A}}), \tilde{\mathbb{A}})$ is an isomorphism of vector spaces, where $\phi_a : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathbb{A}}$ is defined by

$$\forall t \in \mathbb{A} : \quad \varphi_1(a \cdot t) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi_a(t) .$$

Moreover, we have $\tilde{\mathcal{X}}_{\varphi_1(a)} = \{ \varphi_2(a, t), \varphi_2(a, t)^\sigma \}$ and thus either $\phi_a(t) = \varphi_2(a, t)$ for each $t \in X_a$ or $\phi_a(t) = \varphi_2(a, t)^\sigma$ for each $t \in X_a$.

(16.3) Lemma Assume $\dim \mathbb{A} L_0 \geq 2$. Then we have

$$\forall t \in X_a : \quad \phi_a(t) = \varphi_2(a, t) .$$

Proof Notice that $(\mathbb{A}, F, \sigma)$ is quadratic of type (iii), hence there are no inseparable elements. Let $b \in a^\perp$ and $t \in X_a$. By identity (7.1), we have

$$\varphi_1(a) \cdot \phi_a(t^\sigma) = \varphi_1(a \cdot t^\sigma) = \varphi_1(a \cdot t^\sigma - b \cdot t^{-1} f(a, b)t^\sigma) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot \varphi_2(a, t)^\sigma - \varphi_1(b) \cdot \varphi_2(a, t)^{-1} f(\varphi_1(a), \varphi_1(b)) \varphi_2(a, t)^\sigma .$$

The linear independence of $\varphi_1(a)$ and $\varphi_1(b)$ yields $\phi_a(t)^\sigma = \phi_a(t^\sigma) = \varphi_2(a, t)^\sigma$.

(16.4) Remark Now we can go on as in chapter 11 and we obtain that $\gamma$ is induced by an isomorphism $\Phi : \Xi \rightarrow \overline{\Xi}$ of pseudo-quadratic spaces. In the case $\dim \mathbb{A} L_0 = 1$ however, each isomorphism of groups turns out to be a Jordan isomorphism. At this point, we drop the assumption that $\gamma$ is a Jordan isomorphism.

(16.5) Lemma Assume $\dim \mathbb{A} L_0 = 1$. Then we have $h_a = \text{id}_T$ for each $a \in L_0^*$.

Proof Let $a \in L_0^*$. Given $x, y \in \mathbb{A}$ and $s \in X_{ax}, t \in X_{ay}$, we have

$$h_{(ax, s)}(a \cdot y, t) = (a \cdot ys^\sigma - a \cdot xs^{-1} f(ax, ay)s^\sigma, sts^\sigma) = (a \cdot ys^\sigma - a \cdot yN(x)f(a, a)s, N(s)t) = (a \cdot y(s^\sigma + s), t) = (a \cdot y, t) .$$

(16.6) Corollary Assume $\dim \mathbb{A} L_0 = 1$ and let $\gamma : T \rightarrow \tilde{T}$ be an isomorphism of groups. Then $\gamma$ is a Jordan isomorphism.

Proof Because of $|Z(\tilde{T})| = 2$, we have $\gamma(0_{L_0}, 1_\mathbb{A}) = (0_{L_0}, 1_\mathbb{A})$, and because of $|\tilde{T}| = |T| = 8$, we have $\dim \mathbb{A} L_0 = 1$. By lemma (16.5), we have

$$\forall a \in L_0^* : \quad h_a = \text{id}_T , \quad \tilde{h}_{\gamma(a)} = \text{id}_{\tilde{T}}$$

and thus

$$\forall a \in L_0^*, x \in L_0 : \quad \gamma(h_a(x)) = \gamma(x) = \tilde{h}_{\gamma(a)}(\gamma(x)) .$$
Part III Jordan Isomorphisms of Pseudo-Quadratic Spaces

(16.7) Remark As a consequence, it is convenient to determine the isomorphism class of the group $T$ and hence the structure of $\text{Aut}(T)$.

(16.8) Lemma We have $T \cong Q_8$, where $Q_8$ denotes the quaternion group.

\textbf{Proof} 
We have $|T| = 8$, and given $(a, t) \in T \setminus \mathbb{Z}(T)$, we have
\[(a, t)^2 = (a + a, t + t + f(a, a)) = (0_{L_0}, 1_\mathbb{A}) \neq (0_{L_0}, 0_\mathbb{A}).\]
\hfill \Box

(16.9) Remark The outer automorphisms of $T$ are represented by the restrictions of isomorphisms of pseudo-quadratic spaces, i.e., by the group
\[(\gamma_s, \rho_s | \gamma_s : T \to \tilde{T}, (a \cdot x, t) \mapsto (a \cdot x^s, t^s), \rho_s : T \to \tilde{T}, (a \cdot x, t) \mapsto (a \cdot xs, t)) \cong \Sigma_3,
\]
where $s \in \mathbb{A} \setminus \mathbb{F}$. The three non-trivial inner automorphisms yield some exceptional Jordan automorphisms:
\[
\begin{align*}
\gamma_a & : T \to T : (a, t) \mapsto (a, t), \quad (as, t) \mapsto (as, t^s), \quad (as^3, t) \mapsto (as^3, t^s), \\
\gamma_{as} & : T \to T : (a, t) \mapsto (a, t^s), \quad (as, t) \mapsto (as, t), \quad (as^3, t) \mapsto (as^3, t^s), \\
\gamma_{as^3} & : T \to T : (a, t) \mapsto (a, t^s), \quad (as, t) \mapsto (as, t), \quad (as^3, t) \mapsto (as^3, t^s).
\end{align*}
\]

(16.10) Lemma Suppose that $\dim_{\mathbb{A}} L_0 = 1$ and let $\gamma : T \to \tilde{T}$ be a Jordan isomorphism. Then there are an isomorphism $\Phi : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi}$ of pseudo-quadratic spaces and an inner automorphism $\tilde{\gamma} \in \text{Aut}(\tilde{T})$ such that $\gamma$ is induced by $\tilde{\gamma} \circ \Phi$.

\textbf{Proof} 
By remark (11.7), the map
\[(\varphi_1, \varphi_2) : ((a_\mathbb{A}, \mathbb{A}) \to ((\varphi_1(a))_\mathbb{A}, \tilde{\mathbb{A}})\]
is an isomorphism of vector spaces. Let $\Phi : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi}$ be defined by
\[
\Phi := (\varphi_1, \varphi_2) : (L_0, \mathbb{A}) \to (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{A}}), \quad (a, t) \mapsto (\varphi_1(a), \varphi_2(t)).
\]
Then the map $\tilde{\gamma} := \gamma \circ \Phi^{-1} : \tilde{T} \to \tilde{T}$ is an automorphism of $\tilde{T}$ such that $\tilde{\varphi}_1 = \text{id}_{\tilde{L}_0}$, hence $\tilde{\gamma}$ is inner.
\hfill \Box

(16.11) Theorem Assume $K \cong \mathbb{F}_4$. A map $\gamma : T \to \tilde{T}$ is a Jordan isomorphism if and only if one of the following holds:

(i) There is an isomorphism $\Phi : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi}$ that induces $\gamma$.

(ii) We have $\dim_{\mathbb{A}} L = 1$ and there are an isomorphism $\Phi : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi}$ of pseudo-quadratic spaces and a non-trivial inner automorphism $\tilde{\gamma} \in \text{Aut}(\tilde{T})$ such that $\gamma$ is induced by $\tilde{\gamma} \circ \Phi$.

\textbf{Proof} 
"$\Rightarrow$" This results from remark (16.4) and lemma (16.10).

"$\Leftarrow$" This result from theorem (14.2) and corollary (16.6).
Chapter 17 Conclusion

The complete description of the Jordan isomorphisms between the Moufang sets of two proper pseudo-quadratic spaces is as follows:

(17.1) Theorem (Jordan Isomorphisms of Moufang Sets of Pseudo-Quadratic Form Type) Let $\Xi$ and $\tilde{\Xi}$ be proper pseudo-quadratic spaces. A map $\gamma : T \to \tilde{T}$ is a Jordan isomorphism if and only if one of the following holds:

(i) There is an isomorphism $\Phi : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi}$ of pseudo-quadratic spaces that induces $\gamma$.

(ii) The involutory sets $(K, K_0, \sigma)$ and $(\tilde{K}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})$ both are quadratic of type (iv), we have $K \not\sim F_4$, $\dim K_{L_0} = 2 = \dim \tilde{K}_{\tilde{L}_0}$ and there are an $i \in \{2, 3\}$ and an isomorphism $\Phi : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi}$ of pseudo-quadratic spaces such that $\gamma$ is induced by $(\text{id}_{\tilde{T}}^i)^{-1} \circ \Phi$, where $\text{id}_{\tilde{T}}^i$ and $\tilde{\Xi} =: \tilde{\Xi}_1, \tilde{\Xi}_2, \tilde{\Xi}_3$ are as in notation (13.4).

(iii) The involutory sets $(K, K_0, \sigma)$ and $(\tilde{K}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})$ are quadratic of type (iv) and (iii), respectively, we have $\dim K_{L_0} = 1$, $\dim \tilde{K}_{\tilde{L}_0} = 2$ and $\gamma$ can be described by

$$\forall x = s + et \in K, \ u \in K_0 : \quad \gamma(ax, x^\sigma q(a)x + u) = (\bar{a}\phi(s) + \bar{b}\phi(t)^{\tilde{\sigma}}, \phi(N(x)q(a) + u)),$$

where $a \in L_0^*$ is arbitrary, $\phi : E_a \to \tilde{K}$ is an isomorphism of fields, $e \in \tilde{E}_a^\perp$, $\tilde{a} \in \tilde{L}_0$ and $\bar{b} \in \tilde{a}^\perp$.

(iv) We have $K \cong F_4 \cong \tilde{K}$, $\dim K_{L_0} = 1$ and there are an isomorphism $\Phi : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi}$ of pseudo-quadratic spaces and a non-trivial inner automorphism $\tilde{\gamma} \in \text{Aut}(\tilde{T})$ such that $\gamma$ is induced by $\tilde{\gamma} \circ \Phi$.

Proof

$\Rightarrow$ If (i) or (iv) holds, we have $K \cong \tilde{K}$, thus neither (ii) nor (iii) holds. If (iv) holds, (i) can’t hold since $\tilde{\gamma}$ is not induced by an isomorphism of pseudo-quadratic spaces by remark (16.9). Suppose that neither (i) nor (iv) holds. By theorem (8.1), $(K, K_0, \sigma)$ and $(\tilde{K}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})$ are non-proper, hence they are of quadratic type by remark (9.9), and by theorem (16.11), we have $K \not\cong F_4$. But then we have $K \not\cong \tilde{K}$ by theorem (8.1). Finally, either (ii) or (iii) holds by theorem (13.15).

$\Leftarrow$ This results from theorem (14.2), theorem (14.17) and theorem (16.11).

\square
Part IV

Simply Laced Foundations
The subject of this part is the classification of simply laced twin buildings via foundations, which are amalgams of parametrized Moufang triangles. Given a simply laced twin building, we obtain a foundation by taking the set of rank 2 residues, which are Moufang triangles, and by parametrizing the corresponding root group sequences. These parametrizations make the glueings visible, and they turn out to be Jordan isomorphisms.

By looking at foundations of rank 3, we can deduce more information about the appearing glueings, e.g., the glueing of a foundation of type $A_3$ is an isomorphism of skew-fields, which is quite restrictive, e.g., concerning foundations involving octonions or residues of type $D_4$.

Chapter 18  Parametrized Moufang Triangles

(18.1) Definition  Let $\mathcal{A}$ be an alternative division ring.

- The root group sequence
  $$\mathcal{T}(\mathcal{A}) := (U_{[1,3]}, x_1(\mathcal{A}), x_2(\mathcal{A}), x_3(\mathcal{A}))$$
  with commutator relations
  $$\forall s, t \in \mathcal{A} : [x_1(s), x_3(t)] := x_2(st)$$
  is the parametrized standard triangle with respect to $\mathcal{A}$.

- The root group sequence
  $$\mathcal{T}^\circ(\mathcal{A}) := (U_{[1,3]}, x_1(\mathcal{A}), x_2(\mathcal{A}), x_3(\mathcal{A}))$$
  with commutator relations
  $$\forall s, t \in \mathcal{A} : [x_1(s), x_3(t)] := x_2(-st)$$
  is the parametrized opposite triangle with respect to $\mathcal{A}$.

(18.2) Remark  For reasons of brevity, we will write
$$\mathcal{T}^\circ(\mathcal{A}) = (x_1(\mathcal{A}), \ldots, x_3(\mathcal{A}))$$
instead of $\mathcal{T}^\circ(\mathcal{A}) = (U_{[1,3]}, x_1(\mathcal{A}), \ldots, x_3(\mathcal{A}))$.

(18.3) Lemma  Given an alternative division ring $\mathcal{A}$, we have
$$\mathcal{T}^\circ(\mathcal{A}) \cong \mathcal{T}(\mathcal{A}) .$$

Proof  Let
$$\mathcal{T}^\circ(\mathcal{A}) = (x_1(\mathcal{A}), x_2(\mathcal{A}), x_3(\mathcal{A})) , \quad \mathcal{T}(\mathcal{A}) = (\tilde{x}_1(\mathcal{A}), \tilde{x}_2(\mathcal{A}), \tilde{x}_3(\mathcal{A})) .$$
Then $\alpha = (\alpha^1, \alpha^2, \alpha^3)$ with
$$\begin{align*}
\alpha_1 & : x_1(\mathcal{A}) \to \tilde{x}_1(\mathcal{A}) , \quad x_1(t) \mapsto \tilde{x}_1(t) , \\
\alpha_2 & : x_2(\mathcal{A}) \to \tilde{x}_2(\mathcal{A}) , \quad x_2(t) \mapsto \tilde{x}_2(-t) , \\
\alpha_3 & : x_3(\mathcal{A}) \to \tilde{x}_3(\mathcal{A}) , \quad x_3(t) \mapsto \tilde{x}_3(t)
\end{align*}$$
preserves the commutator relations: Given $s, t \in \mathcal{A}$, we have
$$\alpha([x_1(s), x_3(t)]) = \alpha(x_2(-st)) = \tilde{x}_2(st) = [\tilde{x}_1(s), \tilde{x}_3(t)] = [\alpha(x_1(s)), \alpha(x_3(t))] .$$

(18.4) Lemma  Let $\mathcal{T}(\mathcal{A}) = (x_1(\mathcal{A}), x_2(\mathcal{A}), x_3(\mathcal{A}))$ be a parametrized standard triangle. Then we have
$$(x_3(\mathcal{A}^\circ), x_2(\mathcal{A}^\circ), x_1(\mathcal{A}^\circ)) = \mathcal{T}^\circ(\mathcal{A}^\circ) .$$
Lemma
Let \( (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) \) such that \( \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3 : \mathbb{A} \to \hat{\mathbb{A}} \) are isomorphisms of additive groups satisfying
\[
\forall s, t \in \mathbb{A} : \quad \alpha_2(st) = \alpha_1(s)\alpha_3(t) .
\]

(18.5) Notation In the following, a (parametrized) Moufang triangle always denotes a parametrized standard Moufang triangle.

(18.6) Definition Let \( \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{A}), \mathcal{T}(\hat{\mathbb{A}}) \) be parametrized Moufang triangles.

- An isomorphism \( \alpha : \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{A}) \to \mathcal{T}(\hat{\mathbb{A}}) \) is a triple \( (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) \) such that \( \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3 : \mathbb{A} \to \hat{\mathbb{A}} \) are isomorphisms of additive groups satisfying
  \[
  \forall s, t \in \mathbb{A} : \quad \alpha_2(st) = \alpha_1(s)\alpha_3(t) .
  \]

- A reparametrization for \( \mathcal{T}(\hat{\mathbb{A}}) \) is an ordered set \( \alpha = (\hat{\mathbb{A}}, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) \) such that \( \hat{\mathbb{A}} \) is an alternative division ring and \( \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3 : \mathbb{A} \to \hat{\mathbb{A}} \) are isomorphisms of additive groups satisfying
  \[
  \forall s, t \in \mathbb{A} : \quad \alpha_2(st) = \alpha_1(s)\alpha_3(t) .
  \]

(18.7) Lemma Let \( \mathcal{T}(\hat{\mathbb{A}}) \) be a parametrized Moufang triangle and let \( \alpha = (\hat{\mathbb{A}}, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) \) be a reparametrization for \( \mathcal{T}(\hat{\mathbb{A}}) \). Then we have
\[
(\tilde{x}_1(\hat{\mathbb{A}}), \tilde{x}_2(\hat{\mathbb{A}}), \tilde{x}_3(\hat{\mathbb{A}})) = \mathcal{T}(\hat{\mathbb{A}}) , \quad \forall i = 1, 2, 3 : \quad \tilde{x}_i := x_i \circ \alpha_i .
\]

Proof
Given \( s, t \in \hat{\mathbb{A}} \), we have
\[
[\tilde{x}_1(s), \tilde{x}_3(t)] = [x_1(\alpha_1(s)), x_3(\alpha_3(t))] = x_2(\alpha_1(s)\alpha_3(t)) = x_2(\alpha_2(st)) = \tilde{x}_2(st) .
\]

(18.8) Lemma Let \( \mathcal{T}(\hat{\mathbb{A}}) \) be a parametrized Moufang triangle and let \( a, b \in \mathbb{A}^* \). Then there are reparametrizations \( \alpha = (\mathbb{A}, \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) \) and \( \beta = (\mathbb{A}, \beta_1, \beta_2, \beta_3) \) for \( \mathcal{T}(\hat{\mathbb{A}}) \) such that
\[
x_1(\alpha_1(1_A)) = x_1(1_A) , \quad x_3(\alpha_3(1_A)) = x_3(a) , \quad x_1(\beta_1(1_A)) = x_1(b) , \quad x_3(\beta_3(1_A)) = x_3(1_A) .
\]

Proof
Set \( \alpha := (\mathbb{A}, \phi, \rho_a \phi, \rho_0 \phi) \) with \( \phi \) as in (20.25) of [TW]. For the second statement, apply the first result to \( \mathcal{T}(\hat{\mathbb{A}}^\circ) \).

(18.9) Lemma Let \( \mathcal{T}(\hat{\mathbb{A}}) = (x_1(\hat{\mathbb{A}}), x_2(\hat{\mathbb{A}}), x_3(\hat{\mathbb{A}})) \) be a parametrized Moufang triangle. Then the action of the Hua automorphism \( h_1(s) := \mu(x_1(1_A))^{-1} \mu(x_1(s)) \) on \( x_1(\mathbb{A}) \times x_3(\mathbb{A}) \) corresponds to the map
\[
(t, u) \mapsto (sts, s^{-1}u) ,
\]
and the action of the Hua automorphism \( h_3(s) := \mu(x_3(1_A))^{-1} \mu(x_3(s)) \) on \( x_1(\mathbb{A}) \times x_3(\mathbb{A}) \) corresponds to the map
\[
(t, u) \mapsto (ts^{-1}, sus) .
\]

Proof
This is (33.10) of [TW].
Chapter 19 Foundations

In this chapter, we introduce the objects we will mainly deal with and which turn out to be a classifying invariant for simply laced twin buildings.

§ 19.1 Definition

The definition given here combines ideas and concepts of B. Mühlherr and R. Weiss. In this part, we only consider simply laced foundations, cf. part VIII for a general definition.

(19.1) Definition

- Let $M$ be a simply laced Coxeter matrix, i.e., we have $m_{ij} \in \{2, 3\}$ for all $i, j \in I$. A foundation of type $M$ is a set

$$\mathcal{F} := \{T(\mathbb{A}_{ij}), \gamma_{ij} \mid (i, j) \in A(M), (i, j, k) \in G(M)\}$$

such that:

(F1) Given $(i, j) \in A(M)$, then $T(\mathbb{A}_{ij})$ is a Moufang triangle over $\mathbb{A}_{ij}$.

(F2) Given $(i, j) \in A(M)$, we have $\mathbb{A}_{ij} = \mathbb{A}_{ji}$.

(F3) Given $(i, j, k) \in G(M)$, then $\gamma_{ij} : \mathbb{A}_{ij} \to \mathbb{A}_{ji}$ is an isomorphism of additive groups satisfying

$\gamma_{ij}(1) = 1$, $\gamma_{ij} = \text{id} \circ \gamma_{ji}^{-1} \circ \text{id}$.

(F4) Given $(i, j, k), (i, j, l), (j, k, l) \in G(M)$, we have

$\gamma_{ij} = \gamma_{kl} \circ \gamma_{ij}$. 

- Given a foundation $\mathcal{F}$, we denote the corresponding Coxeter Matrix by $F$.

- A foundation $\mathcal{F}$ is a Moufang foundation if each glueing $\gamma := \gamma_{ij}$ is a Jordan isomorphism, i.e., we have

$$\forall s, t \in \mathbb{A}_{ij} : \quad \gamma(sts) = \gamma(s)\gamma(t)\gamma(s).$$

(19.2) Definition

Let $\mathcal{F}$ be a foundation over $I = V(F)$ and let $J \subseteq I$. The $J$-residue of $\mathcal{F}$ is the foundation

$$\mathcal{F}_J := \{T(\mathbb{A}_{ij}), \gamma_{ij} \mid (i, j) \in J^2 \cap A(F), (i, j, k) \in J^3 \cap G(F)\}.$$ 

(19.3) Remark

Since a foundation is, in fact, an amalgam of Moufang triangles, an isomorphism of foundations is a system of isomorphism of Moufang triangles preserving the glueings.

(19.4) Definition

Let $\mathcal{F}, \tilde{\mathcal{F}}$ be foundations.

- An isomorphism $\alpha : \mathcal{F} \to \tilde{\mathcal{F}}$ is a system $\alpha = \{\pi, \alpha_{ij} \mid (i, j) \in A(F)\}$ of isomorphisms

$$\pi : F \to \tilde{F}, \quad \alpha_{ij} = (\alpha_{ii}, \alpha_{ij}, \alpha_{ji}) : T(\mathbb{A}_{ij}) \to T(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}(\pi(i), \pi(j)))$$

such that

$$\forall (i, j, k) \in G(F) : \quad \tilde{\gamma}_{(\pi(i), \pi(j), \pi(k))} \circ \alpha_{ij} = \alpha_{ij} \circ \gamma_{ij,k}$$

and $\alpha_{ij} = \alpha_{ji}$ for each $(i, j) \in A(F)$.

- An isomorphism $\alpha : \mathcal{F} \to \tilde{\mathcal{F}}$ is special if $F = \tilde{F}$ and $\pi = \text{id}_F$.

- An automorphism of $\mathcal{F}$ is an isomorphism $\alpha : \mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{F}$.
§ 19.2 Visualizing Foundations

Given a foundation $F$ of type $M$, we can extend the corresponding Coxeter diagram $\Pi_M$ in such a way that it contains all the information of the given foundation $F$:

- Given an edge $\{i, j\} \in E(M)$, we label it by either $T(A_{i,j})$ or $T(A_{j,i})$ and add an arrow to indicate in which direction we have the given standard root group sequence.
- Given $(i, j, k) \in G(M)$, we choose either $(i, j, k)$ or $(k, j, i)$, we add a directed arc from $\{i, j\}$ to $\{j, k\}$ or vice versa, and label it by $\gamma(i, j, k)$, resp. $\gamma(k, j, i)$.

The remaining information can be deduced from the given ones. Notice that the constructed diagram is not uniquely determined by $F$ as there is a choice in the directions.

(19.5) Example  An arbitrary foundation of type $A_3$ is given by

$$
\begin{array}{c}
1 & \xrightarrow{T(A_{1,2})} & 2 & \xrightarrow{T(A_{2,3})} & 3 \\
\gamma(1,2,3)
\end{array}
$$

a concrete example is

$$
\begin{array}{c}
1 & \xrightarrow{T(A)} & 2 & \xrightarrow{T(A^\circ)} & 3 \\
\text{id}
\end{array}
$$

where $A$ is an arbitrary alternative division ring. We will see that an integrable foundation of type $A_3$ is isomorphic to the foundation

$$
\begin{array}{c}
1 & \xrightarrow{T(A)} & 2 & \xrightarrow{T(A)} & 3 \\
\id
\end{array}
$$

for some skew-field $D$, i.e., the previous example is not integrable.

(19.6) Remark

(a) Concerning a given problem, we sometimes don’t need the whole visualization to get a feeling for the crucial step in the solution. In this case, we restrict to a diagram with the essential information, e.g., we just indicate whether some glueings are iso- or anti-isomorphisms of skew-fields.

(b) Notice that in the above construction, the resulting diagram possibly carries redundant information: Given $(i, j, k), (i, j, l) \in G(M)$ (and thus $(l, j, k) \in G(M)$), we have

$$
\gamma(i, j, k) = \gamma(l, j, k) \circ \id \circ \gamma(i, j, l),
$$

which means that

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\gamma_1 & \xrightarrow{\gamma_2} & \gamma_3 \\
\gamma_1
\end{array}
$$

and

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\gamma_1 & \xrightarrow{\gamma_2} & \gamma_3 \\
\gamma_1
\end{array}
$$

carry the same information, where $\gamma_1 = \gamma(i, j, l), \gamma_2 = \gamma(l, j, k)$ and $\gamma_3 = \gamma(i, j, k)$.
§ 19.3 Root Group Systems

The fact that a root group system is a classifying invariant of the corresponding twin building is a fundamental result in twin building theory.

(19.7) Definition
Let $B$ be a simply laced twin building of type $M$, let $\Sigma$ be a twin apartment of $B$ and let $c \in O_\Sigma$.

- Given $(i,j) \in A(M)$, let $\alpha_i, \alpha_j$ be the simple roots with respect to $(\Sigma, c)$ and let $\Theta_{(i,j)}$ be as in theorem (2.32) (d). Then
  $U_{(i,j)} := (U_{[i,j]}, U_{(i,j)}^{ij}, U_{ij}^{ij}) := \Theta_{(i,j)}$

  denotes the root group sequence of $B$ from $\alpha_i$ to $\alpha_j$, which is isomorphic to the root group sequence of $B_{ij}$ from $\alpha_i \cap B_{ij}$ to $\alpha_j \cap B_{ij}$.

- The resulting set
  $U(B, M, \Sigma, c) := \{U_{(i,j)} \mid (i,j) \in A(M)\}$

  is the root group system of $B$ based at $(\Sigma, c)$.

(19.8) Lemma
Given $(i, j, k) \in G(F)$, we have $U_{ij}^{jk} = U_{(j,k)}^j$.

Proof
This holds by definition.

(19.9) Definition
Let $U := U(B, M, \Sigma, c)$ and $\tilde{U} := U(\tilde{B}, \tilde{M}, \tilde{\Sigma}, \tilde{c})$ be root group systems.

- An isomorphism $\alpha : U \to \tilde{U}$ is a system
  $\alpha = \{\pi, \alpha_{(i,j)} \mid (i,j) \in A(M)\}$

  of isomorphisms
  $\pi : M \to \tilde{M}$, \hspace{1cm} $\alpha_{(i,j)} : U_{(i,j)} \to U_{(\pi(i), \pi(j))}$

  such that
  $\forall (i,j,k) \in G(M) : \alpha_{(i,j)}(U_{ij}^{ij}) = \alpha_{(j,k)}(U_{(j,k)}^{j})$,
  $\forall (i,j) \in A(M) : \alpha_{(i,j)} = \alpha_{(j,i)}^0$.

- An isomorphism $\alpha : U \to \tilde{U}$ is special if $M = \tilde{M}$ and $\pi = \text{id}_M$.

- An automorphism of $U$ is an isomorphism $\alpha : U \to U$.

(19.10) Theorem
Two root group systems $U(B, M, \Sigma, c)$ and $U(\tilde{B}, \tilde{M}, \tilde{\Sigma}, \tilde{c})$ of of a twin building $B$ are specially isomorphic.

Proof
This is a consequence of theorem (2.22).

(19.11) Theorem
Let $U := U(B, M, \Sigma, c)$ be a root group system of a twin building $B$. Then the isomorphism class of $U$ is a classifying invariant of the isomorphism class of $B$.

Proof
This is a consequence of the extension theorem (2.23).
§ 19.4 Foundations and Root Group Systems

Given a root group system, there is a natural way to attach a foundation to it.

(19.12) Definition Let \( \mathcal{U}(\mathcal{B}, M, \Sigma, \mathfrak{c}) \) be a root group system.

- Given \( (i, j) \in A(M) \), there is an alternative division ring \( \mathcal{A}_{(i, j)} \) such that \( U_{(i, j)} \cong T(\mathcal{A}_{(i, j)}) \).

In particular, there is a system of parametrizations

\[
x^i_{(i, j)} : \mathcal{A}_{(i, j)} \to U^i_{(i, j)} ; \quad t \mapsto x^i_{(i, j)}(t) , \quad * \in \{i, ij, j\}
\]

extending to the defining relations for \( T(\mathcal{A}_{(i, j)}) \), i.e., we have

\[
\forall s, t \in \mathcal{A}_{(i, j)} : \quad [x^i_{(i, j)}(s), x^j_{(i, j)}(t)] = x^j_{(i, j)}(st) .
\]

By lemma (18.4) and lemma (18.3), such a parametrization yields an opposite system of parametrizations

\[
x^j_{(j, i)} : \mathcal{A}_{(j, i)} \to U^j_{(j, i)} ; \quad t \mapsto x^j_{(j, i)}(t) ,
\]

\[
x^i_{(i, j)} : \mathcal{A}_{(i, j)} \to U^j_{(i, j)} ; \quad t \mapsto x^j_{(i, j)}(id^o(t)) ,
\]

\[
x^i_{(i, j)} : \mathcal{A}_{(i, j)} \to U^j_{(i, j)} ; \quad t \mapsto x^j_{(i, j)}(id^o(-t)) .
\]

The resulting set \( \Lambda := \{ T(\mathcal{A}_{(i, j)}) \mid (i, j) \in A(M) \} \) is a parameter system for \( \mathcal{U} \).

- Given \( (i, j, k) \in G(M) \) and parametrizations \( T(\mathcal{A}_{(i, j)}) \) and \( T(\mathcal{A}_{(i, k)}) \), we define the glueing \( \gamma_{(i, j, k)} : \mathcal{A}_{(i, j)} \to \mathcal{A}_{(i, k)} \) by

\[
x^j_{(i, j)}(t) = x^j_{(i, k)}(\gamma_{(i, j, k)}(t))
\]

which is justified by lemma (19.8). Then \( \gamma_{(i, j, k)} \) is an isomorphism of additive groups satisfying \( \gamma_{(i, j, k)} = id^o \circ \gamma_{(k, j, i)}^{-1} \circ id^o \). By lemma (18.8), we may adjust all the parametrizations such that

\[
\forall (i, j, k) \in G(F) : \quad \gamma_{(i, j, k)}(1) = 1 .
\]

Notice that for this purpose we need the following fact: The adjustment of a glueing \( \gamma_{(i, j, k)} \) can be realized by a reparametrization for \( T(\mathcal{A}_{(i, j)}) \) which fixes \( x^j_{(i, j)}(1) \). Thus we can make sure that we don’t alter gluings which have already been adjusted before.

(19.13) Lemma Given a root group system \( \mathcal{U} := \mathcal{U}(\mathcal{B}, M, \Sigma, \mathfrak{c}) \), a parameter system \( \Lambda \) as in definition (19.12) induces a foundation

\[
\mathcal{F}(\mathcal{U}, \Lambda) := \{ T(\mathcal{A}_{(i, j)}) , \gamma_{(i, j, k)} \mid (i, j) \in A(M) , (i, j, k) \in G(M) \} .
\]

Proof

We emphasize that the gluings in definition (19.12) are identifications with respect to directed edges. Given \( (i, j, k), (i, j, l), (j, k, l) \in G(M) \) and \( t \in \mathcal{A}_{(i, j)} \), we have

\[
x^j_{(i, j)}(\gamma_{(i, j, k)}(t)) = x^j_{(i, j)}(t) = x^j_{(i, j)}(\gamma_{(i, j, l)}(t)) = x^j_{(i, j)}(id^o \circ \gamma_{(i, j, l)}(t)) = x^j_{(i, k)}(\gamma_{(i, k, l)} \circ id^o \circ \gamma_{(i, l, j)}(t))
\]

and thus \( \gamma_{(i, j, k)} = \gamma_{(i, j, l)} \circ id^o \circ \gamma_{(i, j, l)} \).

(19.14) Definition A foundation \( \mathcal{F} \) is integrable if it is the foundation of a twin building \( \mathcal{B} \), i.e., if there are a root group system \( \mathcal{U} := \mathcal{U}(\mathcal{B}, M, \Sigma, \mathfrak{c}) \) and a parameter system \( \Lambda \) for \( \mathcal{U} \) such that

\[
\mathcal{F} = \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{U}, \Lambda) .
\]
(19.15) Remark

(a) We will see in lemma (19.27) (a) that an integrable foundation is necessarily a Moufang foundation.

(b) The next step is to show that the foundation attached to a root group system is unique up to isomorphism. Moreover, we want to prove that the building corresponding to an integrable foundation is unique up to isomorphism.

(19.16) Proposition Let $\mathcal{U} := \mathcal{U}(B, M, \Sigma, c)$ and $\tilde{\mathcal{U}} := \mathcal{U}(\tilde{B}, \tilde{M}, \tilde{\Sigma}, \tilde{c})$ be root group systems and let $\Lambda$ and $\tilde{\Lambda}$ be parameter systems for $\mathcal{U}$ and $\tilde{\mathcal{U}}$, respectively. Then the following holds:

(a) An isomorphism $\tilde{\alpha} : \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{U}, \Lambda) \to \mathcal{F}(\tilde{\mathcal{U}}, \tilde{\Lambda})$ induces an isomorphism $\alpha : \mathcal{U} \to \tilde{\mathcal{U}}$.

(b) An isomorphism $\alpha : \mathcal{U} \to \tilde{\mathcal{U}}$ induces an isomorphism $\tilde{\alpha} : \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{U}, \Lambda) \to \mathcal{F}(\tilde{\mathcal{U}}, \tilde{\Lambda})$.

Proof

Each isomorphism

$$\alpha_{(i,j)} : U_{(i,j)} \to \tilde{U}_{(\pi(i), \pi(j))}$$

induces an isomorphism

$$\tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)} : \mathcal{T}(\mathcal{A}_{(i,j)}) \to \mathcal{T}(\tilde{\mathcal{A}}_{(\pi(i), \pi(j))})$$

and vice versa. Given $(i, j) \in A(M)$, we have

$$\alpha_{(i,j)} = \alpha_{0_{(i,j)}} \iff \tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)} = \tilde{\alpha}_{0_{(i,j)}}.$$

(a) We show that

$$\alpha := \{ \pi, \alpha_{(i,j)} \mid (i, j) \in A(M) \} : \mathcal{U} \to \tilde{\mathcal{U}}$$

is an isomorphism.

Given $(i, j, k) \in G(M)$ and $t \in \mathcal{A}_{(i,j)}$, we have

$$\left( x_{(i,j)}^j(t) \right)^{\alpha_{(i,j)}} = \tilde{x}_{(\pi(i), \pi(j))}^j(\tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)}^j(t)) = \tilde{x}_{(\pi(i), \pi(j))}^j(\tilde{\gamma}_{(\pi(i), \pi(j), \pi(k))} \circ \tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)}^j(t))$$

and therefore

$$\alpha_{(i,j)} | U_{(i,j)}^j = \alpha_{(j,k)} | U_{(j,k)}^j.$$

(b) We show that

$$\tilde{\alpha} := \{ \pi, \tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)} \mid (i, j) \in A(M) \} : \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{U}, \Lambda) \to \mathcal{F}(\tilde{\mathcal{U}}, \tilde{\Lambda})$$

is an isomorphism.

Given $(i, j, k) \in G(M)$ and $t \in \mathcal{A}_{(i,j)}$, we have

$$U_{(i,j)}^j \ni x_{(i,j)}^j(t) = x_{(j,k)}^j(\tilde{\gamma}_{(i,j,k)}(t)) \in U_{(j,k)}^j.$$

As we have

$$\alpha_{(i,j)} | U_{(i,j)}^j = \alpha_{(j,k)} | U_{(j,k)}^j,$$

it follows that

$$\tilde{x}_{(\pi(j), \pi(k))}^j(\tilde{\gamma}_{(\pi(i), \pi(j), \pi(k))} \circ \tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)}^j(t)) = \tilde{x}_{(\pi(i), \pi(j))}^j(\tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)}^j(t)) = \tilde{x}_{(\pi(i), \pi(j))}^j(\tilde{\gamma}_{(j,k)} \circ \gamma_{(i,j,k)}(t))$$

and therefore

$$\tilde{\gamma}_{(\pi(i), \pi(j), \pi(k))} \circ \tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)}^j = \tilde{\alpha}_{(j,k)}^j \circ \gamma_{(i,j,k)}.$$
§ 19.5 Reparametrizations and Isomorphisms

The concept of reparametrizations is quite similar to that of isomorphisms. However, we deal with a single foundation and produce (in fact, all the) foundations which are isomorphic to a given one. Moreover, this concept allows us to complete the proof that a foundation is a classifying invariant of the corresponding twin building.

(19.17) Definition Let \( F \) be a foundation.

- A system of reparametrizations
  \[
  \alpha := \{ \alpha_{(i,j)} | (i,j) \in A(F) \}
  \]
  satisfying \( \alpha_{(i,j)} = \alpha_{(j,i)}^{\alpha_{(j,i)}} \) for each \( (i,j) \in A(F) \) and
  \[
  \gamma_{(i,j,k)} \circ \alpha_{(i,j)}^{\alpha_{(j,k)}}(1) = \alpha_{(j,k)}^{\gamma_{(i,j,k)}}(1)
  \]
  for each \( (i,j,k) \in G(F) \) is a reparametrization for \( F \).

- Given a reparametrization \( \alpha \) for \( F \), we set
  \[
  F_\alpha := \{ T(\tilde{A}(i,j)), \tilde{\gamma}(i,j,k) | (i,j) \in A(F), (i,j,k) \in G(F) \}
  \]
  with
  \[
  \tilde{\gamma}(i,j,k) := (\alpha_{(j,k)}^{\gamma_{(i,j,k)}})^{-1} \circ \gamma_{(i,j,k)} \circ \alpha_{(i,j)}^{\gamma_{(i,j,k)}}
  \]
  for each \( (i,j,k) \in G(F) \).

(19.18) Example Given the foundation

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\gamma & 1 & 2 \\
\tau(\Lambda) & \tau(\Lambda) & 3
\end{array}
\]

with \( \gamma \in \text{Aut}(\Lambda) \) and \( \alpha := \{ \alpha_{(1,2)} := (\Lambda, \text{id}_\Lambda, \text{id}_\Lambda), \alpha_{(2,3)} := (\Lambda, \gamma, \gamma, \gamma) \} \), we have

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\gamma & 1 & 2 \\
\tau(\Lambda) & \tau(\Lambda) & 3
\end{array}
\]

(19.19) Lemma Let \( U := U(B, M, \Sigma, c) \) be a root group system, let \( F := F(U, \Lambda) \) for some parameter system \( \Lambda \) for \( U \), let \( \alpha \) be a reparametrization for \( F \) and let \( \tilde{\Lambda} \) be the parameter system induced by \( \alpha \). Then we have \( \tilde{F} := F(U, \tilde{\Lambda}) = F_\alpha \).

Proof

We have

\[
\begin{align*}
\tilde{x}_{(j,k)}^{\tilde{\gamma}_{(i,j,k)}}(\tilde{\gamma}_{(i,j,k)}^{-1}(t)) &= \tilde{x}_{(i,j)}^{\gamma_{(i,j,k)}}(t) = \tilde{x}_{(i,j)}^{\gamma_{(i,j,k)}}(\alpha_{(i,j)}^{\gamma_{(i,j,k)}}(t)) \\
&= x_{(j,k)}^{\gamma_{(i,j,k)}^{-1} \circ \gamma_{(i,j,k)} \circ \alpha_{(i,j)}^{\gamma_{(i,j,k)}^{-1} \circ \gamma_{(i,j,k)}}(t))}
\end{align*}
\]
for each \( t \in \tilde{A}(i,j) \).

(19.20) Corollary Let \( U := U(B, M, \Sigma, c) \) be a root group system, let \( F := F(U, \Lambda) \) for some parameter system \( \Lambda \) for \( U \) and let

\[
\alpha = \{ \pi, \alpha_{(i,j)} | (i,j) \in A(F) \} : F \to \tilde{F}
\]

be an isomorphism. Then \( \tilde{F} \) is integrable.
Theorem

Let \( \tilde{\mathcal{A}}_{(i,j)} := \tilde{\mathcal{A}}(\pi(i),\pi(j)) \), \((\alpha'_{(i,j)})^{-1}, (\alpha''_{(i,j)})^{-1}, (\alpha'_{(i,j)})^{-1})\) as reparametrization for \( \mathcal{T}(\tilde{\mathcal{A}}_{(i,j)}) \), then replace \( i \in I \) by \( \pi(i) \in \tilde{I} \). The resulting parameter system \( \tilde{\mathcal{A}} \) satisfies
\[
\mathcal{F}(U, \tilde{\Lambda}) = \mathcal{F}_\alpha = \tilde{\mathcal{F}}.
\]

\( \blacksquare \)

(19.21) Theorem

The isomorphism class of an integrable foundations \( \mathcal{F} = \mathcal{F}(U, \Lambda) \) is a classifying invariant of the isomorphism class of the corresponding building.

Proof

This results from corollary (19.20), proposition (19.16) and theorem (19.11). \( \blacksquare \)

(19.22) Remark

The following theorem shows that the concept of reparametrization is useful if we want to determine all the foundations isomorphic to a given foundation \( \mathcal{F} \).

(19.23) Theorem

Let \( \mathcal{F}, \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \) be foundations with \( \mathcal{F} = \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \). Then the following holds:

(a) Let \( \tilde{\alpha} = \{ \tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)} \mid (i,j) \in A(\mathcal{F}) \} : \mathcal{F} \to \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \) be a special isomorphism. Then there is a reparametrization \( \alpha \) of \( \mathcal{F} \) such that \( \mathcal{F}_\alpha = \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \).

(b) Let \( \alpha = \{ \alpha_{(i,j)} \mid (i,j) \in A(\mathcal{F}) \} \) be a reparametrization for \( \mathcal{F} \) such that \( \mathcal{F}_\alpha = \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \). Then there is a special isomorphism \( \tilde{\alpha} : \mathcal{F} \to \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \).

Proof

(a) If we take \( \alpha := \{ \alpha_{(i,j)} \mid (i,j) \in A(\mathcal{F}) \} \) with
\[
\alpha_{(i,j)} := \{ \tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)}, (\tilde{\alpha}'_{(i,j)})^{-1}, (\tilde{\alpha}''_{(i,j)})^{-1}, (\tilde{\alpha}'_{(i,j)})^{-1} \}
\]
as reparametrization for \( \mathcal{F} \), then \( \mathcal{F}_\alpha = \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \).

(b) We have
\[
\alpha_{(i,j)} = (\tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)}, \alpha'_{(i,j)}, \alpha''_{(i,j)}, \alpha'_{(i,j)})
\]
for each \( (i,j) \in A(\mathcal{F}) \), thus \( \tilde{\alpha} := \{ id_{\mathcal{F}}, \tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)} \mid (i,j) \in A(\mathcal{F}) \} : \mathcal{F} \to \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \) with
\[
\tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)} := \{(\alpha'_{(i,j)})^{-1}, (\alpha''_{(i,j)})^{-1}, (\alpha'_{(i,j)})^{-1} \}
\]
is an isomorphism. \( \blacksquare \)

(19.24) Remark

(a) Let \( \mathcal{F} \) and \( \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \) be foundations and let
\[
\alpha = \{ \pi, \alpha_{(i,j)} \mid (i,j) \in A(\mathcal{F}) \} : \mathcal{F} \to \tilde{\mathcal{F}}
\]
be an isomorphism. As we may replace \( i \in V(\mathcal{F}) \) by \( \pi(i) \in V(\tilde{\mathcal{F}}) \), we may consider \( \alpha \) as special. Thus it suffices to determine all foundations which are specially isomorphic to \( \mathcal{F} \).

The remaining foundations isomorphic to \( \mathcal{F} \) are obtained by relabelings of the vertex set.

(b) The theorem is useful if we want to show that two given foundations \( \mathcal{F} \) and \( \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \) with isomorphic residues \( \mathcal{R} \) and \( \tilde{\mathcal{R}} \) are isomorphic. In this case we may replace \( \mathcal{R} \) by \( \tilde{\mathcal{R}} \), observing that there is a relabeling of the corresponding vertices involved.
§ 19.6 Glueings

At this point we collect some first results about glueings of integrable foundations.

(19.25) Notation Throughout the rest of this part, $\mathcal{F}$ denotes an integrable foundation.

(19.26) Theorem Let $(i, j) \in A(F)$. Then a Hua automorphism of $\mathcal{T}(A_{(i,j)})$ is induced by an automorphism of $\mathcal{F}$.

Proof This results from theorem (2.35).

(19.27) Lemma Let $(i, j, k) \in G(F)$ and let $\mathbb{A} := A_{(i,j)}$, $\tilde{\mathbb{A}} := A_{(j,k)}$. Then the following holds:

(a) The glueing $\gamma := \gamma_{(i,j,k)}$ is a Jordan isomorphism. In particular, $\mathcal{F}$ is a Moufang foundation.

(b) If $\gamma_{(i,j,k)}$ is an isomorphism of alternative rings, then $\mathcal{T}(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}) \cong \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{A})$.

(c) If $\gamma_{(i,j,k)}$ is an anti-isomorphism of alternative rings, then $\mathcal{T}(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}) \cong \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{A}^o)$.

Proof

(a) If we set

$$h(t) := \mu(x^{i,j}_{(i,j)}(1_{\mathbb{A}}))^{-1}\mu(x^j_{(i,j)}(t)), \quad t \in \mathbb{A}, \quad \tilde{h}(\tilde{t}) := \mu(x^{j,k}_{(j,k)}(1_{\tilde{\mathbb{A}}}))^{-1}\mu(x^j_{(j,k)}(\tilde{t})), \quad \tilde{t} \in \tilde{\mathbb{A}},$$

we have

$$\tilde{h}(\gamma(t)) = \mu(x^{j,k}_{(j,k)}(1_{\tilde{\mathbb{A}}}))^{-1}\mu(x^j_{(j,k)}(\gamma(t))) = \mu(x^{j,k}_{(j,k)}(1_{\tilde{\mathbb{A}}}))^{-1}\mu(x^j_{(j,k)}(t)) = h(t)$$

for each $t \in \mathbb{A}$. Moreover, we have

$$x^{j}_{(i,j)}(t)^{h(s)} = x^{i}_{(i,j)}(sts), \quad x^{j}_{(j,k)}(\tilde{t})^{\tilde{h}(\tilde{s})} = x^{j}_{(j,k)}(\tilde{s}\tilde{t}\tilde{\mathbb{A}})$$

for all $s, t \in \mathbb{A}, \ s, \tilde{s}, \tilde{t} \in \tilde{\mathbb{A}}$, cf. lemma (18.9). Combining these two facts yields

$$x^{j}_{(j,k)}(\gamma(s)\gamma(t)\gamma(s)) = x^{j}_{(j,k)}(\gamma(t))^{h(s)} = x^{j}_{(j,k)}(sts) = x^{j}_{(j,k)}(\gamma(sts))$$

and therefore

$$\gamma(sts) = \gamma(s)\gamma(t)\gamma(s)$$

for all $s, t \in \mathbb{A}$, thus $\gamma$ is a Jordan isomorphism.

(b) If $\gamma$ is an isomorphism, then $(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}, \gamma, \gamma, \gamma)$ is a reparametrization for $\mathcal{T}(\tilde{\mathbb{A}})$, thus $\mathcal{T}(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}) \cong \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{A})$.

(c) If $\gamma$ is an anti-isomorphism, then $(\mathbb{A}^o, \gamma^o, \gamma^o, \gamma^o)$ is a reparametrization for $\mathcal{T}(\tilde{\mathbb{A}})$, thus $\mathcal{T}(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}) \cong \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{A}^o)$.

(19.28) Definition

- A glueing is negative if it is an isomorphism of alternative rings.
- A glueing is positive if it is an anti-isomorphism of alternative rings.
- A glueing is exceptional if it is neither positive nor negative.
- A foundation is negative if each glueing is negative.
- A foundation is positive if each glueing is positive.
- A foundation is mixed if there are both positive and negative glueings.
(19.29) Proposition  A foundation
\[ \mathcal{F} = \{ T(\mathbb{A}(1,2)), T(\mathbb{A}(2,3)), \gamma := \gamma_{(1,2,3)} \} \]
of type \( A_3 \) is negative. Moreover, \( \mathbb{A} \) (and thus \( \tilde{\mathbb{A}} \)) is associative.

**Proof**
If we set \( \mathbb{A} := \mathbb{A}(1,2), \mathbb{A} := \mathbb{A}(1,2) \),
\[ x_1 := x_1^{(1,2)} , \quad x_2 := x_2^{(1,2)} , \quad \tilde{x}_1 := x_1^{(2,3)} , \quad \tilde{x}_3 := x_3^{(2,3)} \]
and
\[ h_1(t) := \mu(x_1(1,1))^{-1} \mu(x_1(t^{-1})) \in U_{(1,2)}^1 , \quad t \in \mathbb{A} , \]
\[ h_3(i) := \mu(x_3(1,1))^{-1} \mu(x_3(i^{-1})) \in U_{(2,3)}^3 , \quad i \in \tilde{\mathbb{A}} , \]
lemma (18.9) yields
\[ x_2(s)^{h_1(t)} = x_2(t \cdot s) , \quad \tilde{x}_3^{h_3(i)} = \tilde{x}_3(i \cdot \tilde{i}) \]
for all \( s, t \in \mathbb{A}, \tilde{s}, \tilde{i} \in \tilde{\mathbb{A}} \). Combining these two facts and observing \([U_{(1,2)}^1, U_{(2,3)}^3] = 1 \) yield
\[ \tilde{x}_2(\gamma(t) \ast \gamma(s)) = \tilde{x}_2(\gamma(t))^{h_3(\gamma(s))} = x_2(t)^{h_3(\gamma(s))} = x_2(1,1)^{h_1(t)h_3(\gamma(s))} = x_2(1,1)^{h_3(\gamma(s))h_1(t)} = \tilde{x}_2(\gamma(s))^{h_1(t)} = x_2(s)^{h_1(t)} = x_2(t \cdot s) = \tilde{x}_2(\gamma(t) \ast \gamma(s)) \]
and thus \( \gamma(t \cdot s) = \gamma(t) \ast \gamma(s) \) for all \( s, t \in \mathbb{A} \). As a consequence, we obtain
\[ x_2(s \cdot t) = \tilde{x}_2(\gamma(s) \ast \gamma(t)) = \tilde{x}_2(\gamma(s))^{h_3(\gamma(t))} = x_2(\gamma(s))^{h_3(\gamma(t))} = x_2(s)^{h_3(\gamma(t))} \]
for all \( s, t \in \mathbb{A} \). This implies
\[ x_2((s \cdot t) \cdot u) = x_2(s \cdot t)^{h_3(\gamma(u))} = x_2(t)^{h_3(\gamma(u))} = x_2(t \cdot u)^{h_3(\gamma(u))} = x_2((s \cdot t) \cdot u) \]
and therefore \( (s \cdot t) \cdot u = s \cdot (t \cdot u) \) for all \( s, t, u \in \mathbb{A} \). \( \square \)

(19.30) Corollary  Let \( \mathcal{F} \) be a positive foundation. Then \( \mathcal{G}_F \) is a complete graph.

(19.31) Theorem (Hua’s Theorem)  Let \( \mathbb{A} \) and \( \tilde{\mathbb{A}} \) be alternative division rings and let \( \gamma : \mathbb{A} \to \tilde{\mathbb{A}} \) be a Jordan homomorphism. If \( \tilde{\mathbb{A}} \) is associative, then \( \gamma : \mathbb{A} \to \gamma(\mathbb{A}) \) is an iso- or anti-isomorphism of alternative rings. In particular, \( \mathbb{A} \) and \( \gamma(\mathbb{A}) \) are also skew-fields, and, if \( \mathbb{A} \) or \( \gamma(\mathbb{A}) \) is a field, the map \( \gamma \) is an isomorphism of fields.

**Proof**
(i) We show: Given \( s, t \in \mathbb{A} \), we have \( \gamma(st) = \gamma(s) \gamma(t) \) or \( \gamma(st) = \gamma(t) \gamma(s) \).

The assertion is clearly true for \( s = 0_\mathbb{A} \) or \( t = 0_\mathbb{A} \), so assume \( s \neq 0_\mathbb{A} \neq t \). As we have
\[ \gamma(u^2) = \gamma(u \cdot 1_\mathbb{A} \cdot u) = \gamma(u) \gamma(1_\mathbb{A}) \gamma(u) = \gamma(u) \cdot 1_\mathbb{A} \cdot \gamma(u) = \gamma(u)^2 \]
for each \( u \in \mathbb{A} \), it follows that
\[ \gamma(s + t)^2 = \gamma(s^2 + st + ts + t^2) = \gamma(s)^2 + \gamma(st) + \gamma(ts) + \gamma(t)^2 , \]
\[ \gamma(s + t)^2 = \gamma(s)^2 + \gamma(s) \gamma(t) + \gamma(t) \gamma(s) + \gamma(t)^2 \]
and thus
\[ \gamma(st) + \gamma(ts) = \gamma(s) \gamma(t) + \gamma(t) \gamma(s) . \]
Remark

If we suppose

\[ s(t(st)^{-1})s = s([t(t^{-1}s)]t)s = [s(s^{-1})t]s = ts \]

by the Moufang identities and the inverse properties and, by lemma (27.3), therefore,

\[ \gamma(ts) = \gamma(s(t(st)^{-1})s) = \gamma(s)(\gamma(t)\gamma(st)^{-1}\gamma(t))\gamma(s). \]  \hspace{1cm} (19.3)

Observing the associativity of \( \hat{A} \), we obtain

\[ 1_{\hat{A}} - \gamma(s)\gamma(t)\gamma(st)^{-1}[\gamma(st) - \gamma(t)\gamma(s)] \]

\[ = \gamma(st) - \gamma(s)\gamma(t) - \gamma(t)\gamma(s) + \gamma(s)\gamma(t)\gamma(st)^{-1}\gamma(t)\gamma(s) \]

\[ \overset{(19.3)}{=} \gamma(st) - \gamma(s)\gamma(t) - \gamma(t)\gamma(s) + \gamma(ts) \overset{(19.2)}{=} 0_{\hat{A}}. \]

Since \( \hat{A} \) has no zero divisors, it finally follows that

\[ 1_{\hat{A}} - \gamma(s)\gamma(t)\gamma(st)^{-1} = 0_{\hat{A}} \quad \lor \quad \gamma(st) - \gamma(t)\gamma(s) = 0_{\hat{A}}. \]

(ii) Given \( s \in \hat{A} \), let

\[ N_s := \{ t \in \hat{A} \mid \gamma(st) = \gamma(s)\gamma(t) \}, \quad P_s := \{ t \in \hat{A} \mid \gamma(st) = \gamma(t)\gamma(s) \}. \]

By step (i), the subgroups \( N_s \) and \( P_s \) of \((\hat{A},+)\) satisfy \( \hat{A} = N_s \cup P_s \). As no group is the union of two proper subgroups, we obtain

\[ N_s = \hat{A} \quad \lor \quad P_s = \hat{A}. \]

(iii) If we set

\[ N := \{ s \in \hat{A} \mid N_s = \hat{A} \}, \quad P := \{ s \in \hat{A} \mid P_s = \hat{A} \}, \]

step (ii) shows that \( N \) and \( P \) are subgroups of \((\hat{A},+)\) satisfying \( \hat{A} = N \cup P \), hence

\[ N = \hat{A} \quad \lor \quad P = \hat{A}. \]

(19.32) Remark \quad If we suppose \( \hat{A} \) instead of \( \hat{A} \) to be associative and if \( \gamma(\hat{A}) \) is an alternative division ring, the theorem remains true as we may apply it to \( \gamma^{-1} : \gamma(\hat{A}) \rightarrow \hat{A} \).

(19.33) Corollary \quad Let \( F \) be a foundation such that there exists an edge \((a, b) \in A(F)\) with \( \hat{A} := \hat{A}_{(a,b)} \) associative. Then we have

\[ \forall (i, j) \in A(F) : \quad \hat{A}_{(i,j)} \cong \hat{A} \lor \hat{A}_{(i,j)} \cong \hat{A}^0, \quad \mathcal{T}(\hat{A}_{(i,j)}) \cong \mathcal{T}(\hat{A}) \lor \mathcal{T}(\hat{A}_{(i,j)}) \cong \mathcal{T}(\hat{A}^0). \]

In particular, the alternative division ring \( \hat{A}_{(i,j)} \) is associative for each \((i, j) \in A(F)\). Moreover, the assumption is satisfied if \( F \) has a residue of type \( A_3 \).

Proof \quad This results from lemma (19.27) (a), Hua’s theorem and lemma (19.27) (b), (c), using an easy induction. The final assertion results from proposition (19.29).

(19.34) Corollary \quad Let \( F \) be a foundation such that there exists an edge \((a, b) \in A(F)\) with \( \hat{A} := \hat{A}_{(a,b)} \) non-associative, i.e., \( \hat{A} \) is an octonion division algebra. Then \( G_F \) is a complete graph.

Proof \quad By proposition (19.29), \( F \) satisfies the assumption of corollary (19.33) if it has a residue of type \( A_3 \).
Chapter 20 Integrability of Certain Foundations

In this chapter, we prove the integrability of certain foundations which are not negative or whose defining field is an octonion division algebra. Afterwards we will prove that these foundations are the only integrable foundations of this type, all of them defined over an octonion or quaternion division algebra. For this purpose, we need the theory of fixed point structures developed in [MHa].

The idea is as follows: Given an integrable foundation $F$ and an automorphism $\alpha$ of the corresponding twin building $B$, the foundation $\tilde{F}$ corresponding to the twin building $\tilde{B} := \text{Fix}(\alpha)$ can be constructed out of $F$ and is, in fact, the fixed point structure of the automorphism induced on the group generated by all the root groups. Conversely, all such fixed point structures arise in this way, i.e., if we can realize a given foundation $\tilde{F}$ as the fixed point structure of an automorphism $\alpha$ of an integrable foundation $F$, then $\tilde{F}$ itself is integrable.

We apply the so called theory of Tits indices without introducing it in detail since this would involve a lot of technical considerations. We just follow the recipes, hopefully in a natural and intuitive way, except for the canonical triangle over an octonion division algebra, where we just indicate the main idea.

But first of all we start with some general integrability criterions. In combination with Kac-Moody theory, they allow us to handle all the foundations that are defined over skew-fields distinct from a quaternion division algebra (which includes fields).

§ 20.1 Integrability Criterions

The first one is a straight forward result as each residue of a twin building is again a twin building, the second one is taken from [MLo], and the third relies on Kac-Moody theory.

(20.1) Theorem Let $M$ be a Coxeter matrix over $I = V(M)$, let $F$ be an integrable foundation of type $M$ and let $J \subseteq I$ such that $|J| \geq 2$. Then $F_J$ is integrable.

Proof By assumption, we have $F = F(U, \Lambda)$ for some root group system $U = U(B, M, \Sigma, c)$ and some parameter system $\Lambda$. By theorem (2.14), $B_J := B_J(c)$ is a twin building, and by theorem (2.7) (b), $\Sigma_J := \Sigma_J(c)$ is a twin apartment of $B_J$ containing $c$. Since we have

$$\forall \, i, j \in A(M_J) : \quad \Sigma \cap B_{(i,j)}(c) = \Sigma_J \cap (B_J)_{(i,j)}(c),$$

we have

$$U_J := U(B_J, M_J, \Sigma_J, c) = \{ U_{(i,j)} \mid i, j \in A(M_J) \}$$

and thus $F_J = F(U_J, \Lambda_J)$, where $\Lambda_J$ is the parameter system induced by $\Lambda$.

(20.2) Definition Let $F$ be a foundation.

- Let $(\tilde{F}, \varphi)$ be a cover of $F$. Then the foundation

$$F(\tilde{F}, \varphi) := \{ \tilde{A}(\tilde{A}_{(i,j)}), \tilde{A}_{(i,j)}(i,j,k) \mid (i,j) \in A(\tilde{F}), (i,j,k) \in G(\tilde{F}) \}$$

with

$$\forall \, (i,j) \in A(\tilde{F}) : \quad \tilde{A}_{(i,j)} = A_{(\varphi(i), \varphi(j))}, \quad \forall \, (i,j,k) \in G(\tilde{F}) : \quad \tilde{A}_{(i,j,k)} = A_{(\varphi(i), \varphi(j), \varphi(k))}$$

is the cover corresponding to $(\tilde{F}, \varphi)$.

- A foundation $\tilde{F}$ is a cover of $F$ if there is a cover $(\tilde{F}, \varphi)$ of $F$ such that

$$\tilde{F} \cong F(\tilde{F}, \varphi).$$
(20.3) Example  Given the foundation

\[ \gamma_1 \gamma_2 \gamma_3 \bar{1} \bar{2} \bar{3} T(A(1,2)) T(A(2,3)) T(A(3,1)) \]

a cover is given by

\[ \gamma_3 \gamma_1 \gamma_2 \gamma_3 \gamma_1 T(A(3,1)) T(A(1,2)) T(A(2,3)) T(A(3,1)) \]

where \( \varphi : \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}, \ z \mapsto \bar{z} \) is the natural homomorphism.

(20.4) Theorem  Let \( F \) be a foundation and let \( \tilde{F} \) be a cover of \( F \). Then \( F \) is integrable if \( \tilde{F} \) is integrable.

Proof  This is a consequence of theorem C in [MLoc].  

(20.5) Definition  A foundation \( F \) such that \( \forall (i,j,k) \in G(F) : \gamma_{(i,j,k)} = \text{id} \) is a canonical foundation.

(20.6) Lemma  Let \( F \) be a negative foundation such that \( G_F \) is a tree. Then \( F \) is isomorphic to the corresponding canonical foundation.

Proof  Since \( G_F \) is a tree, it suffices to show the following: Given \( (i,j,k) \in G(F) \), there is a reparametrization

\[ \alpha_{(i,j,k)} = (A_{(i,j)}, \gamma_{(i,j,k)}, \gamma_{(i,j,k)}, \gamma_{(i,j,k)}) \]

such that \( (\alpha_{(i,j,k)})^{-1} \circ \gamma_{(i,j,k)} = \text{id}_{A_{(i,j)}} \). This holds for \( \alpha_{(j,k)} := (A_{(i,j)}, \gamma_{(i,j,k)}, \gamma_{(i,j,k)}, \gamma_{(i,j,k)}) \).

(20.7) Theorem  Let \( F \) be a canonical foundation such that one of the following holds:

(a) The defining field \( A \) (cf. definition (21.7)) is a field, and \( F \) is a tree.

(b) The defining field is a non-commutative skew-field, and \( F \) is a string, a ray or a chain.

Then \( F \) is integrable.

Proof  (a) Kac-Moody theory provides the existence of an integrable foundation \( \tilde{F} \) over \( A \) such that \( \tilde{F} = F \), cf. [192]. Since \( \tilde{F} \) is negative by proposition (19.29), we have \( \tilde{F} \cong F \) by lemma (20.6). Therefore, \( F \) is integrable by corollary (19.20).

(b) The corresponding twin building is the limit of a sequence of twin buildings \( A_n(A) \).
§ 20.2 The Canonical Triangle over an Octonion Division Algebra

(20.8) Definition Let \( O \) be an octonion division algebra. The foundation

\[ \tilde{A}_2(O) := \{ T(A(1,2)) := T(A(2,3)) := T(O), \gamma(1,2,3) := \gamma(2,3,1) := \gamma(3,1,2) := \text{id}_O \} \]

is the canonical triangle over \( O \).

(20.9) Theorem The foundation \( \tilde{A}_2(O) \) is integrable.

Proof (Sketch)
Let \( K := \mathbb{Z}(O) \) and let \( E \subseteq O \) be such that \( E/K \) is a quadratic separable extension. The foundation \( \tilde{A}_2(O) \) is the fixed point structure of the Tits index [MGeo].

Let \( B \) be the twin building associated with the diagram, let \( \mathcal{R} := \mathcal{R}_{(3,4,5,6)} \) and let \( \tau \) be the triality associated with \( \mathcal{R} \). Given \( k \in \{0, 1, 2\} \), let \( \bar{k} := \{0, \ldots, 6\} \setminus \{k\} \) and \( \tilde{k} := \{0, 1, 2\} \setminus \{k\} \).

By similar arguments as in [MGeo], there are automorphisms \( \varphi_k \in \text{Aut}(\mathcal{R}_{\bar{k}}) \) such that

\[ \text{Fix}(\varphi_k) \cong T(O), \quad \varphi_k(R_{\bar{k}}) = R_{\bar{k}}, \quad \varphi_k|_{\mathcal{R}_{\bar{k}}} = \tau \circ \varphi_k|_{\mathcal{R}_{\bar{k}}}, \]

and \( \varphi_0 \) can be extended to an automorphism \( \varphi \in \text{Aut}(B) \) such that \( \varphi|_{\mathcal{R}_{\bar{k}}} = \varphi_k \). By a generalization of the arguments in chapter 3 of [MPhD], the fixed point set of \( \varphi \) is a twin building of type \( \tilde{A}_2 \) whose foundation is \( \tilde{A}_2(O) \).

\( \square \)

§ 20.3 Positive and Mixed Foundations over Quaternions

(20.10) Notation Throughout this paragraph, \( \mathbb{H} := (E/K, \beta) \) is a quaternion division algebra with standard involution \( \sigma_s \).

(20.11) Notation Let \( B := \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \beta \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \in GL_2(E) \) and let

\[ \sigma : M_2(E) \to M_2(E), \quad X \mapsto BXB^{-1}. \]

(20.12) Lemma We have

\[ \text{Fix}(\sigma) = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} s & \beta t \\ \beta^{-1} u & \bar{s} \end{pmatrix} \mid s, t \in E \right\} \cong \mathbb{H}. \]

Proof Given \( X := \begin{pmatrix} s & u \\ t & v \end{pmatrix} \in M_2(E) \), we have

\[ X \in \text{Fix}(\sigma) \iff \begin{pmatrix} \bar{v} & \beta^{-1} u \\ \beta \bar{u} & \bar{s} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} s & u \\ t & v \end{pmatrix} \iff v = \bar{s} \wedge u = \beta \bar{t} \iff X \in \mathbb{H}. \]

\( \square \)
(20.13) Corollary  If we extend \( \sigma \) to an involution
\[
\sigma : M_6(\mathbb{E}) \to M_6(\mathbb{E}), \quad X \mapsto \left( \begin{array}{cc} B & B \\ B & B \end{array} \right) X \left( \begin{array}{cc} B^{-1} & B^{-1} \\ B & B \end{array} \right),
\]
we have
\[
\tilde{U}_+ := \text{Fix}(\sigma) \cap U_+ = \left\{ \left( \begin{array}{ccc} I_2 & s & t \\ I_2 & u & t \\ I_2 & s \end{array} \right) \mid s, t, u \in \mathbb{H} \right\}.
\]

(20.14) Remark

(a) We translate the map \( \sigma \) to root groups:

On the group \( \langle U_{1,2}, U_{2,3}, U_{3,4}, U_{2,1}, U_{3,2}, U_{4,3} \rangle \), the map \( \sigma \) is given by
\[
\begin{align*}
x_{1,2}(t) &\mapsto x_{2,1}(\beta^{-1}t), & x_{1,3}(t) &\mapsto x_{2,4}(\beta^{-1}t), \\
x_{2,3}(t) &\mapsto x_{1,4}(\beta t), & x_{2,4}(t) &\mapsto x_{1,3}(\beta t), \\
x_{3,4}(t) &\mapsto x_{4,3}(\beta^{-1}t), & x_{1,4}(t) &\mapsto x_{2,3}(\beta^{-1}t).
\end{align*}
\]

Moreover, the fixed point set in \( \langle U_{1,2}, U_{2,3}, U_{3,4} \rangle \) is
\[
\{ y^a(s, t) := x_{1,3}(s)x_{1,4}(\beta t)x_{2,3}(t)x_{2,4}(s) \mid (s, t) \in \mathbb{H} \}.
\]

On the group \( \langle U_{3,4}, U_{4,5}, U_{5,6}, U_{4,3}, U_{5,4}, U_{6,5} \rangle \), the map \( \sigma \) is given by
\[
\begin{align*}
x_{3,4}(t) &\mapsto x_{4,3}(\beta^{-1}t), & x_{3,5}(t) &\mapsto x_{4,6}(\beta^{-1}t), \\
x_{4,5}(t) &\mapsto x_{3,6}(\beta t), & x_{4,6}(t) &\mapsto x_{3,5}(\beta t), \\
x_{5,6}(t) &\mapsto x_{6,5}(\beta^{-1}t), & x_{3,6}(t) &\mapsto x_{4,5}(\beta^{-1}t).
\end{align*}
\]

Moreover, the fixed point set in \( \langle U_{3,4}, U_{4,5}, U_{5,6} \rangle \) is
\[
\{ y^b(s, t) := x_{3,5}(s)x_{3,6}(\beta t)x_{4,5}(t)x_{4,6}(s) \mid (s, t) \in \mathbb{H} \}.
\]

If we set
\[
\{ y^{ab}(s, t) := x_{1,5}(s)x_{1,6}(\beta t)x_{2,5}(t)x_{2,6}(s) \mid (s, t) \in \mathbb{H} \} \subseteq \tilde{U}_+,
\]
we have
\[
[y^a(s_1, t_1), y^b(s_2, t_2)] = y^{ab}((s_1, t_1) \cdot (s_2, t_2))
\]
for all \((s_1, t_1), (s_2, t_2) \in \mathbb{H}\), hence
\[
(\tilde{U}_+, y^a(\mathbb{H}), y^{ab}(\mathbb{H}), y^b(\mathbb{H})) \cong T(\mathbb{H}).
\]

(b) The corresponding Tits index is
\[
\mathbb{E}/\mathbb{K}
\]

(20.15) Theorem  Let \( G \) be a complete graph over \( I := \{1, \ldots, n\} \). Then there exists an integrable positive foundation \( F := P_n^+(\mathbb{H}) \) over \( \mathbb{H} \) such that \( G_F = G \).

More precisely: For each \( i \in I \), let \( \mathcal{B}_i \) be a a copy of \( \mathcal{B} \), and for all \( 1 \leq i < j \leq n \) let \( \mathcal{B}_{i,j} \) be a copy of \( \mathcal{B} \). We identify \( \mathcal{B}_i \) with \( \mathcal{B}_{i,j} \) as in the first case and \( B_j \) with \( B_{i,j} \) as in the second case. Then the fixed point foundation \( F := P_n^+(\mathbb{H}) \) is a positive foundation with defining field \( \mathbb{H} \) (cf. definition (21.7)) and \( G_F = G \). Moreover, we have \( \gamma_{i,j,k} \in \{ \sigma, \text{id}^p \} \) for each \((i, j, k) \in G(F)\).
We obtain integrable mixed foundations over quaternions by glueing integrable positive foundations in a suitable way.

**Proof**

Let

\[ \mathcal{B} := (A_5(\mathbb{E}) = (U_+, U_{1.2}, U_{2.3}, U_{3.4}, U_{4.5}, U_{5.6}), \sigma) \] \[ \tilde{\mathcal{B}} := (A_3(\mathbb{E}) = (\tilde{U}_+, \tilde{U}_{1.2}, \tilde{U}_{2.3}, \tilde{U}_{3.4}), \tilde{\sigma}) \]

with the usual parametrizations.

(i) We identify \( \tilde{U}_+ \) and \( U_{1.2}U_{2.3}U_{3.4} \) via

\[
\begin{align*}
\tilde{x}_{1.2}(t) & \mapsto x_{1.2}(t), \\
\tilde{x}_{1.3}(t) & \mapsto x_{1.3}(t), \\
\tilde{x}_{2.3}(t) & \mapsto x_{2.3}(t), \\
\tilde{x}_{2.4}(t) & \mapsto x_{2.4}(t), \\
\tilde{x}_{3.4}(t) & \mapsto x_{3.4}(t), \\
\tilde{x}_{1.4}(t) & \mapsto x_{1.4}(t).
\end{align*}
\]

(ii) We identify \( \tilde{U}_+ \) and \( U_{3.4}U_{4.5}U_{5.6} \) via

\[
\begin{align*}
\tilde{x}_{1.2}(t) & \mapsto x_{5.6}(t), \\
\tilde{x}_{1.3}(t) & \mapsto x_{4.6}(t), \\
\tilde{x}_{2.3}(t) & \mapsto x_{4.5}(-t), \\
\tilde{x}_{2.4}(t) & \mapsto x_{3.5}(t), \\
\tilde{x}_{1.4}(t) & \mapsto x_{3.6}(-t).
\end{align*}
\]

We have

\[
\forall t \in \mathbb{E} : \quad \alpha(x_{i,j}(t)) = \alpha(x_{i,j}(t)^\sigma)
\]

for all \( 1 \leq i < j \leq 3 \) and therefore

\[
\alpha(\text{Fix}(\sigma)) = \text{Fix}_{U_+U_+\sigma}(\sigma).
\]

Thus we may identify \( \text{Fix}(\overline{\sigma}) \) and \( \text{Fix}_{U_+U_+\sigma}(\overline{\sigma}) \) via

(i) \( \tilde{y}(s, t) := \tilde{x}_{1.3}(s)\tilde{x}_{1.4}(s)\tilde{x}_{2.3}(t)\tilde{x}_{2.4}(t) = x_{1.3}(s)x_{1.4}(s)x_{2.3}(t)x_{2.4}(t) = y^a(s, t) \)

(ii) \( \tilde{y}(s, t) := \tilde{x}_{1.3}(s)\tilde{x}_{1.4}(s)\tilde{x}_{2.3}(t)\tilde{x}_{2.4}(t) = x_{4.6}(s)x_{3.6}(t) = y^b(s, t) \)

So if we have two copies \( B_1, B_2 \) of \( B \) and if we identify \( \tilde{B} \) with subgroups of \( B_1, B_2 \) as above, we have:

- \( y^a_1(s, t) = y^a_2(s, t) \) if both the identifications are of type (i). Moreover, we have
  \[
  (y^a_2(H^o), y^a_2(H^o), y^a_2(H^o)) \cong \mathcal{T}(H^o),
  \]
  and therefore \( \gamma_{(2,1)} = \text{id}^o : H^o \to H^o \).

- \( y^a_1(s, t) = y^a_2(s, t) \) if both the identifications are of type (ii). Moreover, we have
  \[
  (y^a_2(H), y^a_2(H), y^a_2(H)) \cong \mathcal{T}(H),
  \]
  and therefore \( \gamma_{(1,2)} = \text{id}^o : H \to H^o \).

- \( y^a_1(s, t) = y^a_2(s, t) \) if both the identifications are of different type. Moreover, we have
  \[
  (y^a_2(H), y^a_2(H), y^a_2(H)) \cong \mathcal{T}(H) \cong (y^a_1(H), y^a_1(H), y^a_1(H))
  \]
  and therefore \( \gamma_{(2,1)} = \sigma_s : H \to H^o \).

\( \square \)

**Remark**

We obtain integrable mixed foundations over quaternions by glueing integrable positive foundations in a suitable way.
\textbf{(20.17) Theorem} Let $\mathcal{G}$ be a graph over $I$ and let $P$ be a collection of finite complete subgraphs such that
\[ \bigcup_{P \in \mathcal{P}} P = \mathcal{G}, \quad \forall P_1 \neq P_2 \in P : |V(P_1) \cap V(P_2)| \leq 1, \quad \forall i \in I : |\{P \in P \mid i \in V(P)\}| \leq 2 \]
and such that the graph $\mathcal{G}^P$ with vertex set $P$ and
\[ \{P_1, P_2\} \in E(\mathcal{G}^P) \quad \iff \quad |V(P_1) \cap V(P_2)| = 1 \]
is a tree. Then there exists an integrable mixed foundation $\mathcal{F} := \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{G}^P, \mathbb{H})$ over $\mathbb{H}$ such that:
\begin{itemize}
  \item $\mathcal{G}_F = \mathcal{G}$,
  \item The $V(P)$-residue is isomorphic to $\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{V}(P)}^+(\mathbb{H})$ for each $P \in P$.
  \item Given $P_1, P_2 \in P$ such that $P_1 \cap P_2 = \{j\}$, we have
    \[ \forall (i, k) \in (V(P_1) \setminus \{j\}) \times (V(P_2) \setminus \{j\}) : \quad \gamma_{(i, j, k)} \in \{\text{id}, \sigma_*\}, \]
    i.e., these glueings are negative.
\end{itemize}
\textbf{Proof}
Given a graph $P \in P$, there is an integrable positive foundation
\[ \mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{V}(P)}^+(\mathbb{H}) \]
which can be realized as fix foundation of a foundation $\mathcal{B}_P$. We likewise want to realize the desired foundation $\mathcal{F}$ as a fixed point foundation. For this purpose, we will connect the foundations $\mathcal{B}_P$ in a suitable way. Since $\mathcal{G}^P$ is a tree and $|\{P \in P \mid i \in V(P)\}| \leq 2$ for each vertex $i \in I$, it suffices to prove the assertion for $|P| = 2$.
Let $P = \{P_1, P_2\}$, let $V(P_1) \cap V(P_2) = \{j\}$, for $\lambda = 1, 2$ let $n_\lambda := |V(P_\lambda)|$, let $j_\lambda$ be the copy of $j$ in $P_\lambda$ and let $\mathcal{B}_{j_\lambda}$ be the corresponding copy of $\mathcal{B}$ in the construction of $\mathcal{B}_{P_\lambda}$ in theorem (20.15). We identify $\mathcal{B}_{j_1}$ and $\mathcal{B}_{j_2}$ via
\[ \tilde{x}_{1,2}^{j_1}(t) \rightarrow \tilde{x}_{1,2}^{j_2}(t), \quad \tilde{x}_{2,3}^{j_1}(t) \rightarrow \tilde{x}_{2,3}^{j_2}(-t), \quad \tilde{x}_{3,4}^{j_1}(t) \rightarrow \tilde{x}_{3,4}^{j_2}(t). \]
If $\mathcal{B}_{(i, j_1)}$ and $\mathcal{B}_{(j_2, k)}$ are copies of $\mathcal{B}$ in the construction of $\mathcal{B}_{P_1}$ and $\mathcal{B}_{P_2}$, respectively, we have the following possibilities:
\begin{itemize}
  \item $y_{j_1}^\alpha(s, t) = y_{j_2}^\beta(\bar{s}, -t)$ if both the identifications are of type (i). Moreover, we have
    \[ (y_{j_1}^\alpha(\mathbb{H}^\circ), y_{j_1}^\beta(\mathbb{H}^\circ), y_{j_1}^\gamma(\mathbb{H}^\circ)) \cong \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{H}^\circ), \quad (y_{j_2}^\alpha(\mathbb{H}^\circ), y_{j_2}^\beta(\mathbb{H}^\circ), y_{j_2}^\gamma(\mathbb{H}^\circ)) \cong \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{H}^\circ) \]
    and therefore $\gamma_{(i, j_1, k)} = \sigma_* : \mathbb{H}^\circ \to \mathbb{H}.
  \item $y_{j_1}^\alpha(s, t) = y_{j_2}^\beta(\bar{s}, -t)$ if both the identifications are of type (ii). Moreover, we have
    \[ (y_{j_1}^\alpha(\mathbb{H}), y_{j_1}^\beta(\mathbb{H}), y_{j_1}^\gamma(\mathbb{H})) \cong \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{H}), \quad (y_{j_2}^\alpha(\mathbb{H}), y_{j_2}^\beta(\mathbb{H}), y_{j_2}^\gamma(\mathbb{H})) \cong \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{H}) \]
    and therefore $\gamma_{(i, j_1, k)} = \sigma_* : \mathbb{H} \to \mathbb{H}^\circ.
  \item $y_{j_1}^\alpha(s, t) = y_{j_2}^\beta(s, t)$ if both the identifications are of different type. Moreover, we have
    \[ (y_{j_1}^\alpha(\mathbb{H}), y_{j_1}^\beta(\mathbb{H}), y_{j_1}^\gamma(\mathbb{H})) \cong \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{H}) \cong (y_{j_2}^\alpha(\mathbb{H}), y_{j_2}^\beta(\mathbb{H}), y_{j_2}^\gamma(\mathbb{H})) \]
    and therefore $\gamma_{(i, j_1, k)} = \text{id} : \mathbb{H} \to \mathbb{H}.$
\end{itemize}
By construction, we have
\[ \mathcal{G}_F = \mathcal{P}_1 \cup \mathcal{P}_2 = \mathcal{G}. \]
Chapter 21  Triangle Foundations

The smallest building bricks of foundations involving glueings are $A_3$- and $\tilde{A}_2$-residues. Since there are $\tilde{A}_2$-foundations which do not have an integrable cover, it is not enough to consider $A_3$-residues. We will show that the only $\tilde{A}_2$-residues without an integrable cover are those constructed in chapter 20.

(21.1) Notation  Throughout this chapter, $\mathcal{B}$ is of type $\tilde{A}_2$ with foundation

$$\mathcal{F} = \{ \tau(\mathcal{A}(1,2)), \tau(\mathcal{A}(2,3)), \tau(\mathcal{A}(3,1)), \gamma_2 := \gamma(1,2,3), \gamma_3 := \gamma(2,3,1), \gamma_1 := \gamma(3,1,2) \}.$$  

We denote its building at infinity by $\mathcal{B}^\infty$.

(21.2) Remark  Since $\mathcal{B}$ is a Moufang twin building, it is a Bruhat-Tits building by [VV], i.e., $\mathcal{B}^\infty$ is a Moufang triangle $\tau(\mathcal{A}^\infty)$ for some alternative division ring $\mathcal{A}^\infty$. As a consequence, we may apply the results of [W].

§ 21.1 The Defining Field

First of all we show that each $A_2$-residue is isomorphic to the same Moufang triangle $\tau(\mathcal{A})$, up to opposition. Then we prove that there is an embedding $\mathcal{A} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{A}^\infty$.

(21.3) Proposition  There is an automorphism $\alpha \in \text{Aut}(\mathcal{B})$ inducing $1 \mapsto 2 \mapsto 3 \mapsto 1$ on $\mathcal{G}_\mathcal{F}$.

Proof  By corollary (18.15) of [W], $\text{Aut}(\mathcal{B})$ acts transitively on the set of gems, hence on the vertices and thus on $I$. As $|I| = 3$ we are done.

(21.4) Corollary  There is a $(1\ 2\ 3)$-automorphism of $\mathcal{F}$.

Proof  Let $\mathcal{U} := \mathcal{U}(\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{F}, \Sigma, c)$ be a root group system such that $\mathcal{F} = \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{U}, \Lambda)$ for some parameter system $\Lambda$ for $\mathcal{U}$ and let $\alpha \in \text{Aut}(\mathcal{B})$ be as in proposition (21.3). Then $\alpha$ induces a $(1\ 2\ 3)$-isomorphism from $\mathcal{U}$ to $\mathcal{U}(\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{F}, \alpha(\Sigma), \alpha(c))$ which is specially isomorphic to $\mathcal{U}$ by theorem (19.10). By proposition (19.16), there is a $(1\ 2\ 3)$-automorphism of $\mathcal{U}$ which induces a $(1\ 2\ 3)$-automorphism of $\mathcal{F}$.

(21.5) Corollary  We have $\mathcal{A} := \mathcal{A}(1,2) \cong \mathcal{A}(2,3) \cong \mathcal{A}(3,1)$.

Proof  By corollary (21.4), we have

$$\tau(\mathcal{A}(1,2)) \cong \tau(\mathcal{A}(2,3)) \cong \tau(\mathcal{A}(3,1)),$$

thus the claim results from (35.6) of [TW].

(21.6) Theorem  Let $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$ be an integrable foundation. Then there is an alternative division ring $\mathcal{A}$ such that

$$\forall (i,j) \in A(\tilde{\mathcal{F}}) : \quad \tilde{\mathcal{A}}_{(i,j)} \cong \mathcal{A} \vee \tilde{\mathcal{A}}_{(i,j)} \cong \mathcal{A}^\infty.$$  

Proof  By corollary (19.33) and corollary (21.5), this is true for each irr. rank 3 residue. The assertion results from an easy induction, starting with $\mathcal{A} := \tilde{\mathcal{A}}_{(a,b)}$ for an arbitrary edge $(a,b) \in A(\tilde{\mathcal{F}})$.  

- 109 -
There is an embedding \( \sigma : \mathbb{A} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{A}^\infty \).

\[ \mathcal{R}_0 \cong \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{A}) = \{x_1(\mathbb{A}), x_2(\mathbb{A}), x_3(\mathbb{A})\} \]

be the gem as in (18.1) of [W]. As \( \mathcal{R}_0 \) is a special residue, it is a subbuilding of

\[ \mathcal{B}^\infty \cong \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{A}^\infty) = \{\tilde{x}_1(\mathbb{A}^\infty), \tilde{x}_2(\mathbb{A}^\infty), \tilde{x}_3(\mathbb{A}^\infty)\} \]

by theorem (6.3) of [MV]. Given \( t \in \mathbb{A} \) and \( i \in \{1, 2, 3\} \), there is a unique element \( \tilde{x}_i(\sigma_i(t)) \) inducing \( x_i(t) \), cf. proposition (29.61) of [W]. By lemma (18.8), we may reparametrize \( \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{A}^\infty) \) such that

\[ \sigma_1(1_A) = 1_{\mathbb{A}^\infty}, \quad \sigma_3(1_A) = 1_{\mathbb{A}^\infty}. \]

Given \( s, t \in \mathbb{A} \) and \( i \in \{1, 2, 3\} \), we have\(^1\)

\[ \tilde{x}_i(\sigma_i(s + t)) = x_i(s + t) = x_i(s)x_i(t) = \tilde{x}_i(\sigma_i(s))\tilde{x}_i(\sigma_i(t)) = \tilde{x}_i(\sigma_i(s) + \sigma_i(t)) \quad (21.1) \]

and

\[ \tilde{x}_2(\sigma_2(st)) = [x_2(s), x_3(t)] = [\tilde{x}_1(\sigma_1(s)), \tilde{x}_3(\sigma_3(t))] = \tilde{x}_2(\sigma_1(s)\sigma_3(t)) \quad (21.2) \]

Putting \( s := 1_A \) and \( t := 1_A \) in equation (21.2) shows that

\[ \sigma := \sigma_3 = \sigma_2 = \sigma_1, \]

hence

\[ \forall s, t \in \mathbb{A} : \quad \sigma(s + t) = \sigma(s) + \sigma(t) \quad (21.1), \quad \sigma(st) = \sigma(s)\sigma(t) \quad (21.2). \]

\[ \square \]

(a) The root group valuation \( \phi := \phi_{\mathcal{R}_0} \) with respect to \( \mathcal{R}_0 \) as in definition (13.8) of [W] induces a discrete valuation \( \nu \) of \( \mathbb{A}^\infty \). As a consequence, we have

\[ \sigma(\mathbb{A}) \subseteq \{ k \in \mathbb{A}^\infty \mid \nu(k) = 0 \}. \]

Moreover, \( \sigma(\mathbb{A}) \) is a set of representatives for the residue field \( \mathbb{A}^\infty := \mathcal{O}/m \), where \( \mathcal{O} \) is the valuation ring of \( \mathbb{A}^\infty \) and \( m \) is its unique maximal ideal.

In particular, \( \tilde{x}_i(\sigma(\mathbb{A})) \subseteq \tilde{U}_{1,0} \) is a set of representatives for \( \tilde{U}_{1,0} \) and, given a uniformizer \( \pi \in \mathbb{A}^\infty \), \( \tilde{x}_i(\sigma(\mathbb{A})\pi) \subseteq \tilde{U}_{1,1} \) and \( \tilde{x}_i(\pi\sigma(\mathbb{A})) \subseteq \tilde{U}_{1,1} \) are sets of representatives for \( \tilde{U}_{1,1} \), where \( \tilde{U}_{1,k} \) is defined as in definition (3.21) of [W] and \( \tilde{U}_{1,k} \) is defined as in (18.21) of [W].

(b) By the results of [W], we may suppose \( \mathbb{A}^\infty \) to be complete with respect to the valuation \( \nu \) and \( \nu(\mathbb{A}^\infty) = \mathbb{Z} \). By lemma (3.39) (a), \( Z(\mathbb{A}^\infty) \) is complete with respect to the induced valuation. As a consequence, we may apply the results of [V] if \( \mathbb{A}^\infty \) is an octonion division algebra.

(c) For brevity, we will write \( \tilde{x}_i(t) \) instead of \( \tilde{x}_i(\sigma(t)) \) in the following.

\(^1\)We replace \( \tilde{x}_i(\sigma_i(t))|_{\mathcal{R}_0} = x_i(t) \) by \( \tilde{x}_i(\sigma_i(t)) = x_i(t) \).
§ 21.2 Triangles over Octonions

At this point, as well as in §21.4 and §21.6, we heavily make use of the theory of affine buildings developed in [W]. The main point is the fact that a parametrization for the building at infinity induces a parametrization for a given root group system. As uniformizers play a central role, we need some results of [P].

(21.11) Notation Throughout this paragraph, \(\mathbb{O} := \mathbb{A}\) is an octonion division algebra. As a consequence, \(\mathbb{O}^\infty\) is an octonion division algebra.

(21.12) Proposition We have \(\nu(Z(\mathbb{O}^\infty)) = \mathbb{Z}\). As a consequence, there is a uniformizer \(\pi \in Z(\mathbb{O}^\infty)\).

\[\begin{align*}
\text{Proof}\quad \text{As we have } \mathbb{O} = \mathbb{O}^\infty \text{ by remark (21.10), this is a consequence of proposition 2 in [P].} \\
\end{align*}\]

(21.13) Theorem The foundation \(\mathcal{F}\) is specially isomorphic to the foundation \(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}_2(\mathbb{O})\).

\[\begin{align*}
\text{Proof}\quad \text{Let } (x_1, x_2, x_3) \text{ be a parametrization for } \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{O}^\infty). \text{ Then the maps} \\
x_{(i,j)}^i : \mathbb{O} \to x_1(\mathbb{O}^\infty), \quad t \mapsto x_1(t) \in U_{1,0}, \\
x_{(i,j)}^j : \mathbb{O} \to x_2(\mathbb{O}^\infty), \quad t \mapsto x_2(t) \in U_{2,0}, \\
x_{(i,j)}^k : \mathbb{O} \to x_3(\mathbb{O}^\infty), \quad t \mapsto x_3(t) \in U_{3,0}
\end{align*}\]

yield a parametrization for the gem \(\mathcal{R}_0 = \mathcal{R}_{(i,j)}\), cf. remark (21.10). Moreover, the maps

\[\begin{align*}
x_{(j,k)}^j : \mathbb{O} \to x_1(\mathbb{O}^\infty), \quad t \mapsto x_2(t) \in U_{3,0}, \\
x_{(j,k)}^k : \mathbb{O} \to x_1(\mathbb{O}^\infty), \quad t \mapsto x_3(t) \in U_{1,0}, \\
x_{(j,k)}^k : \mathbb{O} \to x_2(\mathbb{O}^\infty), \quad t \mapsto x_1(t) \in U_{1,0}
\end{align*}\]

yield parametrizations for two gems \(\mathcal{R}_{(j,k)}\) and \(\mathcal{R}_{(k,i)}\) at distance one to each other and to \(\mathcal{R}_{(i,j)}\).

By construction, this parameter system \(\Lambda\) parametrizes a root group system \(\mathcal{U} := \mathcal{U}(\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{F}, \Sigma, c)\). As

\[\begin{align*}
x_{(i,j)}^j(t) &= x_3(t) = x_{(j,k)}^j(t), \\
x_{(j,k)}^k(t) &= x_2(t) = x_2(t\pi) = x_{(k,i)}^k(t), \\
x_{(k,i)}^i(t) &= x_1(t) = x_{(i,j)}^i(t)
\end{align*}\]

it follows that

\[\gamma_{(i,j,k)} = \gamma_{(j,k,i)} = \gamma_{(k,i,j)} = \text{id}_\mathbb{O}.\]

Therefore, the resulting foundation \(\tilde{\mathcal{F}} := \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{U}, \Lambda)\) is the canonical foundation \(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}_2(\mathbb{O})\). Finally we have \(\mathcal{F} \cong \tilde{\mathcal{F}} = \tilde{\mathbb{A}}_2(\mathbb{O})\) by theorem (19.10). \(\square\)
§ 21.3 Non-Existence of Tetrahedrons over Octonions

Before we continue the examination of triangle foundations, we use the results of §21.2 to prove that there are no further integrable foundations over octonions. To apply them, we have to investigate the structure of $\text{Aut}_J(O)$. In particular, we construct a certain subgroup $\Gamma \leq \text{Aut}_J(O)$.

(21.14) Notation

- Given a quaternion subalgebra $H$, $e \in H^\perp$ and $w, p \in H$, we set
  \[
  \psi_{(H,e,w)} : O \to O, \quad x + e \cdot y \mapsto x + e \cdot w^{-1}yw ,
  \]
  \[
  \phi_{(H,e,w,p)} : O \to O, \quad x + e \cdot y \mapsto w^{-1}xw + e \cdot w^{-1}ywp .
  \]

- We set
  \[
  \Psi := \{ \psi_{(H,e,w)} | H \text{ a quaternion subalgebra, } e \in H^\perp, w \in H \} ,
  \]
  \[
  \Phi := \{ \phi_{(H,e,w,p)} | H \text{ a quaternion subalgebra, } e \in H^\perp, w, p \in H, N(p) = 1_O \} .
  \]

- Given $\psi_{(H,e,w)} \in \Psi$, we set
  \[
  \psi_{(H,e,w)}^\circ : O^\circ \to O^\circ, \quad x + e \circ y \mapsto x + e \circ w^{-1}yw .
  \]

- We set
  \[
  \Gamma := \{ \psi \phi | \psi \in \Psi, \phi \in \text{Aut}(O) \} ,
  \]
  \[
  \Gamma^\circ := \{ \psi^\circ \phi | \psi \in \Psi, \phi \in \text{Aut}(O^\circ) \} .
  \]

(21.15) Lemma Let $\psi := \psi_{(H,e,w)} \in \Psi$. Then the following holds:

(a) Given $s, t \in O$, we have
  \[
  \psi(st) = (\psi(s) \cdot \psi(t)w)w^{-1} .
  \]

(b) $\psi \in \text{Aut}_J(O)$.

Proof

(a) This is (20.24) of [TW].

(b) By the Moufang identities and the inverse properties, We have
  \[
  \psi(sts) \overset{(a)}{=} (\psi(s) \cdot \psi(ts)w)w^{-1} \overset{(a)}{=} (\psi(s) \cdot ([\psi(t) \cdot \psi(s)w]w^{-1})w^{-1}
  \]
  \[
  = [\psi(s)(\psi(t) \cdot \psi(s)w)]w^{-1} = [(\psi(s)\psi(t) \cdot \psi(s))w]w^{-1} = \psi(s)\psi(t)\psi(s) .
  \]
  for all $s, t \in O$. 

(21.16) Lemma We have $\Phi \subseteq \text{Aut}_{Z(O)}(O)$. Given an element $\tilde{\phi} \in \text{Aut}_{Z(O)}(O)$ leaving a quaternion subalgebra $H$ invariant, there is an element $\phi \in \Phi$ such that $\tilde{\phi} = \phi$.

Proof

This is section (2.1) of [Sp]. Notice that our point of view is that of the opposite multiplication.
Chapter 21 Triangle Foundations

(21.17) Lemma  Given γ = ψ(H,e,w)φ ∈ Γ and v ∈ O*, let α_v,γ : T(O) → T(O),

\[ x^1(t) \mapsto x^1(v \cdot γ(t)), \quad x^{12}(t) \mapsto x^{12}(v \cdot γ(t)w \cdot v), \quad x^2(t) \mapsto x^2(γ(t)w \cdot v) \]

and given γ_o = ψ_o(H,e,w)φ ∈ Γ and v ∈ O*, let α_v,γ_o : T(O^o) → T(O^o),

\[ x^2(t) \mapsto x^2(v \cdot γ_o(t)), \quad x^{12}(t) \mapsto x^{12}(v \circ γ_o(t)w \circ v), \quad x^1(t) \mapsto x^1(γ_o(t)w \circ v) \]

Then we have

\[ \{α_v,γ \mid v ∈ O^*, γ ∈ Γ\} = Aut(T(O)) = Aut(T(O^o)) = \{α_v,γ_o \mid v ∈ O^*, γ_o ∈ Γ^o\} \]

Proof

This holds by the proof of (37.12) in [TW].

(21.18) Lemma  We have Γ = Γ^o.

Proof

Given ψ := ψ(H,e,w) ∈ Ψ, we have

\[ ψ^o(x + e \cdot y) = ψ^o(x + y \cdot e) = ψ^o(x + e \circ y) \]

\[ = x + e \circ w^{-1}yw = x + wyw^{-1} \cdot e = x + e \circ wyw^{-1} = x + e \cdot wyw^{-1} \]

for all x, y ∈ H and therefore

\[ ψ^o(H,e,w) = ψ(H,e,w^{-1}) \]

(21.19) Lemma  The set Γ is a subgroup of Aut_{J}(O).

Proof

Given α_v,γ ∈ Aut(T(O)), we have

\[ α^1_{v,γ}(1_O) = v \cdot γ(1_O) = v \]

(21.3)

• We have

\[ id_O = ψ(H,e,1_o) \circ id_O ∈ Γ \]

• Let γ ∈ Γ. By equation (21.3) and lemma (21.17), there is an element ρ ∈ Γ such that

\[ α^{-1}_{1_o,γ} = α_{1_o,ρ} \]

We obtain

\[ γ^{-1} = (α^1_{1_o,γ})^{-1} = α^1_{1_o,ρ} = ρ ∈ Γ \]

• Let γ_1, γ_2 ∈ Γ. By equation (21.3) and lemma (21.17), there is an element ρ ∈ Γ such that

\[ α^1_{1_o,γ_1} \circ α^1_{1_o,γ_2} = α^1_{1_o,ρ} \]

We obtain

\[ γ_1γ_2 = α^1_{1_o,γ_1}α^1_{1_o,γ_2} = α^1_{1_o,ρ} = ρ ∈ Γ \]

(21.20) Lemma  We have Ψ ∪ Φ ⊆ Γ.
Proof
Given a quaternion subalgebra $H$ and $e \in H^\perp$, we have

\[ \text{id}_O \in \text{Aut}(O), \quad \text{id}_O = \psi_{(H,e,1_0)} \in \Psi. \]

(21.21) Lemma
We have $\gamma_w \in \Gamma$ for each $w \in O$.

Proof
By lemma (3.25) (c), there is a quaternion subalgebra $H$ containing $w$. Let $e \in H^\perp$. Then we have

\[ \gamma_w(x + e \cdot y) = w^{-1}xw + w^{-1}(e \cdot y)w = w^{-1}xw + e \cdot \bar{w}^{-1}wy \]

for all $x, y \in H$. Notice that

\[ N(\bar{w}^{-1}w) = N(\bar{w})^{-1}N(w) = N(w^{-1}N(w) = 1_O, \]

thus we obtain

\[ \gamma_w = \phi_{(H,e,w,\bar{w}^{-1}w)} \circ \psi_{(H,e,w^{-1}w)} \in \Gamma. \]

(21.22) Lemma
We have $\sigma_s \notin \Gamma$.

Proof
Let $\psi = \psi_{(H,e,w)} \in \Psi$ and $\phi \in \text{Aut}(O)$ such that $\sigma_s = \psi \phi$. Then

\[ \text{id}_H = \psi|_H = \sigma_s \phi|_H^{-1} \]

is both negative and positive $\mathcal{L}$.

(21.23) Lemma
Let

\[ F = \{ T(A_{(1,2)}) := T(A_{(2,3)}) := T(A_{(3,1)}) := T(O), \quad \gamma_2 := \gamma_{(1,2,3)}, \quad \gamma_3 := \gamma_{(2,3,1)}, \quad \gamma_1 := \gamma_{(3,1,2)} \} \]

be an integrable triangle foundation over $O$. Then we have $\gamma_i \in \Gamma$ for $i = 1, 2, 3$.

Proof
We have $F \cong \tilde{A}_2(O)$ by theorem (21.13), thus theorem (19.23) (a) yields a reparametrization $\alpha$ for $\tilde{A}_2(O)$ such that

\[ \tilde{A}_2(O)_\alpha = F. \]

From definition (19.17) it follows that

\[ \gamma_{(i,j,k)} = (\alpha_{(j,k)}^i)^{-1} \circ \text{id}_O \circ \alpha_{(i,j)}^j. \]

By lemma (21.17) and lemma (21.18), there are $\gamma_{(i,j)}, \gamma_{(j,k)} \in \Gamma$ and $w \in O$ such that

\[ \alpha_{(i,j)}^j(t) = w \cdot \gamma_{(i,j)}(t), \quad \alpha_{(j,k)}^j(t) = \gamma_{(j,k)}(t) \cdot w \]

and thus

\[ (\alpha_{(j,k)}^j)^{-1}(t) = \gamma_{(j,k)}^{-1}(t \cdot w^{-1}), \quad (\alpha_{(j,k)}^j)^{-1} \circ \alpha_{(i,j)}^j(t) = (\gamma_{(j,k)}^j)^{-1}(w \cdot \gamma_{(i,j)}(t) \cdot w^{-1}) \]

for each $t \in O$. We finally obtain

\[ \gamma_{(i,j,k)} = (\gamma_{(j,k)}^j)^{-1} \circ \gamma_w \circ \gamma_{(i,j)} \in \Gamma \]

by lemma (21.21).
(21.24) Proposition  Let \( \tilde{F} \) be a foundation over \( \mathcal{O} \) such that \( G_{\tilde{F}} \) is a tetrahedron. Then \( \tilde{F} \) is not integrable.

Proof
Assume that \( \tilde{F} \) is integrable. Then each rank 3 residue is integrable, hence specially isomorphic to \( \tilde{A}_2(\mathcal{O}) \) by theorem (21.13). By remark (19.24) (b), we may assume that the \( \{1, 2, 3\} \)-residue is \( \tilde{A}_2(\mathcal{O}) \). Moreover, we may assume
\[
T(\tilde{A}(1, 2, 4)) = T(\tilde{A}(2, 3)) = T(\tilde{A}(3, 4)) = T(\mathcal{O}).
\]
Now we are in the situation of lemma (21.23), thus we have \( \tilde{\gamma}(1, 2, 4) \in \Gamma \) and
\[
\tilde{\gamma}(1, 2, 4) = \text{id} \circ \text{id} \circ \tilde{\gamma}^{-1}(1, 2, 4) \circ \text{id} = \tilde{\gamma}^{-1}(1, 2, 4) \circ \text{id}.
\]
We extend the reparametrization
\[
\alpha(4, 2) := \{ \mathcal{O}, \sigma, \sigma_s, \sigma_s \}
\]
to a reparametrization \( \alpha \) for \( \tilde{F} \) and obtain an integrable foundation
\[
F := \tilde{F}_\alpha
\]
satisfying
\[
\gamma(1, 2, 4) = \text{id} \circ \gamma(1, 2, 4) \circ \sigma_s = \tilde{\gamma}^{-1}(1, 2, 4) \circ \sigma_s.
\]
As we have
\[
T(\tilde{A}(4, 2)) = T(\tilde{A}(2, 3)) = T(\tilde{A}(3, 4)) = T(\mathcal{O}),
\]
it follows that
\[
\tilde{\gamma}^{-1}(1, 2, 4) \circ \sigma_s = \gamma(4, 2, 3) \in \Gamma,
\]
\( \sigma_s \in \Gamma \).

(21.25) Theorem  A foundation \( F \) over an octonion division algebra \( \mathcal{O} \) is integrable if and only if we have \( F \cong A_2(\mathcal{O}) \) or \( F \cong \tilde{A}_2(\mathcal{O}) \).

Proof
As \( G_F \) is complete and as each residue is integrable, proposition (21.24) implies \( |V(F)| \leq 3 \). If \( |V(F)| = 2 \), we have \( F \cong \Gamma(\mathcal{O}) \), and if \( |V(F)| = 3 \), we have \( F \cong \tilde{A}_2(\mathcal{O}) \) by theorem (21.13). Finally, \( \tilde{A}_2(\mathcal{O}) \) is integrable by theorem (20.9).

§ 21.4 Triangles over Skew-Fields

As we are done with the octonion case, we next deal with positive foundations over skew-fields. The first step is to show that a triangle foundation \( F \) over a skew-field \( \mathcal{A} \) is negative if \( \mathcal{A}^\infty \) is a skew-field. Thus \( \mathcal{A}^\infty \) is necessarily an octonion division algebra if \( F \) is positive. Then we prove that \( \mathcal{A} \) is a quaternion division algebra, using the fact that \( \mathcal{A} \) embeds into \( \mathcal{A}^\infty \). At last we obtain a parametrization for a root group sequence via the building at infinity.

(21.26) Notation  Throughout this paragraph, \( \mathcal{A} \) is a skew-field.

(21.27) Lemma  Let \( T(\mathcal{A}) \) and \( T(\tilde{\mathcal{A}}) \) be isomorphic Moufang triangles over skew-fields and let \( \alpha = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) : T(\mathcal{A}) \to T(\tilde{\mathcal{A}}) \) be an isomorphism. Then there are \( a, b \in \mathcal{A} \) and an isomorphism \( \phi : \mathcal{A} \to \tilde{\mathcal{A}} \) of skew-fields such that
\[
\alpha = (\lambda_\phi, \lambda_\phi, \rho_\phi) .
\]
Proof
Let
\[ a := \alpha_1(1_A), \quad b := \alpha_3(1_A). \]
Since \( \hat{A} \) is associative, the map
\[ \tilde{\alpha} := (\lambda_\alpha^{-1} \alpha_1, \lambda_\rho^{-1} \alpha_2, \rho_\beta^{-1}) : \mathcal{T}(\hat{A}) \to \mathcal{T}(\hat{\hat{A}}) \]
is an isomorphism. Moreover, we have
\[ \lambda_\alpha^{-1} \alpha_1(1_A) = a^{-1} a = 1_{\hat{A}}, \quad \rho_\beta^{-1} \alpha_3(1_A) = b b^{-1} = 1_{\hat{A}}. \]
By (35.23) of [TW] therefore, there is an isomorphism
\[ \phi : \tilde{\alpha} \to \phi, \phi, \phi \]
of skew-fields such that
\[ \tilde{\alpha} = (\phi, \phi, \phi). \]
Thus we have
\[ \alpha = (\lambda_\alpha \phi, \lambda_\alpha \rho_\beta \phi, \rho_\beta \phi). \]

(21.28) Lemma Let \( \hat{F}, \hat{F} \) be isomorphic foundations over a skew-field, let \( \alpha : \hat{F} \to \hat{F} \) be an isomorphism and let \((i, j, k) \in G(F)\). If \( \tilde{\gamma}_{(i, j, k)} \) is negative, then \( \hat{\gamma} := \gamma_{(\pi(1), \pi(2), \pi(3))} \) is negative.

Proof
By lemma (21.27), there are isomorphisms \( \phi_i : \hat{\hat{A}}(i, j) \to \hat{\hat{A}}(\pi(i), \pi(j)) \) and \( \phi_k : \hat{\hat{A}}(j, k) \to \hat{\hat{A}}(\pi(j), \pi(k)) \)
of skew-fields and elements \( a_i \in \hat{\hat{A}}(\pi(i), \pi(j)) \) and \( a_k \in \hat{\hat{A}}(\pi(j), \pi(k)) \) such that
\[ \alpha_{(i, j)} = \rho_{a_i} \circ \phi_i, \quad \alpha_{(j, k)} = \lambda_{a_k} \circ \phi_k. \]
By the definition of an isomorphism, we have
\[ \hat{\gamma} = \alpha_{(j, k)} \circ \tilde{\gamma}_{(i, j, k)} \circ (\alpha_{(i, j)}^{-1}). \]
Combining these two facts implies that there are elements \( a, b \in \hat{\hat{A}}(\pi(j), \pi(k)) \) such that
\[ \hat{\gamma} = \lambda_a \circ \rho_b \circ \phi_k \circ \tilde{\gamma}_{(i, j, k)} \circ \phi_i^{-1}. \]
Moreover, we have
\[ ab = \tilde{\gamma}(1) = 1 \]
and therefore \( b = a^{-1} \). It finally follows that
\[ \hat{\gamma} = \gamma_b \circ \phi_k \circ \tilde{\gamma}_{(i, j, k)} \circ \phi_i^{-1} \]
is negative.

(21.29) Corollary The following holds:
(a) The foundation \( \mathcal{F} \) is either negative or positive.
(b) If a foundation isomorphic to \( \mathcal{F} \) is negative, then \( \mathcal{F} \) is negative.

Proof
(a) This results from lemma (21.28) and corollary (21.4).
(b) This is an immediate consequence of lemma (21.28).

(21.30) Theorem Let \( \hat{A}^\infty \) be a skew-field. Then \( \mathcal{F} \) is negative.
Proof

Let \((x_1, x_2, x_3)\) be a parametrization for \(\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{A}^\infty)\) and let \(\pi \in \mathbb{A}^\infty\) be a uniformizer. Then the maps

\[
x_{i,j}^{(i,j)}: \mathbb{A} \rightarrow x_i(\mathbb{A}^\infty), \quad t \mapsto x_i(t) \in U_{i,0},
\]

yield a parametrization for the gem \(R_0 = R_{\{i,j\}}\), cf. remark (21.10). Moreover, the maps

\[
x_{j,k}^{(j,k)}: \mathbb{A} \rightarrow x_j(\mathbb{A}^\infty), \quad t \mapsto x_j(t) \in U_{j,0},
\]

yield a parametrization for a gem \(R_{\{j,k\}}\) at distance one to \(R_{\{i,j\}}\). By construction, these two parametrizations are part of a parameter system \(\Lambda\) for a root group system \(\mathcal{U} := \mathcal{U}(B,F,\Sigma,c)\). As we have

\[
x_{i,j}^{(i,j)}(t) = x_3(t) = x_{j,k}^{(j,k)}(t),
\]

it follows that \(\gamma_{(i,j,k)} = \text{id}_\mathbb{A}\) is negative. Therefore, the resulting foundation

\[
\tilde{F} := \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{U},\Lambda)
\]

is negative, cf. corollary (21.29) (a) with \(\tilde{F}\) in place of \(\mathcal{F}\). As we have \(\mathcal{F} \cong \tilde{F}\) by theorem (19.10), corollary (21.29) (b) finally shows that \(\mathcal{F}\) is negative.

\section*{§ 21.5 Skew-Fields inside Octonions}

As we want to show that \(\mathbb{A}\) is a quaternion division algebra if \(\mathcal{F}\) is positive, we prove that each non-commutative division subring of an octonion division algebra is a quaternion division algebra. Then the claim results from the fact that \(\mathbb{A}\) embeds into \(\mathbb{A}^\infty\).

In §21.6, we will need once again the results of [P] to find a suitable uniformizer for a parametrization. In fact, we can choose a uniformizer \(\pi \in \mathbb{A}^\infty\), thus conjugating elements of \(\mathbb{A}\) by \(\pi\) is equal to applying the standard involution.

\begin{lemma}
Let \(\mathbb{O}\) be an octonion algebra and let \(\mathbb{D}\) be a non-commutative division subring. Then we have

\[
Z(\mathbb{D}) \subseteq Z(\mathbb{O}) =: \mathbb{K}.
\]

\end{lemma}

\begin{proof}
The octonion division algebra \(\mathbb{O}\) quadratic over \(\mathbb{K}\). Then \(\tilde{\mathbb{D}} := (\mathbb{D})_\mathbb{K}\) is non-commutative and quadratic over \(\mathbb{K} \subseteq Z(\mathbb{D})\), thus we have \(\mathbb{K} = Z(\tilde{\mathbb{D}})\) by proposition (3.32) and therefore

\[
Z(\mathbb{D}) \subseteq Z(\tilde{\mathbb{D}}) = \mathbb{K}.
\]

\end{proof}

\begin{lemma}
Let \(\mathbb{D}\) be a skew-field such that \(\dim_{Z(\mathbb{D})} \mathbb{D} < \infty\). Then there is an \(n \in \mathbb{N}^*\) such that

\[
\dim_{Z(\mathbb{D})} \mathbb{D} = n^2.
\]

\end{lemma}

\begin{proof}
This results from the fact that \(\mathbb{D}\) is central simple over \(Z(\mathbb{D})\).

\end{proof}
(21.33) Theorem  Let $\mathbb{O}$ be an octonion division algebra, let $K := Z(\mathbb{O})$ and let $D$ be a non-commutative alternative division subring. Then the following holds:

(a) $D \otimes_{Z(D)} K$ is isomorphic to a division subalgebra of $\mathbb{O}$.
(b) $D$ is a quaternion division algebra or an octonion division algebra.

Proof  The non-commutative division subalgebra $\tilde{D} := \langle D \rangle_K \subseteq \mathbb{O}$ is quadratic over $K \subseteq Z(\tilde{D})$ and therefore a quaternion division algebra or an octonion division algebra by proposition (3.32).

(a) By lemma (21.31), we have $Z(D) \subseteq K$, hence

$$D \otimes_{Z(D)} K$$

is a central simple algebra over $K$. By the universal property, there is an epimorphism

$$\pi : D \otimes_{Z(D)} K \to \tilde{D}$$

which is injective due to simplicity.

(b) Part (a) yields

$$\dim_{Z(D)} D = \dim_{K}(D \otimes_{Z(D)} K) = \dim_{K} \tilde{D} \in \{4, 8\} .$$

In particular, each $Z(D)$-basis of $D$ is a $K$-basis of $\tilde{D}$.

- If $D$ is non-associative, then $D$ is an octonion division algebra and thus $\dim_{Z(D)} D = 8$.
- If $D$ is associative, then we have

$$\dim_{Z(D)} D \in \{4, 8\} \cap \{n^2 \mid n \in \mathbb{N}^*\} = 4$$

by lemma (21.32). Let $x \in D \setminus Z(D)$ and let $\{1_\mathbb{O}, x, y, z\}$ be a $Z(D)$-basis of $D$. Then there are $\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_4 \in Z(D) \subseteq K$ such that

$$x^{-1} = \lambda_1 \cdot 1_\mathbb{O} + \lambda_2 \cdot x + \lambda_3 \cdot y + \lambda_4 \cdot z .$$

Since $\{1_\mathbb{O}, x, y, z\}$ is a $K$-basis of $\tilde{D}$, it follows that

$$\lambda_1 = N(x)^{-1} T(x) , \quad \lambda_2 = -N(x)^{-1} , \quad \lambda_3 = 0_\mathbb{O} = \lambda_4$$

and therefore

$$N(x) = -\lambda_2^{-1} \in Z(D) , \quad T(x) = \lambda_1 \cdot N(x) \in Z(D) .$$

As a consequence, $D$ is quadratic over $Z(D)$ and therefore a quaternion division algebra by proposition (3.32).

\[ \square \]

§ 21.6 Positive Triangles over Skew-Fields

(21.34) Notation  Throughout this paragraph, $\mathbb{A}$ is a skew-field and $\mathcal{F}$ is positive.

(21.35) Remark  By theorem (21.30), $\mathbb{A}^\infty$ is an octonion division algebra.

(21.36) Lemma  The defining field $\mathbb{A}$ is a quaternion division algebra.

Proof  We have $\mathbb{A} \subseteq \mathbb{A}^\infty$ by theorem (21.9), thus the claim results from theorem (21.33).

\[ \square \]

(21.37) Notation  We set $\mathbb{H} := \mathbb{A}$, $\mathbb{O} := \mathbb{A}^\infty$ and $K := Z(\mathbb{O})$.

(21.38) Proposition  There is a uniformizer $\pi \in \mathbb{H}^\times$.
Theorem

As we have $\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{O}$ by remark (21.10), proposition 2 of [P] implies $\nu(\mathbb{K}) = 2\mathbb{Z}$. As a consequence, $\mathcal{O}$ is ramified and the quaternion division algebra $\mathbb{H}' := \langle \mathcal{H} \rangle_{\mathbb{K}}$ is an unramified composition algebra such that $\mathbb{H}' = \mathbb{H}$. Theorem 2 of [P] shows that

$$\mathcal{O} \cong (\mathbb{H}', \pi')$$

for some $\nu_\mathbb{K}$-uniformizer $\pi'$ of $\mathbb{K}$, i.e., we have $\nu(\pi') = 2$. As a consequence, there is an element $\pi \in \mathbb{H}' \subseteq \mathbb{H}$ satisfying $N(\pi) = -\pi'$ and, therefore,

$$\nu(\pi) = \frac{\nu(N(\pi))}{2} = \frac{\nu(-\pi')}{2} = \frac{\nu(\pi')}{2} = 1 .$$

\[ \Box \]

\[ \text{(21.39) Theorem} \] The foundation $\mathcal{F}$ is specially isomorphic to the standard positive foundation

$$\mathcal{P}_3^+(\mathbb{H}) := \{ T(\mathcal{A}_{1,2}^+) := T(\mathcal{A}_{2,3}^+) := T(\mathcal{A}_{3,1}^+) := T(\mathbb{H}), \gamma_1^+ := \gamma_2^+ := \gamma_3^+ := \sigma_s \} .$$

Proof

By proposition (21.38), there is a uniformizer $\pi \in \mathbb{H}'$. Let $(x_1, x_2, x_3)$ be a parametrization for $\mathcal{T}(\mathcal{O})$. Then the maps

$$x_{i,j}^j : \mathbb{H} \to x_1(\mathcal{O}) , \quad t \mapsto x_1(t) \in U_{1,0} ,$$

$$x_{i,j}^j : \mathbb{H} \to x_2(\mathcal{O}) , \quad t \mapsto x_2(t) \in U_{2,0} ,$$

$$x_{i,j}^j : \mathbb{H} \to x_3(\mathcal{O}) , \quad t \mapsto x_3(t) \in U_{3,0}$$

yield a parametrization for the gem $R_0 = R_{1,1}$, cf. remark (21.10). Moreover, the maps

$$x_{j,k}^j : \mathbb{H} \to x_3(\mathcal{O}) , \quad t \mapsto x_3(t) \in U_{3,0} ,$$

$$x_{j,k}^j : \mathbb{H} \to x_{-1}(\mathcal{O}) , \quad t \mapsto x_{-1}(t) \in U_{-1,1} ,$$

$$x_{j,k}^j : \mathbb{H} \to x_{-2}(\mathcal{O}) , \quad t \mapsto x_{-2}(t) \in U_{-1,1}$$

and

$$x_{k,i}^k : \mathbb{H} \to x_{-2}(\mathcal{O}) , \quad t \mapsto x_{-2}(t) \in U_{-2,1} ,$$

$$x_{k,i}^k : \mathbb{H} \to x_{-3}(\mathcal{O}) , \quad t \mapsto x_{-3}(t) \in U_{-3,1} ,$$

$$x_{k,i}^k : \mathbb{H} \to x_{1}(\mathcal{O}) , \quad t \mapsto x_{1}(t) \in U_{1,0}$$

yield parametrizations for two gems $R_{1,2}$ and $R_{2,3}$ at distance one to each other and to $R_{1,1}$, e.g., we have

$$[x_{j,k}^j(s), x_{j,k}^j(t)] = [x_3(s), x_{-2}(t\pi)] = x_{-1}(s(t\pi)) = x_{-1}(t(s)\pi) = x_{-1}(t(s)\pi) = x_{j,k}^j(st)$$

for all $s, t \in \mathbb{H}$. By construction, this parameter system $\Lambda$ parametrizes a root group system $\mathcal{U} := \mathcal{U}(\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{F}, \Sigma, \mathcal{c})$. As we have

$$x_{i,j}^j(t) = x_{i,j}^j(t),$$

$$x_{j,k}^j(t) = x_{j,k}^j(t),$$

$$x_{k,i}^k(t) = x_{k,i}^k(t),$$

it follows that

$$\gamma_{1,1,1} = \gamma_{1,1,1} = \gamma_{1,1,1} = \sigma_s .$$

Therefore, the resulting foundation

$$\tilde{\mathcal{F}} := \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{U}, \Lambda)$$

is $\mathcal{P}_3^+(\mathbb{H})$. Finally $\mathcal{F} \cong \tilde{\mathcal{F}} = \mathcal{P}_3^+(\mathbb{H})$ by theorem (19.10). \[ \Box \]
Part IV Simply Laced Foundations

Chapter 22 Positive Foundations over Skew-Fields

Since each residue of an integrable foundation is itself integrable, a positive foundation is built up of positive triangle foundations. Their uniqueness enables us to show the uniqueness of positive foundations for a given quaternion division algebra $\mathbb{H}$ and a given value of $|I|$.

(22.1) Notation Throughout this chapter, $\mathcal{F}$ is a positive foundation over $I := \{1, \ldots, n\}$. Since each rank 3 residue is a positive triangle, $\mathbb{H} := \mathbb{A}$ is a quaternion division algebra by lemma (21.36). Moreover, $\mathcal{G}_F$ is complete by corollary (19.30).

(22.2) Lemma Let $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}, \hat{\mathcal{F}}$ be isomorphic positive foundations over a skew-field, let $\alpha : \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \to \hat{\mathcal{F}}$ be an isomorphism and let $(i, j, k) \in G(F)$. By lemma (21.27), there are isomorphisms $\phi_i : \hat{\mathbb{A}}_{(i, j)} \to \hat{\mathbb{A}}_{(\pi(i), \pi(j))}$, $\phi_k : \hat{\mathbb{A}}_{(j, k)} \to \hat{\mathbb{A}}_{(\pi(j), \pi(k))}$ of skew-fields and elements $a_i \in \hat{\mathbb{A}}_{(\pi(i), \pi(j))}$ and $a_k \in \hat{\mathbb{A}}_{(\pi(j), \pi(k))}$ such that $\alpha_i^j = \rho_{a_i} \circ \phi_i$, $\alpha_j^k = \lambda_{a_k} \circ \phi_k$.

Then we have $\hat{\gamma} := \hat{\gamma}_{(\pi(i), \pi(j), \pi(k))} = \phi_k \circ \hat{\gamma}_{(i, j, k)} \circ \phi_i^{-1}$.

Proof

By the definition of an isomorphism, we have $\hat{\gamma} = \alpha_j^k \circ \hat{\gamma}_{(i, j, k)} \circ (\alpha_i^j)^{-1} = \lambda_{a_k} \circ \phi_k \circ \hat{\gamma}_{(i, j, k)} \circ \phi_i^{-1} \circ \rho_{a_i}^{-1}$.

As $\hat{\gamma}_{(i, j, k)}$ is positive, it follows that there are elements $a, b \in \hat{\mathbb{A}}_{(\pi(j), \pi(k))}$ such that $\hat{\gamma} = \lambda_a \circ \lambda_b \circ \phi_k \circ \hat{\gamma}_{(i, j, k)} \circ \phi_i^{-1}$. Moreover, we have $ab = \hat{\gamma}(1) = 1$ and therefore $a = b^{-1}$. It finally follows that $\hat{\gamma} = \phi_k \circ \hat{\gamma}_{(i, j, k)} \circ \phi_i^{-1}$.

(22.3) Remark The standard involution $\sigma_s$ satisfies $\sigma_s \circ \phi = \phi \circ \sigma_s$ for all $\phi \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{H})$, cf corollary (28.6).

(22.4) Lemma Let

$\tilde{\mathcal{F}} := (T(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}_{(1, 2)})) := T(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}_{(2, 3)})) := T(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}_{(3, 1)})) := T(\mathbb{H}), \tilde{\gamma}_2 := \tilde{\gamma}_{(1, 2, 3)}, \tilde{\gamma}_3 := \tilde{\gamma}_{(2, 3, 1)}, \tilde{\gamma}_1 := \tilde{\gamma}_{(3, 1, 2)}$

be a positive triangle foundation over $\mathbb{H}$. Then we have

$\tilde{\gamma}_3 \tilde{\gamma}_2 \tilde{\gamma}_1 = \sigma_s$.
Chapter 22 Positive Foundations over Skew-Fields

**Proof**
The reparametrizations
\[
\tilde{\alpha}(1,2) := (H, \tilde{\gamma}_1^{\frac{1}{3}}, \tilde{\gamma}_2^{\frac{1}{3}}, \tilde{\gamma}_3^{\frac{1}{3}}), \quad \tilde{\alpha}(2,3) := (H, \tilde{\gamma}_1^{\frac{1}{3}} \sigma_s, \tilde{\gamma}_2^{\frac{1}{3}} \sigma_s, \tilde{\gamma}_3^{\frac{1}{3}} \sigma_s)
\]
show that \(\tilde{F}\) is isomorphic to the foundation
\[
\hat{F} := \{ T(\hat{A}(1,2)) := T(\hat{A}(2,3)) := T(H), \hat{\gamma}_2 := \hat{\gamma}_3 := \sigma_s, \hat{\gamma}_1 := \tilde{\gamma}_3 \tilde{\gamma}_2 \hat{\gamma}_1 \}.
\]
Since we have \(\hat{F} \cong P_3^+(H)\) by theorem (21.39), there are isomorphisms
\[
\alpha(i,j) = (\lambda_a, \phi(i,j), \lambda_b, \rho(j,i, \phi(i,j)) : T(\hat{A}(i,j)) \to T(\hat{A}(i,j))
\]
satisfying
\[
\tilde{\gamma}_1 = \phi(1,2) \sigma_s \phi(1,1)^{-1}, \quad \sigma_s = \phi(2,3) \sigma_s \phi(2,2)^{-1}, \quad \sigma_s = \phi(3,1) \sigma_s \phi(3,3)^{-1}
\]
by the definition of an isomorphism and lemma (22.2). Now remark (22.3) implies
\[
\phi(1,2) = \phi(2,3) = \phi(3,1) = \sigma_s, \quad \tilde{\gamma}_3 \tilde{\gamma}_2 \hat{\gamma}_1 = \hat{\gamma}_1 = \sigma_s.
\]

**Theorem (22.5)**
The foundation \(F\) is specially isomorphic to \(\tilde{F} := P_n^+(H)\).

**Proof**
Induction on \(n\):

- **\(n = 3\)**: This is theorem (21.39).
- **\(n \to n + 1\)**: By induction assumption, we may assume \(\tilde{F}_{[1,n]} = F_{[1,n]}\), where \(\tilde{F}_{[1,n]}\) and \(F_{[1,n]}\) are the \([1,n]\)-residues of \(\tilde{F}\) and \(F\), respectively. If we reparametrize the rank 2 residues of \(F \setminus F_{[1,n]}\) and \(\tilde{F} \setminus \tilde{F}_{[1,n]}\) in such a way that
\[
\tilde{\gamma}_{(j,j+1,n+1)} = \gamma_{(j,j+1,n+1)} = \text{id} = \gamma_{(n+1,1,2)} = \tilde{\gamma}_{(n+1,1,2)}, \quad j = 1, \ldots, n - 1,
\]
the remaining glueings are uniquely determined by lemma (22.4), thus corresponding glueings are equal.
Chapter 23  Mixed Foundations over Skew-Fields

In order to determine the integrable mixed foundations, we attach a graph to each of them. If this graph is a tree, it turns out that the corresponding foundation is isomorphic to one of the foundations constructed in §20.3. If it is not a tree, then the corresponding foundation is covered by a foundation of §20.3.

(23.1) Notation  Throughout this chapter, \( F \) is a mixed foundation over a skew-field, i.e., there are positive and negative glueings.

(23.2) Remark  Since \( F \) has positive residues, \( H := A \) is a quaternion division algebra by lemma (21.36).

(23.3) Definition  Let \( F \) be a foundation over \( I = V(F) \). Given \( i \in I \), the set of neighbours of \( i \) is
\[
B_1(i) := \{ j \in I | \{ i, j \} \in E(F) \}.
\]

(23.4) Lemma  Let \( \tilde{F} \) be a foundation over \( I = \{1, 2, 3, 4\} \) such that its defining field is a skew-field and such that \( |B_1(1)| = 3 \). Let
\[
\tilde{\Gamma} := \{ \tilde{\gamma}(2,1,3), \tilde{\gamma}(3,1,4), \tilde{\gamma}(2,1,4) \}.
\]
Then we have
\[
n := |\{ \tilde{\gamma} \in \tilde{\Gamma} | \tilde{\gamma} \text{ positive} \}| \in \{1, 3\}.
\]

Proof  Notice that a glueing is either negative or positive.

(i) Suppose that \( \tilde{\gamma}(2,1,3) \) and \( \tilde{\gamma}(3,1,4) \) are negative. Then
\[
\tilde{\gamma}(2,1,4) = \tilde{\gamma}(3,1,4) \circ \text{id}^0 \circ \tilde{\gamma}(2,1,3)
\]
is positive, thus \( n \geq 1 \).

(ii) Suppose that \( \tilde{\gamma}(2,1,3) \) is positive and that \( \tilde{\gamma}(3,1,3) \) is negative. Then
\[
\tilde{\gamma}(2,1,4) = \tilde{\gamma}(3,1,4) \circ \text{id}^0 \circ \tilde{\gamma}(2,1,3)
\]
is negative, thus \( n \neq 2 \).

Notice that there could be more edges than the drawn ones.

(23.5) Notation  Given a mixed foundation \( \tilde{F} \) over \( H \), we denote the collection of all maximal positive residues of \( \tilde{F} \) by \( M(\tilde{F}) \). We set
\[
P(\tilde{F}) := \{ \tilde{G}_P | \tilde{P} \in M(\tilde{F}) \}.
\]

(23.6) Remark  Rank 2 two residues are considered to be positive, thus
\[
\bigcup_{P \in M(F)} G_P = G_F.
\]
(23.7) Theorem  

The set $\mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F})$ satisfies the following conditions:

(i) Each $\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F})$ is integrable, in particular, $\mathcal{G}_\mathcal{P}$ is complete.

(ii) We have

$$\bigcup_{\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F})} \mathcal{G}_\mathcal{P} = \mathcal{G}_\mathcal{F}.$$ 

(iii) Given $\mathcal{P}_1 \neq \mathcal{P}_2 \in \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F})$, we have $|V(\mathcal{P}_1) \cap V(\mathcal{P}_2)| \leq 1$.

(iv) Given $i \in I$, we have $|\{\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F}) \mid i \in V(\mathcal{P})\}| \leq 2$.

Proof

(i) Each $\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F})$ is integrable because $\mathcal{F}$ itself is integrable.

(ii) This holds by remark (23.6).

(iii) Since the elements of $\mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F})$ are maximal and $G_\mathcal{P}$ is complete for each $\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F})$, lemma (23.4) implies that

$$\forall \mathcal{P}_1 \neq \mathcal{P}_2 \in \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F}) : |V(\mathcal{P}_1) \cap V(\mathcal{P}_2)| \leq 1.$$ 

Otherwise $\mathcal{P}_1 \cup \mathcal{P}_2$ would be positive with $\mathcal{P}_1 \not\subseteq \mathcal{P}_1 \cup \mathcal{P}_2$.

(iv) By step (ii), the gluing connecting two elements $\mathcal{P}_1 \neq \mathcal{P}_2 \in \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F})$ are necessarily negative. From lemma (23.4) again it follows that

$$\forall i \in I : |\{\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F}) \mid i \in V(\mathcal{P})\}| \leq 2.$$ 

(23.8) Proposition  

Let $\mathcal{F}$ be a mixed foundation over $\mathbb{H}$ such that $\mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F})$ satisfies the conditions (i)-(iv) of theorem (23.7). If the graph $\mathcal{G} := \mathcal{G}_\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{F})$ is a tree, we have $\mathcal{F} \cong \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{G}, \mathbb{H}) =: \mathcal{F}$. In particular, $\mathcal{F}$ is integrable.

Proof

First of all we observe that $\mathcal{F}$ is well-defined the conditions (i)-(iv). By construction, we have $P(\mathcal{F}) = P(\mathcal{F})$, and by theorem (22.5), we have

$$\mathcal{F} \cong P_{\mathcal{P}}^+(\mathcal{F}) =: \mathcal{F} \in \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F})$$

for each $\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F})$. Since the isomorphisms are special, we may assume $\mathcal{P} = \mathcal{P}$ for each $\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F})$. It remains to adjust the gluing connecting two elements of $\mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F})$. Since $\mathcal{G}$ is a tree and

$$|\{\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F}) \mid i \in V(\mathcal{P})\}| \leq 2$$

for each vertex $i \in I$, it suffices to show the following:

Given $\mathcal{P}_1, \mathcal{P}_2 \in \mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F})$ with $\{\mathcal{G}_{\mathcal{P}_1}, \mathcal{G}_{\mathcal{P}_2}\} \in E(\mathcal{G})$, there is an isomorphism $\alpha : \mathcal{P}_1 \cup \mathcal{P}_2 \rightarrow \mathcal{P}_1 \cup \mathcal{P}_2$ fixing $\mathcal{P}_1$.

Let $V(\mathcal{P}_1) \cap V(\mathcal{P}_2) = \{b\}$, let $a \in V(\mathcal{P}_1) \setminus \{b\}$, let $c \in V(\mathcal{P}_2) \setminus \{b\}$ and let $\gamma := \gamma(a,b,c) \circ \gamma^{-1}(a,b,c)$. Then

$$\alpha := \{id_{\mathcal{F}}, id_{\mathcal{F}} \mid (i,j) \in A(\mathcal{P}_1 \cup \mathcal{P}_2)\}$$

with

$$\forall (i,j) \in A(\mathcal{P}_1) : \alpha_{i,j} := (id, id, id), \quad \forall (i,j) \in A(\mathcal{P}_2) : \alpha_{i,j} = (\gamma, \gamma, \gamma)$$

satisfies the required condition.

Finally $\mathcal{F}$ is integrable by corollary (19.20) and theorem (20.17).
Part IV Simply Laced Foundations

(23.9) Example

(i) ![Diagram](image1)

(ii) ![Diagram](image2)

(iii) ![Diagram](image3)

(iv) ![Diagram](image4)

The red triangles represent the elements of $\mathcal{M}(\tilde{\mathcal{F}})$, the blue glueings represent the corresponding glueings of $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$, while the black ones represent those of $\hat{\mathcal{F}}$.

(23.10) Corollary If $\mathcal{G} := \mathcal{G}_F^P(\mathcal{F})$ is a tree, then we have

$$\mathcal{F} \cong \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{G}, \mathcal{H}).$$

Proof

This results immediately from theorem (23.7) and proposition (23.8).

(23.11) Theorem Let $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$ be a mixed foundation over $\mathbb{H}$ such that $\mathcal{M}(\tilde{\mathcal{F}})$ satisfies the conditions (i)-(iv) of theorem (23.7). Then $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$ is integrable.

Proof

Let $\mathcal{U}$ be the the universal cover of $\mathcal{G}_F^P(\tilde{\mathcal{F}})$ and let $\hat{\mathcal{F}}$ be the cover corresponding to the induced cover of $\mathcal{G}_{\tilde{\mathcal{F}}}$. By theorem (20.4), $\hat{\mathcal{F}}$ is integrable if $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$ is integrable. But $\mathcal{M}(\hat{\mathcal{F}})$ equally satisfies the conditions (i)-(iii) of proposition (23.8) and, moreover,

$$\mathcal{G}_F^P(\hat{\mathcal{F}}) \cong \mathcal{U}$$

is a tree. Therefore, $\hat{\mathcal{F}}$ is integrable by proposition (23.8).

(23.12) Example

$$\hat{\mathcal{F}}$$

$\xrightarrow{\sim}$

$$\hat{\mathcal{F}}$$

$\hat{\mathcal{F}}$
Chapter 24 Negative Foundations

Negative foundations are quite easy to handle as we may apply theorems (20.4) and (20.7). If \( A \) is a field, there are no restrictions; each foundation is integrable. If \( A \) is non-commutative, then lemma (24.2) is very restrictive; the structure of an integrable foundation is very simple.

(24.1) Notation Throughout this chapter, \( F \) is a negative foundation over a skew-field.

(24.2) Lemma If \( F \) has a residue \( R \) of type \( D_4 \), then \( A \) is a field. In particular, \( F \) is negative.

Proof We label the vertices of \( R \) such that \( \{1, 2\}, \{1, 3\}, \{1, 4\} \in E(R) \). By lemma (19.29), each glueing is negative, and by lemma (23.4), at least one is positive.

(24.3) Theorem If \( A \) is a non-commutative skew-field, then \( G_F \) is a string, a ray, a chain or a circle.

Proof By lemma (24.2), \( G_F \) has no branches.

(24.4) Theorem Let \( \tilde{F} \) be a negative foundation. Then the following holds:

(a) If \( \tilde{A} \) is a field, then \( \tilde{F} \) is integrable.

(b) If \( \tilde{A} \) is a non-commutative skew-field and \( G_F \) is a string, a ray, a chain or a circle, then \( \tilde{F} \) is integrable.

Proof By theorem (20.4), \( \tilde{F} \) is integrable if its universal cover \( U \) is integrable. But since \( G_U \) is a tree, \( U \) is isomorphic to the corresponding canonical foundation by lemma (20.6), which is integrable by theorem (20.7).
Chapter 25  Conclusion

(25.1) Theorem (Classification of Simply Laced Twin Buildings)  Let $\mathcal{F}$ be an irr. simply laced foundation. Then $\mathcal{F}$ is integrable if and only if one of the following holds:

- The defining field is an octonion division algebra $\mathbb{O}$, and $\mathcal{F}$ is isomorphic to one of the following foundations:

  $$\mathcal{A}_2(\mathbb{O}): \quad \mathcal{\tilde{A}}_2(\mathbb{O}):$$

  $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{O})$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{O})$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{O})$

- The defining field is a quaternion division algebra $\mathbb{H}$, and $\mathcal{M}(\mathcal{F})$ satisfies the conditions (i)-(iv) of theorem (23.7).

- The defining field is a non-commutative skew-field $\mathbb{D}$ different from a quaternion algebra, and $\mathcal{F}$ is isomorphic to one of the following foundations (where $\gamma_1, \ldots, \gamma_{n+1} \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{D})$):

  $$\mathcal{A}_n(\mathbb{D}):$$

  $1$ $2$ $n-1$ $n$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{D})$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{D})$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{D})$

  $$\mathcal{A}'_\infty(\mathbb{D}):$$

  $-1$ $0$ $1$ $2$ $3$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{D})$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{D})$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{D})$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{D})$

  $$\mathcal{A}_\infty(\mathbb{D}):$$

  $-1$ $0$ $1$ $2$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{D})$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{D})$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{D})$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{D})$

  $$\mathcal{\tilde{A}}_n(\mathbb{D}, \gamma_i):$$

  $n+1$ $n$ $n-1$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{D})$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{D})$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{D})$ $\mathcal{T}(\mathbb{D})$

- The defining field is a field, and there are no further restrictions on the foundation $\mathcal{F}$. 
Proof
This results from theorems (21.25), (23.7), (23.11), (24.3) and (24.4).

(25.2) Remark
(a) Given a non-commutative skew-field $D$, we have
\[ A_\infty(D) \cong A_\infty(D) \iff D \cong D'. \]

(b) The theorem can be stated in a more precise way by using classifying invariants. For example, given a skew-field $D$, the foundation $\tilde{A}_n(D, \gamma_1, \ldots, \gamma_{n+1})$ only depends on the coset
\[ \left( \prod_{i=1}^{n+1} \gamma_i \right) \cdot \text{Inn}(D) \in \text{Aut}(D)/\text{Inn}(D). \]

(c) Each integrable mixed foundation over a quaternion division algebra $\mathbb{H}$ arises in the following way: Start with some integrable positive foundations, then add some negative chains or strings of arbitrary length with the rule that each vertex of a positive foundation is part of at most one negative chain or string, e.g.,

(i)

(ii)
Part V

Jordan Automorphisms of Alternative Division Rings
In this part, we determine the structure of the group \( \text{Aut}_J(\mathbb{A}) \) of Jordan automorphisms for an alternative division ring \( \mathbb{A} \). If \( \mathbb{A} \) is a skew-field, we know the answer by Hua’s theorem. Since a non-associative alternative division ring is an octonion division algebra by the Bruck-Kleinfeld theorem (3.33), it remains to consider the octonion case. It turns out that we just have to add a certain class of Jordan automorphisms, each of them fixing a quaternion subalgebra.

One basic tool is the possibility to extend isomorphisms between subalgebras to an automorphism of the whole algebra, see [Sp] for a detailed reference. Moreover, the crucial thing is the fact that nothing can go wrong with Jordan homomorphisms on fields, i.e., they are just monomorphisms of rings. This is not true for skew-fields, cf. §132.

Chapter 26 Composition Algebras and Norm Similarities

The theorems of this chapter provide the existence of automorphisms which we will need in §28.3.

(26.1) Definition A composition algebra over a field \( K \) is a unital algebra \( \mathbb{A} \) over \( K \) together with a non-defective quadratic form \( N : \mathbb{A} \rightarrow K \) which permits composition, i.e., we have

\[
\forall x, y \in \mathbb{A} : \quad N(xy) = N(x)N(y).
\]

(26.2) Lemma An octonion division algebra \( \mathbb{O} \) is a composition algebra over \( K := Z(\mathbb{O}) \).

**Proof**
The norm \( N \) is non-defective by corollary (3.24) and multiplicative by (9.9)(iii) of [TW]. \( \square \)

(26.3) Definition For \( i = 1, 2 \), let \( V_i \) be a vector space over \( K_i \) with non-defective quadratic form \( N_i \), and let \( \sigma : K_1 \rightarrow K_2 \) be an isomorphism of fields.

- A \( \sigma \)-similarity is an isomorphism \( (\varphi, \sigma) : (V_1, K_1) \rightarrow (V_2, K_2) \) of vector spaces such that
  \[
  \forall v \in V_1 : \quad N_2(\varphi(v)) = \rho_{\varphi} \cdot \sigma(N_1(v))
  \]
  for some element \( \rho_{\varphi} \in K_2^* \), which is the multiplier of \( \varphi \).
- A similarity is a \( \sigma \)-similarity such that \( K_2 = K_1 \) and \( \sigma = \text{id}_{K_1} \).
- A \( \sigma \)-isometry is a \( \sigma \)-similarity such that \( \rho_{\varphi} = 1_{K_2} \).
- An isometry is a \( \sigma \)-isometry such that \( K_2 = K_1 \) and \( \sigma = \text{id}_{K_1} \).

(26.4) Lemma For \( i = 1, 2 \), let \( V_i \) be a vector space over \( K_i \) with non-defective quadratic form \( N_i \) and associated bilinear form \( \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_i \), and let \( \varphi : V_1 \rightarrow V_2 \) be a \( \sigma \)-similarity. Then \( \varphi \) satisfies

\[
\forall x, y \in V_1 : \quad \langle \varphi(x), \varphi(y) \rangle_2 = \rho_{\varphi} \cdot \sigma_{\varphi}(\langle x, y \rangle_1).
\]

In particular, we have \( \varphi(M^\perp) = \varphi(M)^\perp \) for each subset \( M \subseteq V_1 \).

**Proof**
Given \( x \in M \) and \( y \in M^\perp \), we have

\[
\langle \varphi(x), \varphi(y) \rangle_2 = N_2(\varphi(x) + \varphi(y)) - N_2(\varphi(x)) - N_2(\varphi(y))
\]
\[
= \rho_{\varphi} \cdot \sigma_{\varphi}(N_1(x + y) - N_1(x) - N_1(y)) = \rho_{\varphi} \cdot \sigma_{\varphi}(\langle x, y \rangle_1) = 0_{K_2}.
\]

\( \square \)

(26.5) Notation Let \( V \) be a vector space over \( K \) with non-defective quadratic form \( N \). We denote the group of \( \sigma \)-isometries of \( V \) by

\[
\Gamma L_N(V, K) := \{ (\varphi, \sigma) \in \Gamma L(V) \mid \forall v \in V : \quad N(\varphi(v)) = \sigma(N(v)) \}.
\]
(26.6) Theorem Let $A$ be a composition algebra over $K$ and let $\sigma \in \text{Aut}(K)$. Then there exists a $\sigma$-automorphism $\phi \in \text{Aut}(A, K)$ if and only if there exists a $\sigma$-isometry $\varphi \in \Gamma L_N(A, K)$.

Proof
This is corollary (1.7.2) of [S].

(26.7) Theorem Let $A$ be a composition algebra over $K$, let $\sigma \in \text{Aut}(K)$ and let $B_1, B_2$ be subalgebras of the same dimension. If there exists a $\sigma$-isometry $\varphi \in \Gamma L_N(A, K)$, then each $\sigma$-isomorphism $\psi : B_1 \to B_2$ of algebras can be extended to a $\sigma$-automorphism $\psi \in \text{Aut}_G(A, K)$. In particular, each linear isomorphism $\psi : B_1 \to B_2$ of algebras can be extended to a linear automorphism $\psi \in \text{Aut}_G(A, K)$.

Proof
This is corollary (1.7.3) of [Sp].

Chapter 27 Jordan Homomorphisms

At this point we recall the definition of Jordan homomorphisms which play a central role in the classification of simply laced twin buildings. As the classification involves some detailed calculations concerning Jordan homomorphisms, it is natural to use this knowledge for a generalization of Hua’s theorem to octonions.

§ 27.1 Basic Definitions and Basic Properties

(27.1) Definition

- Let $A, \tilde{A}$ be alternative division rings. A Jordan homomorphism is an additive monomorphism $\gamma : A \to \tilde{A}$ such that
  $$\gamma(1_A) = 1_{\tilde{A}}, \quad \forall x, y \in A : \gamma(xy) = \gamma(x)\gamma(y)\gamma(x).$$

- Given an alternative division ring $A$, we denote the group of Jordan automorphisms of $A$ by
  $\text{Aut}_J(A) := \{\gamma : A \to A \mid \gamma \text{ Jordan automorphism}\}.$

(27.2) Lemma Let $A, \tilde{A}$ be alternative division rings. A Jordan homomorphism $\gamma : A \to \tilde{A}$ satisfies
  $$\forall x, y \in A : \gamma(xy) + \gamma(yx) = \gamma(x)\gamma(y) + \gamma(y)\gamma(x).$$

Proof
The assertion is clearly true for $x = 0_A$ or $y = 0_A$, so assume $x \neq 0_A \neq y$. As we have
  $$\gamma(z^2) = \gamma(z \cdot 1_A \cdot z) = \gamma(z)\gamma(1_A)\gamma(z) = \gamma(z) \cdot 1_{\tilde{A}} \cdot \gamma(z) = \gamma(z)^2$$
for each $z \in A$, it follows that
  $$\gamma((x + y)^2) = \gamma(x^2 + xy + yx + y^2) = \gamma(x)^2 + \gamma(xy) + \gamma(yx) + \gamma(y)^2,$$
  $$\gamma((x + y)^2) = \gamma(x + y)^2 = (\gamma(x) + \gamma(y))^2 = \gamma(x)^2 + \gamma(x)\gamma(y) + \gamma(y)\gamma(x) + \gamma(y)^2$$
and thus
  $$\gamma(xy) + \gamma(yx) = \gamma(x)\gamma(y) + \gamma(y)\gamma(x).$$
(27.3) Lemma Let $A, \tilde{A}$ be alternative division rings. A Jordan homomorphism $\gamma : A \rightarrow \tilde{A}$ satisfies
\[
\forall x \in A^\ast : \quad \gamma(x^{-1}) = \gamma(x)^{-1}.
\]

Proof
Given $x \in A^\ast$, we have
\[
\gamma(x^{-1}) = \gamma(x^{-1}xx^{-1}) = \gamma(x^{-1})\gamma(x)\gamma(x^{-1})
\]
and thus $\gamma(x^{-1}) = \gamma(x)^{-1}$ by lemma (3.6).

§ 27.2 Jordan Homomorphisms on Fields

A Jordan homomorphism from a field $F$ to an alternative division ring $A$ is a monomorphism of rings. In particular, the image of $A$ is a subfield of $\tilde{A}$.

(27.4) Lemma Let $F$ be a field, let $A$ be an alternative division ring and let $\gamma : F \rightarrow A$ be a Jordan homomorphism. Then $\gamma : F \rightarrow \gamma(F)$ is an isomorphism of fields.

Proof
By Hua’s theorem, we may assume that $A$ is an octonion division algebra. By lemma (27.2), we have
\[
2\gamma(xy) = \gamma(x)\gamma(y) + \gamma(y)\gamma(x)
\]
for all $x, y \in F$.

- Char $F \neq 2$: Given $x, y \in F^\ast$, we have
\[
\gamma(xy)\gamma(x^{-1}y^{-1}) = \gamma(xy)(xy^{-1}) = \gamma(xy)\gamma(xy)^{-1} = 1_A
\]
and thus by equation (27.1) and lemma (3.25) (a)
\[
4 = 2\gamma(xy)2\gamma(x^{-1}y^{-1}) = [\gamma(x)\gamma(y) + \gamma(y)\gamma(x)][\gamma(x^{-1})\gamma(y^{-1}) + \gamma(y^{-1})\gamma(x^{-1})]
\]
\[
= \gamma(x)\gamma(y)\gamma(x)^{-1}\gamma(y)^{-1} + 1_A + 1_A + \gamma(y)\gamma(x)\gamma(y)^{-1}\gamma(x)^{-1}.
\]
We set $z := \gamma(x)\gamma(y)\gamma(x)^{-1}\gamma(y)^{-1}$ and obtain
\[
2 = z + z^{-1}, \quad (z - 1_A)^2 = z^2 - 2z + 1_A = 0_A
\]
and therefore
\[
\gamma(x)\gamma(y)\gamma(x)^{-1}\gamma(y)^{-1} = z = 1_A, \quad \gamma(x)\gamma(y) = \gamma(y)\gamma(x).
\]
From equation (27.1) it follows that $\gamma(xy) = \gamma(x)\gamma(y)$.

- Char $F = 2$: In this case, equation (27.1) implies
\[
\gamma(x)\gamma(y) = \gamma(y)\gamma(x)
\]
for all $x, y \in F$. As a consequence,
\[
\tilde{F} := \langle \gamma(F) \rangle_{Z(A)}
\]
is a commutative subalgebra of $A$, hence a field. Since $\gamma : F \rightarrow \tilde{F}$ is a Jordan homomorphism, Hua’s theorem implies that $\gamma : F \rightarrow \gamma(F)$ is an iso- or anti-isomorphism of skew-fields, and thus, in fact, an isomorphism of fields.
Chapter 28  Jordan Automorphisms

In this chapter, we determine the structure of $\text{Aut}_J(A)$ for an alternative division ring $A$. If $A$ is a skew-field, then Hua’s theorem gives the answer:

(28.1) Theorem  Let $A$ be skew-field. Then we have

$$\text{Aut}_J(A) = \text{Aut}(A) \cup \text{Aut}_o(A).$$

Thus it remains to consider the Jordan automorphisms of an octonion division algebra $\mathcal{O}$.

(28.2) Notation  Throughout the rest of this chapter, $\mathcal{O}$ is an octonion division algebra and $K := Z(\mathcal{O})$ is its center.

§ 28.1  Jordan Automorphisms on Subfields

As a consequence of the last paragraph, a Jordan automorphism restricted to a subfield is a monomorphism of rings. In particular, the image of a subfield is again a subfield. This is not true for skew-subfields. Otherwise, a Jordan automorphism would be, in fact, an auto- or anti-automorphism by the proof of Hua’s theorem. But there are indeed Jordan automorphism neither of the first nor of the second kind, cf. lemma (28.13) and remark (28.12).

(28.3) Lemma  Let $\gamma \in \text{Aut}_J(\mathcal{O})$ and let $F$ be a subfield of $\mathcal{O}$. Then $\gamma|_F : F \to \gamma(F)$ is an isomorphism of fields.

Proof  This results from Lemma (27.4).

(28.4) Corollary  An element $\gamma \in \text{Aut}_J(\mathcal{O})$ satisfies

$$\gamma(\lambda) \cdot \gamma(x) = \gamma(x) \cdot \gamma(\lambda)$$

for all $\lambda \in K$, $x \in \mathcal{O}$.

Proof  Since each element $x \in \mathcal{O}$ is contained in a subfield $F$ of $\mathcal{O}$ with $K \subseteq F$ by (20.9) of [TW], we may apply lemma (28.3) to obtain

$$\gamma(\lambda) \cdot \gamma(x) = \gamma(\lambda \cdot x) = \gamma(x \cdot \lambda) = \gamma(x) \cdot \gamma(\lambda)$$

for all $\lambda \in K$, $x \in \mathcal{O}$.

§ 28.2  Jordan Automorphisms and Norm Similarities

The results of §28.1 enable us to show that Jordan automorphisms are norm similarities. As a consequence, we may apply the results of chapter 26. Moreover, the results of [J] show the reverse inclusion for $\text{Char}(\mathcal{O}) \neq 2$.

(28.5) Proposition  Let $\gamma \in \text{Aut}_J(\mathcal{O})$ and $\sigma := \gamma|_K$. Then the following holds:

(a) $\sigma \in \text{Aut}(K)$.
(b) $(\gamma, \sigma) \in \mathcal{IL}(\mathcal{O}, K)$.
(c) $(\gamma, \sigma) \in \mathcal{IL}_N(\mathcal{O}, K)$.
Proof
(a) By corollary (28.4) and lemma (3.28), we have $\gamma(\mathbb{K}) = \mathbb{K}$ and therefore $\sigma \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{K})$ by lemma (27.4).

(b) This is a consequence of (a) and corollary (28.4).

(c) By (a), the assertion is true for $x \in \mathbb{K}$. Given $x \in \mathbb{O} \setminus \mathbb{K}$, we have

$$x^2 - T(x)x + N(x) = 0, \quad \gamma(x)^2 - T(\gamma(x))\gamma(x) + N(\gamma(x)) = 0,$$

and hence

$$0 = \gamma^{-1}(\gamma(x)^2 - T(\gamma(x))\gamma(x) + N(\gamma(x))) = \gamma^{-1}(x^2 - \gamma^{-1}(T(\gamma(x)))x + \gamma^{-1}(N(\gamma(x))))$$

$$= x^2 - \gamma^{-1}(T(\gamma(x)))x + \gamma^{-1}(N(\gamma(x))).$$

As the maps $T$ and $N$ are uniquely determined by the minimum equation, we obtain

$$\gamma^{-1}(N(\gamma(x))) = N(x), \quad N(\gamma(x)) = \gamma(N(x)) = \sigma(N(x))$$

for all $x \in \mathbb{O} \setminus \mathbb{K}$.

\[
(28.6) \text{ Corollary } \quad \sigma_s \in Z(\text{Aut}_J(\mathbb{O})).
\]

Proof
Given $\gamma \in \text{Aut}_J(\mathbb{O})$ and $x \in \mathbb{O}$, we have

$$\gamma_s(x) = \gamma(x) = \gamma(N(x) \cdot x^{-1}) = \sigma(N(x)) \cdot \gamma(x^{-1}) = N(\gamma(x)) \cdot \gamma(x)^{-1} = \gamma(x) = \sigma_s \gamma(x).$$

\[
(28.7) \text{ Remark } \quad \text{The results of [J] are valid for Jordan algebras with characteristic different from 2, cf. definition (1.3) of [J].}
\]

(28.8) Lemma \quad If $\text{Char} \mathbb{O} \neq 2$, the Jordan algebra $\mathbb{O}$ is separable

Proof
By corollary (3.24), the bilinear form $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ and thus the trace form

$$\bar{T} : \mathbb{O} \times \mathbb{O} \rightarrow \mathbb{K}, \quad (x, y) \mapsto T(xy) = xy + \bar{y}x = \langle x, y \rangle$$

is non-degenerate. Now the assertion results from theorem (6.5) of [J].

\[
(28.9) \text{ Proposition } \quad \text{If } \text{Char} \mathbb{O} \neq 2, \text{ we have } \quad \mathbb{O}(\mathbb{O}, \mathbb{K}) = GL_N(\mathbb{O}, \mathbb{K}) \subseteq \text{Aut}_J(\mathbb{O}).
\]

Proof
Let $\varphi = (\varphi, \text{id}_\mathbb{K}) \in GL_N(\mathbb{O}, \mathbb{K})$. As we have $\varphi(1_\mathbb{O}) = \varphi(1_\mathbb{O} \cdot 1_\mathbb{O}) = 1_\mathbb{O} \cdot \varphi(1_\mathbb{O})$, the isometry $\varphi$ satisfies $\varphi(1_\mathbb{O}) = 1_\mathbb{O}$, and because of $|\mathbb{K}| > 2 = \deg \mathbb{O}$, the assertion results from lemma (28.8) and theorem (6.7)(a) of [J].

\[
(28.10) \text{ Theorem } \quad \text{If } \text{Char} \mathbb{O} \neq 2, \text{ we have } \quad \Gamma L_N(\mathbb{O}, \mathbb{K}) = \text{Aut}_J(\mathbb{O}).
\]
"⊆" Let \((\phi, \sigma) \in \Gamma L_N(O, K)\). By theorem (26.6), there is a \(\sigma\)-automorphism \((\phi, \sigma) \in \text{Aut}(O, K)\).

By proposition (28.9), we have

\[
(\phi^{-1}, \sigma^{-1}) \cdot (\phi, \sigma) \in GL_N(O, K) \subseteq \text{Aut}_J(O)
\]

and thus

\[
(\phi, \sigma) \in (\phi, \sigma) \cdot \text{Aut}_J(O) = \text{Aut}_J(O) .
\]

"⊇" This is proposition (28.5) (c).

\[\boxcheck\]

\section*{28.3 The Structure of \(\text{Aut}_J(O)\)}

Now we are ready to tackle the main problem which we split up into three steps. First of all we construct a subgroup \(\Gamma \leq \text{Aut}_J(O)\). The second step shows that we may suppose \(\gamma \in \text{Aut}_J(O)\) to fix a quaternion subalgebra pointwise. Then we finally prove that \(\gamma\) is the product of elements of the given group \(\Gamma\).

\begin{itemize}
  \item Given a quaternion subalgebra \(H\), \(e \in H^\perp\) and \(w, p \in H\), we set

\[
\psi_{(H, e, w)} : O \to O, \ x + e \cdot y \mapsto x + e \cdot w^{-1}yw,
\]

\[
\phi_{(H, e, w, p)} : O \to O, \ x + e \cdot y \mapsto w^{-1}xw + e \cdot w^{-1}ywp .
\]

\item We set

\[
\Psi := \{\psi_{(H, e, w)} \mid H \text{ a quaternion subalgebra, } e \in H^\perp, w \in H\} ,
\]

\[
\Phi := \{\phi_{(H, e, w, p)} \mid H \text{ a quaternion subalgebra, } e \in H^\perp, w, p \in H, N(p) = 1_K\} .
\]

\item We set

\[
\Gamma := \{\psi\phi \mid \psi \in \Psi, \phi \in \text{Aut}(O)\} .
\]
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{Remark} By remark (20.29) of [TW], a map \(\psi \in \Psi\) is neither an auto- nor an anti-automorphism.
  \item \textbf{Lemma} We have

\[
\Psi \cup \Phi \subseteq \Gamma \leq \text{Aut}_J(O) .
\]

\begin{proof}
This results from lemma (21.20) and lemma (21.19).
\end{proof}

\item \textbf{Lemma} Let \(A\) be a subalgebra of \(O\) such that \(A^\perp \not\subseteq A\) and let \(e \in A^\perp \setminus A\). Then we have

\[
(e \cdot x)(e \cdot y)(e \cdot x) = -N(e)e \cdot xyx
\]

for all \(x, y \in A\).

\begin{proof}
This results from lemma (3.26) (c).
\end{proof}
\end{itemize}
(28.15) **Remark**  The following lemma is helpful since we know that Jordan homomorphisms on subfields are in fact isomorphisms between subfields and that Jordan automorphisms of skew-fields are iso- or anti-isomorphisms.

(28.16) **Lemma**  Let \( A \) be a subalgebra of \( O \) such that \( A^+ \nsubseteq A \), let \( e \in A^+ \setminus A \) and let \( \gamma \in \text{Aut}_J(O) \cap GL_N(O, K) \) such that \( \gamma(e) = e \). Then the map \( \tilde{\gamma} : A \to O \) defined by

\[
\gamma(e \cdot x) = e \cdot \tilde{\gamma}(x)
\]

is a linear Jordan homomorphism.

**Proof**  Notice that we have

\[
\forall x \in A : \quad (e, \tilde{\gamma}(a)) = (e, -N(e)^{-1}e \cdot \gamma(e \cdot a)) = -(1_K, \gamma(e \cdot a)) = 0_K
\]

by lemma (3.26) and lemma (26.4), hence \( e \in \tilde{\gamma}(A^+) \setminus \tilde{\gamma}(A) \).

- We have \( e \cdot \tilde{\gamma}(1_O) = \gamma(e \cdot 1_O) = \gamma(e) = e \cdot 1_O \).
- Given \( \lambda \in K \), \( x \in A \), we have \( e \cdot \tilde{\gamma}(\lambda x) = \gamma(e \cdot \lambda x) = \lambda \gamma(e \cdot x) = \lambda \tilde{\gamma}(x) \).
- Given \( x, y \in A \), we have \( e \cdot \tilde{\gamma}(x + y) = \gamma(e \cdot (x + y)) = \gamma(e \cdot x) + \gamma(e \cdot y) = e \cdot (\tilde{\gamma}(x) + \tilde{\gamma}(y)) \).
- Given \( x, y \in A \), we have

\[
e \cdot \tilde{\gamma}(xy) = \gamma(e \cdot xy) = -N(e)^{-1} \cdot \gamma((e \cdot x)(e \cdot y)) = -N(e)^{-1} \cdot (e \cdot \tilde{\gamma}(x))(e \cdot \tilde{\gamma}(y))(e \cdot \tilde{\gamma}(x)) = e \cdot \tilde{\gamma}(x) \tilde{\gamma}(y) \tilde{\gamma}(x)
\]

by lemma (28.14). We set \( x := 1_O \) to obtain

\[
\tilde{\gamma}(y) = \overline{\tilde{\gamma}(y)}
\]

for each \( y \in A \) and thus

\[
\tilde{\gamma}(xy) = \tilde{\gamma}(x) \tilde{\gamma}(y) \tilde{\gamma}(x)
\]

for all \( x, y \in A \).

\( \square \)

(28.17) **Definition**  Let \( e_1, e_2 \in O^* \) such that \( \lambda := N(e_1) \neq 0_K, \mu := N(e_2) \neq 0_K \). Then \( (e_1, e_2) \) is a special \((\lambda, \mu)\)-pair if

- we have \( \langle e_1, 1_O \rangle = \langle e_2, 1_O \rangle = \langle e_1, e_2 \rangle = 0_K \)
  for \( \text{Char} O \neq 2 \);
- we have \( \langle e_1, 1_O \rangle = 1_K \), \( \langle e_2, 1_O \rangle = \langle e_1, e_2 \rangle = 0_K \)
  for \( \text{Char} O = 2 \).

(28.18) **Remark**  We will need special \((\lambda, \mu)\)-pairs to extend isomorphisms between quaternion subalgebras to the whole octonion division algebra.
(28.19) **Lemma**  
Let \((e_1, e_2)\) be a special \((\lambda, \mu)\)-pair and \(E := \langle 1_\mathcal{O}, e_1 \rangle_{\mathbb{K}}\). Then we have
\[
\bar{e}_1 \neq e_1, \quad e_2 \in E^\perp \setminus E.
\]

**Proof**  
- **Char \(\mathcal{O} \neq 2\):** We have
  \[
eq 1_\mathcal{O} = 0_{\mathbb{K}}, \quad \bar{e}_1 = -e_1 \neq e_1.
\]
  Let \(x = s + te_1 \in E^*\). If \(s \neq 0_{\mathbb{K}}\), we have
  \[
  \langle x, 1_\mathcal{O} \rangle = \langle s + te_1, 1_\mathcal{O} \rangle = s \cdot \langle e_1, e_1 \rangle = 2s \cdot N(e_1) \neq 0_{\mathbb{K}}
  \]
  and thus \(x \notin E^\perp\). If \(s = 0_{\mathbb{K}}\) (and thus \(t \neq 0_{\mathbb{K}}\)), we have
  \[
  \langle x, e_1 \rangle = \langle te_1, e_1 \rangle = t \cdot \langle e_1, e_1 \rangle = 2t \cdot N(e_1) \neq 0_{\mathbb{K}}
  \]
  and thus \(x \notin E^\perp\).

- **Char \(\mathcal{O} = 2\):** We have
  \[
eq 1_\mathcal{O} = 1_{\mathbb{K}}, \quad \bar{e}_1 = e_1 + 1_{\mathbb{K}} \neq e_1.
\]
  Let \(x = s + te_1 \in E^*\). If \(t \neq 0_{\mathbb{K}}\), we have
  \[
  \langle x, 1_\mathcal{O} \rangle = \langle s + te_1, 1_\mathcal{O} \rangle = s \cdot \langle 1_\mathcal{O}, 1_\mathcal{O} \rangle + t \cdot \langle e_1, 1_\mathcal{O} \rangle = 2s \cdot N(1_\mathcal{O}) + t = t \neq 0_{\mathbb{K}}
  \]
  and thus \(x \notin E^\perp\). If \(t = 0_{\mathbb{K}}\) (and thus \(s \neq 0_{\mathbb{K}}\)), we have
  \[
  \langle e_1, x \rangle = \langle e_1, s \rangle = s \cdot \langle e_1, 1_\mathcal{O} \rangle = s \neq 0_{\mathbb{K}}
  \]
  and thus \(x \notin E^\perp\).

\(\square\)

(28.20) **Remark**  
The following lemma allows us to choose a suitable \(\mathbb{K}\)-basis for a quaternion division algebra containing two elements \(x, y \in \mathcal{O}\).

(28.21) **Lemma**  
Let \(x \in \mathcal{O} \setminus \mathbb{K}\), let \(E := \langle 1_\mathcal{O}, x \rangle_{\mathbb{K}}\) and let \(y \in \mathcal{O} \setminus E\). Then
\[
\{1_\mathcal{O}, x, y, xy\}
\]
is linearly independent over \(\mathbb{K}\).

**Proof**  
Notice that \(E\) is a field. Let \(a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{K}\) such that
\[
a \cdot 1_\mathcal{O} + b \cdot x + c \cdot y + d \cdot xy = 0_\mathcal{O}.
\]
Then we have
\[
(c \cdot 1_\mathcal{O} + d \cdot x) \cdot y = -a \cdot 1_\mathcal{O} - b \cdot x.
\]

- **\(c \cdot 1_\mathcal{O} + d \cdot x \neq 0_\mathcal{O}\):** In this case, we have
  \[
y = (c \cdot 1_\mathcal{O} + d \cdot x)^{-1} \cdot (-a \cdot 1_\mathcal{O} - b \cdot x) \in E.
\]

- **\(c \cdot 1_\mathcal{O} + d \cdot x = 0_\mathcal{O}\):** In this case, we have
  \[
c \cdot 1_\mathcal{O} + d \cdot x = 0_\mathcal{O} = a \cdot 1_\mathcal{O} + b \cdot x, \quad c = d = 0_{\mathbb{K}} = a = b.
\]

\(\square\)

(28.22) **Proposition**  
Given an element \(\gamma \in \text{Aut}_J(\mathcal{O})\), there is an element \(\tilde{\gamma} \in \langle \sigma_s, \Gamma \rangle\) such that \(\tilde{\gamma}\gamma\) fixes a quaternion subalgebra \(\mathbb{H}\) pointwise.
Proof

(i) Let \( \sigma := \gamma_K \in \text{Aut}(K) \). Then \( \gamma \) is a \( \sigma \)-isometry by proposition (28.5) (c), thus \( \gamma^{-1} \) is a \( \sigma^{-1} \)-isometry. By theorem (26.6), there is a \( \sigma^{-1} \)-automorphism \( \tilde{\gamma} \in \text{Aut}(O, K) \). As a consequence, we have \( \gamma \gamma \in \text{Aut}_f(O) \cap GL_N(O, K) \).

(ii) By lemma (3.23), there is an element \( e_1 \in O \) such that \( e_1 \neq 1 \). Let \( E := \langle 1, e_1 \rangle_K \) and \( e_2 \in E^+ \setminus E \). By lemma (3.25) (b), \( e_1 \) and \( e_2 \) are contained in a quaternion subalgebra \( \mathbb{H} \) which contains a \((\lambda, \mu)\)-special pair \((\tilde{e}_1, \tilde{e}_2)\) by definition (1.7.4) of [Sp]. Thus we may assume that \((e_1, e_2)\) is \((\lambda, \mu)\)-special by lemma (28.19).

(iii) As we may suppose \( \gamma \) to be an isometry by (i), the pairs \((e_1, e_2)\) and \((\gamma(e_1), \gamma(e_2))\) are \((\lambda, \mu)\)-special. By corollary (1.7.5) of [Sp], there is a linear automorphism \( \tilde{\gamma} \in \text{Aut}_K(O, K) \) extending
\[
\gamma(e_1) \mapsto e_1, \quad \gamma(e_2) \mapsto e_2.
\]
As a consequence, \( \gamma := \tilde{\gamma} \gamma \) fixes \((E, e_2)K\) pointwise.

(iv) By lemma (28.16), the map \( \tilde{\gamma} : E \to \tilde{\gamma}(E) \) defined by
\[
\gamma(e_2 \cdot x) = e_2 \cdot \tilde{\gamma}(x)
\]
is a linear Jordan isomorphism and thus an isomorphism of fields by lemma (27.4).

(v) If \( \tilde{\gamma}(E) = E \), we have
\[
(\gamma(E + e_2 \cdot E) = E + e_2 \cdot E =: H)
\]
In this case, \( \gamma|_H \) is an auto- or anti-automorphism by Hua’s theorem.

- If \( \gamma|_H \) is an automorphism, we have
\[
\gamma(e_2 \cdot e_1) = \gamma(e_2) \cdot \gamma(e_1) = e_2 \cdot e_1,
\]
and \( \gamma|_H = \text{id}_H \).

- If \( \gamma|_H \) is an anti-automorphism, then \( \phi := \sigma_s \gamma|_H \) is a linear automorphism. By theorem (26.7), we may extend \( \phi \) to a linear automorphism \( \tilde{\phi} \in \text{Aut}_K(O, K) \). Then
\[
\tilde{\phi}^{-1} \sigma_s \gamma
\]
fixes \( H \) pointwise.

Thus we may assume \( \tilde{\gamma}(e_1) \notin E \).

(vi) By lemma (3.25) (b), \( e_1 \) and \( \tilde{\gamma}(e_1) \) are contained in a quaternion subalgebra \( \mathbb{H} \), and by (v) and lemma (28.21), we have
\[
\mathbb{H} = \langle 1, e_1, \tilde{\gamma}(e_1), e_1 \tilde{\gamma}(e_1) \rangle_K
\]
thus we may extend \( \tilde{\gamma} : E \to \tilde{\gamma}(E) \) to a linear automorphism \( \phi \in \text{Aut}_K(\mathbb{H}, K) \) by theorem (26.7). By the Skolem-Noether theorem, there is an element \( w \in \mathbb{H} \) such that
\[
\phi = \gamma w.
\]

(vii) We have \( e_2 \cdot E \subseteq E^+ \) and therefore
\[
\langle e_2, 1_O \rangle = \langle e_2, e_1 \rangle = 0_K
\]
Moreover, we have
\[
e_2 \cdot \phi(E) = \gamma(e_2 \cdot E) \subseteq \gamma(E^+) = \gamma(E)^+ = E^+
\]
by corollary (26.4) and therefore
\[
\langle e_2, e_1 \phi(e_1) \rangle = \langle e_2 \phi(e_1)^{-1} \phi(e_1), e_1 \phi(e_1) \rangle = \langle e_2 \phi(e_1)^{-1}, e_1 \rangle \cdot N(\phi(e_1)) = 0_K
\]
\[
\langle e_2, \phi(e_1) \rangle = \langle e_2, -N(e_2) e_2 \cdot e_2 \phi(e_1) \rangle = -N(e_2)^{-1} N(e_2) \cdot \langle 1_O, e_2 \phi(e_1) \rangle = 0_K,
\]
hence \( e_2 \in \mathbb{H}^+ \), and \( \gamma(\tilde{\gamma}_w^{-1} \gamma) \) fixes \( H := E + e_2 \cdot E \) pointwise, cf. notation (28.11).
(28.23) **Proposition**  Let $\gamma \in \text{Aut}_J(O)$ be a Jordan automorphism fixing a quaternion subalgebra $H$ pointwise. Then we have $\gamma \in \langle \sigma_s, \Gamma \rangle$.

**Proof**

Let $e \in H^\perp \setminus H$.

(i) As we have

$$\gamma(e \cdot H) = \gamma(H^\perp) = H^\perp = e \cdot H,$$

by corollary (26.4), we may define a map $\tilde{\gamma} : H \to H$ via

$$\gamma(e \cdot x) = e \cdot \tilde{\gamma}(x).$$

(ii) We have

$$N(e) = N(\gamma(e \cdot 1_O)) = N(e \cdot \tilde{\gamma}(1_O)) = N(\gamma(1_O))$$

and thus $N(\gamma(1_O)) = 1_K$. Therefore, the map

$$\phi(\gamma, e, 1_O, \gamma(1_O)^{-1}) \gamma$$

fixes $(H, e)_K$ pointwise.

(iii) By lemma (28.16), the map $\tilde{\gamma}$ is a linear Jordan automorphism and thus an auto- or an anti-automorphism by Hua’s theorem.

(iv) • $\tilde{\gamma}$ is an automorphism: As $\tilde{\gamma}$ is linear, the Skolem-Noether theorem yields an element $w \in H$ such that $\tilde{\gamma} = \gamma_w$, hence

$$\gamma = \gamma(H, e, w) \in \Gamma.$$  

• $\tilde{\gamma}$ is an anti-automorphism: Then there is an element $w \in H$ such that

$$\gamma(x + e \cdot y) = x + e \cdot w^{-1} \tilde{\gamma}w$$

for all $x, y \in H$, hence

$$\gamma_e \gamma(x + e \cdot y) = e^{-1}xe + w^{-1} \tilde{\gamma}w \cdot e = \tilde{x} + e \cdot w^{-1}yw$$

for all $x, y \in H$ and therefore

$$\sigma_s \phi(\gamma, e, 1_O, -1) \gamma_e \gamma = \gamma(H, e, w) \in \Gamma, \gamma \in (\sigma_s, \Gamma).$$

\[\square\]

§ 28.4 Conclusion

(28.24) **Theorem (Jordan Automorphisms of Octonion Division Algebras)**  Given an octonion division algebra $O$, we have

$$\text{Aut}_J(O) = \langle \sigma_s, \Gamma \rangle \cong \langle \sigma_s \rangle \times \Gamma.$$ 

**Proof**

The first equality results from proposition (28.22) and proposition (28.23), the second assertion from corollary (28.6). \[\square\]
Part VI

Moufang Sets
Chapter 29 Basic Definitions

(29.1) Definition A Moufang set is a pair \( M = (X, \{ U_x \}_{x \in X}) \) consisting of a set \( X \) with \( |X| \geq 3 \) and a set of root groups \( \{ U_x \}_{x \in X} \) satisfying the following conditions:

(M1) For each \( x \in X \), the group \( U_x \leq \text{Sym}(X) \) fixes \( x \) and acts regularly on \( X \setminus \{x\} \).

(M2) For each \( x \in X \) and for each \( \varphi \in \langle U_y \mid y \in X \rangle \), we have \( U_x^{\varphi} = U_{\varphi(x)} \).

(29.2) Remark Let \( (U, +) \) be a not necessarily commutative group, let \( X := U \cup \{\infty\} \) be the disjoint union of \( U \) and \( \{\infty\} \) and let \( \tau \in \text{Sym}(X) \) be a permutation interchanging 0 and \( \infty \), which means that we have \( \tau|_{U} \in \text{Sym}(U^*) \). By theorem 2 of [DW], the pair \( (U, \tau) \) gives rise to a Moufang set \( M(U, \tau) \) if and only if we have \( h_a \in \text{Aut}(U) \) for each \( a \in U^* \), where \( h_a \) is the \textit{Hua map with respect to} \( a \) as in definition 2 of [DW], more precisely, we consider \( h_a \) to be the restriction to \( U \) of that map given there. Conversely, each Moufang set \( M \) arises in such a way, cf page 5 of [DW], or lemma 1.3.4 of [DS] for a more precise statement.

As both the descriptions are equivalent, we consider a Moufang set to be a pair \( M = (U, \tau) \) consisting of a not necessarily commutative group \( U = (U, +) \) and an element \( \tau \in \text{Sym}(U^*) \) such that \( h_a \in \text{Aut}(U) \) for each \( a \in U^* \).

(29.3) Definition

- A Moufang set \( M = (U, \tau) \) is \textit{commutative} if the group \( U \) is commutative.
- A Moufang set \( M = (U, \tau) \) is \textit{unital} if there is an element \( 1_M \in U^* \) such that \( h_{1_M} = \text{id}_U \).

(29.4) Remark If a Moufang set is unital, the element \( 1_M \) is not necessarily uniquely determined by the defining property. However, we will distinguish a canonical element for the examples we mainly deal with, cf. the next paragraph.

(29.5) Definition Let \( \tilde{M} = (U, \tilde{\tau}) \) be Moufang sets.

- An \textit{isomorphism} \( \varphi : M \to \tilde{M} \) is an isomorphism of groups \( \varphi : U \to \tilde{U} \) such that
  \[ \forall x \in U : \quad \varphi(\tau(x)) = \tilde{\tau}(\varphi(x)) . \]

- An \textit{automorphism} of \( M \) is an isomorphism \( \varphi : M \to M \).

- A \textit{Jordan isomorphism} \( \gamma : M \to \tilde{M} \) is an isomorphism of groups \( \gamma : U \to \tilde{U} \) such that
  \[ \forall x \in U, \ a \in U^* : \quad \gamma(h_a(x)) = \tilde{h}_{\gamma(a)}(\gamma(x)) , \]
  and, moreover, such that \( \gamma(1_M) = 1_{\tilde{M}} \) if \( M \) and \( \tilde{M} \) both are unital.

- A \textit{Jordan automorphism} of \( M \) is a Jordan isomorphism \( \gamma : M \to M \).

(29.6) Remark The list in the following chapter is not complete, we only list those Moufang sets appearing in triangles and quadrangles since we only classify foundations involving polygons of this type. Moreover, we exclude the non-commutative Moufang sets appearing in quadrangles of type \( E_n \).
Chapter 30  Examples

(30.1) Example (Moufang Sets of Linear Type)  Given an alternative division ring $A$, the corresponding Moufang set of linear type is

$$M(A) := (\mathbb{A}, \tau), \quad \tau : \mathbb{A}^* \to \mathbb{A}^*, \quad x \mapsto -x^{-1}.$$ 

Given $a \in \mathbb{A}^*$, the Hua map with respect to $a$ is

$$h_a : \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{A}, \quad x \mapsto axa.$$ 

As a consequence, $M(A)$ is unital with $1_M = 1_A$.

(30.2) Example (Moufang Sets of Involutory Type)  Given an involutory set $(K, K_0, \sigma)$, the corresponding Moufang set of involutory type is

$$M(K, K_0, \sigma) := (K_0, \tau), \quad \tau : K_0^* \to K_0^*, \quad x \mapsto -x^{-1}.$$ 

Given $a \in K_0^*$, the Hua map with respect to $a$ is

$$h_a : K_0 \to K_0, \quad x \mapsto axa.$$ 

As a consequence, $M(K, K_0, \sigma)$ is unital with $1_M = 1_K \in K_0$.

(30.3) Example (Moufang Sets of Indifferent Type)  Given an indifferent set $(K, K_0, L_0)$, the corresponding Moufang set of indifferent type is

$$M(K, K_0, L_0) := (K_0, \tau), \quad \tau : K_0^* \to K_0^*, \quad x \mapsto -x^{-1}.$$ 

Given $a \in K_0^*$, the Hua map with respect to $a$ is

$$h_a : K_0 \to K_0, \quad x \mapsto axa.$$ 

As a consequence, $M(K, K_0, L_0)$ is unital with $1_M = 1_K \in K_0$.

(30.4) Example (Moufang Sets of Quadratic Form Type)  Given a quadratic space $(L_0, K, q)$ with basepoint $\epsilon$, the corresponding Moufang set of quadratic form type with basepoint $\epsilon$ is

$$M(L_0, K, q) := (L_0, \tau), \quad \tau : L_0^* \to L_0^*, \quad a \mapsto -a^\sigma \cdot q(a)^{-1}.$$ 

Given $a \in L_0^*$, the Hua map with respect to $a$ is

$$h_a : L_0 \to L_0, \quad v \mapsto \pi_a \pi_e(v) \cdot q(a).$$ 

As a consequence, $M(L_0, K, q)$ is unital with $1_M = \epsilon$.

(30.5) Example (Moufang Sets of Pseudo-Quadratic Form Type)  Let $\Xi = (K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)$ be a pseudo-quadratic space and let $T = T(\Xi)$ be the group as in definition (7.5) and corollary (7.9). The corresponding Moufang set of pseudo-quadratic form type is

$$M(\Xi) := (T, \tau), \quad \tau : T^* \to T^*, \quad (a, t) \mapsto (at^{-1}, -t^{-1}).$$ 

Given $(a, t) \in T^*$, the Hua map with respect to $(a, t)$ is

$$h_{(a,t)} : T \to T, \quad (b, v) \mapsto (bt^\sigma - at^{-1}f(a, b)t^\sigma, tvt^\sigma).$$ 

As a consequence, $M(\Xi)$ is unital with $1_M = (0, 1_K)$. 

- 144 -
Chapter 31 The Isomorphism Problem for Moufang Sets

Since the glueings appearing in a foundation are in fact Jordan isomorphisms, it is natural to solve the isomorphism problem for the appearing Moufang sets before we tackle the classification of foundations.

As mentioned, we consider Jordan isomorphisms, not isomorphisms of Moufang sets in the proper sense, which are a subset of the Jordan isomorphisms. It would be interesting in which cases both the definitions coincide, which should be correct in almost all the cases.

First of all we give an overview of the results, some of them already proved in the previous parts, then we give the missing proofs.

§ 31.1 Results

(31.1) Definition Let $O$ be an octonion division algebra.

- Given a quaternion subalgebra $H$, $e \in H^\perp$ and $w, p \in H$, we set
  $$\psi(H, e, w) : O \to O, \quad x + e \cdot y \mapsto x + e \cdot w^{-1}yw.$$  
- We set
  $$\Psi := \{\psi(H, e, w) \mid H \text{ a quaternion subalgebra, } e \in H^\perp, w \in H\}.$$  
and $\Gamma := \{\psi \phi \mid \psi \in \Psi, \phi \in \text{Aut}(O)\}$, which is a subgroup of $\text{Aut}_J(O)$ by lemma (21.19).

(31.2) Theorem (Moufang Sets of Linear Type) Let $M := M(A), \tilde{M} := M(\tilde{A})$ be Moufang sets of linear type. A map $\gamma : M \to \tilde{M}$ is a Jordan isomorphism such that $\gamma(1_M) = 1_{\tilde{M}}$ if and only if one of the following holds:

(i) The alternative division rings $A$ and $\tilde{A}$ are skew-fields and $\gamma$ is an iso- or anti-isomorphism of skew-fields.

(ii) The alternative division rings $A$ and $\tilde{A}$ are isomorphic octonion division algebras and we have
  $$\phi^{-1}\gamma \in (\sigma_s, \Gamma) \cong (\sigma_s) \times \Gamma,$$
where $\phi : A \to \tilde{A}$ is an isomorphism of alternative rings, $\sigma_s$ is the standard involution of $A$ and $\Gamma$ is the group defined in (31.1).

Proof

$\Rightarrow$ If $A$ is a skew-field, then (i) holds by Hua’s theorem. If $A$ (and thus $\tilde{A}$) is an octonion division algebra, we may adapt proposition (28.5) to obtain that $\gamma : A \to \tilde{A}$ is a $\sigma$-isometry. By theorem (1.7.1) of [Sp], there is a $\sigma$-isomorphism $\phi : A \to \tilde{A}$, hence $\phi^{-1}\gamma \in \text{Aut}_J(A)$, and we may apply theorem (28.24).

$\Leftarrow$ Notice that definition (3.8) and definition (27.1) include the condition $\gamma(1_A) = 1_{\tilde{A}}$. □

(31.3) Theorem (Moufang Sets of Involutory Type) Let $(K, K_0, \sigma)$ be a proper involutory set, let $(K, K_0, \tilde{\sigma})$ be an involutory set and let $M := M(K, K_0, \sigma), \tilde{M} := M(\tilde{K}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})$ be the corresponding Moufang sets of involutory type. A map $\gamma : M \to \tilde{M}$ is a Jordan isomorphism such that $\gamma(1_M) = 1_{\tilde{M}}$ if and only if there is an isomorphism $\phi : (K, K_0, \sigma) \to (\tilde{K}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})$ of involutory sets such that $\gamma = \phi|_{K_0}$.

Proof

This is theorem (5.3). Notice that the proof is not complete yet. □
(31.4) Definition  \( \) Let \((A, F, \sigma)\) be quadratic of type (iv) and suppose that \( \dim A L_0 = 2 \). By \([D]\), there are exactly three pseudo-quadratic spaces

\[(A, F, \sigma, L_0, q) = (A_1, F, \sigma, L_0, q_1) = \Xi_1, (A_2, F, \sigma, L_0, q_2) = \Xi_2, (A_3, F, \sigma, L_0, q_3) = \Xi_3\]

with pairwise non-isomorphic quaternion division algebras \(A_1, A_2, A_3\) which define the group \( T \). When we switch between the parametrizing pseudo-quadratic spaces, we indicate this by the map

\[
\mathrm{id}_T^\gamma : T \to T, \quad (a, t) \mapsto (a, t),
\]

i.e., after applying \( \mathrm{id}_T^\gamma \), we consider \( T \) to be defined by \( \Xi_i \).

(31.5) Theorem (Moufang Sets of Pseudo-Quadratic Form Type)  \( \) Let \( \Xi \) and \( \tilde{\Xi} \) be proper pseudo-quadratic spaces and let \( M := M(\Xi), \tilde{M} := M(\tilde{\Xi}) \) be the corresponding Moufang sets of pseudo-quadratic form type. A map \( \gamma : M \to \tilde{M} \) is a Jordan isomorphism such that \( \gamma(1_M) = 1_{\tilde{M}} \) if and only if one of the following holds:

(i) There is an isomorphism \( \Phi : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi} \) of pseudo-quadratic spaces that induces \( \gamma \).

(ii) The involutory sets \((K, K_0, \sigma)\) and \((\tilde{K}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})\) both are quadratic of type (iv), we have

\[\dim K L_0 = 2 = \dim \tilde{K} \tilde{L}_0\]

and there are an \( i \in \{2, 3\} \) and an isomorphism \( \Phi : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi}_i \) of pseudo-quadratic spaces such that \( \gamma \) is induced by \( (\mathrm{id}_{\tilde{K}_i})^{-1} \circ \Phi \), where \( \mathrm{id}_{\tilde{K}_i} \) and \( \tilde{\Xi}_i := \Xi_1, \Xi_2, \Xi_3 \) are as in definition (31.4).

(iii) The involutory sets \((K, K_0, \sigma)\) and \((\tilde{K}, \tilde{K}_0, \tilde{\sigma})\) both are quadratic of type (iv), we have \( \dim K L_0 = 1, \dim \tilde{K} \tilde{L}_0 = 2 \) and \( \gamma \) can be described by

\[
\forall x = s + et \in K, \quad u \in K_0: \quad \gamma(ax, x^\sigma(q(a)x + u)) = (\bar{a}\phi(s) + \bar{b}\phi(t))^{\tilde{\sigma}}, \phi(\hat{N}(x)q(a) + u)\]

where \( a \in L_0 \) is arbitrary, \( \phi : L_0 \to K \) is an isomorphism of fields, \( e \in L_0^+, \bar{a} \in \tilde{L}_0 \) and \( \bar{b} \in \tilde{a}^+ \).

(iv) We have \( K \subseteq F_4 \cong \tilde{K} \), \( \dim K L_0 = 1 \) and there are an isomorphism \( \Phi : \Xi \to \tilde{\Xi} \) of pseudo-quadratic spaces and a non-trivial inner automorphism \( \tilde{\gamma} \in \text{Aut}(T) \) such that \( \gamma \) is induced by \( \tilde{\gamma} \circ \Phi \).

Proof
This is theorem (17.1). Notice that definition (7.16) includes the condition \( \gamma(0, 1_K) = (0, 1_{\tilde{K}}) \). \( \square \)

(31.6) Theorem (Moufang Sets of Quadratic Form Type)  \( \) Let \( \Xi \) be a quadratic space with basepoint \( \epsilon \), let \( \tilde{\Xi} \) be a proper quadratic space with basepoint \( \tilde{\epsilon} \) and let \( M := M(\Xi), \tilde{M} := M(\tilde{\Xi}) \) be the corresponding Moufang sets of quadratic form type. A map \( \gamma : M \to \tilde{M} \) is a Jordan isomorphism such that \( \gamma(1_M) = 1_{\tilde{M}} \) if and only if one of the following holds:

(i) We have \( \dim \tilde{L}_0 \geq 3 \) and there is an isomorphism \( \phi : K \to \tilde{K} \) of fields such that the map

\[
(\gamma, \phi) : (L_0, K, q) \to (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q})
\]

is an isomorphism of quadratic spaces. In particular, we have \( \dim L = \dim \tilde{L}_0 \).

(ii) We have \( \dim \tilde{L}_0 \leq 2 \), the map

\[
\phi : K \to \tilde{K} := \gamma((\epsilon)_K) \subseteq \tilde{K} := \mathbb{F}(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q}), \quad s \mapsto \gamma(\epsilon \cdot s)
\]

is an isomorphism of fields, the field \( \tilde{K} \) is quadratic over \( K \), and the map

\[
(\gamma, \phi) : (L_0, K, q) \to (\tilde{F}, \tilde{K}, N^\beta_{\tilde{K}})
\]

is an isomorphism of quadratic spaces. This is true even if \( \tilde{\Xi} \) is non-proper.
Chapter 31 The Isomorphism Problem for Moufang Sets

\( \textbf{Proof} \)
This is theorem (31.41).

(31.7) \( \textbf{Theorem (Moufang Sets of Quadratic Form and Linear Type)} \)
Let \( M := M(L_0, K, q) \) be a Moufang set of quadratic form type with basepoint \( e \) and let \( \tilde{M} := M(\tilde{A}) \) be a Moufang set of linear type. A map \( \gamma : \tilde{M} \to M \) is a Jordan isomorphism such that \( \gamma(1_{\tilde{M}}) = 1_M \) if and only if the map

\[
\phi : K \to \tilde{K} := \gamma(e)K \subseteq \tilde{A}, \ s \mapsto \gamma(e \cdot s)
\]

is an isomorphism of fields, \( \tilde{A} \) is quadratic over \( \tilde{K} \), and \( \gamma(1_{\tilde{M}}) = 1_M \). In particular, the corresponding Hua maps coincide.

\( \textbf{Proof} \)
This is theorem (31.24).

(31.8) \( \textbf{Theorem (Moufang Sets of Indifferent and Linear Type)} \)
Let \( M := M(K, K_0, L_0) \) be a Moufang set of indifferent type and let \( \tilde{M} := M(\tilde{A}) \) be a Moufang set of linear type. A map \( \gamma : \tilde{M} \to M \) is a Jordan isomorphism such that \( \gamma(1_{\tilde{M}}) = 1_M \) if and only if \( K_0 = K \), \( \tilde{A} \) is a field and the map \( \gamma : \tilde{A} \to K_0 \) is an isomorphism of fields. In particular, the indifferent set \( (K, K_0, L_0) \) is non-proper if we have \( M \cong \tilde{M} \).

\( \textbf{Proof} \)
This is theorem (31.26).

(31.9) \( \textbf{Theorem (Moufang Sets of Involutary and Linear Type)} \)
Let \( \tilde{M} := M(\tilde{A}) \) be a Moufang set of linear type and let \( M := M(K, K_0, \sigma) \) be a Moufang set of involutory type. A map \( \gamma : \tilde{M} \to M \) is a Jordan isomorphism such that \( \gamma(1_{\tilde{M}}) = 1_M \) if and only if \( (K, K_0, \sigma) \) is of quadratic type, \( \tilde{A} \) and \( K_0 \) are fields and the map \( \gamma : \tilde{A} \to K_0 \) is an isomorphism of fields. In particular, the involutory set \( (K, K_0, \sigma) \) is non-proper if we have \( M \cong \tilde{M} \).

\( \textbf{Proof} \)
This is theorem (31.26).

(31.10) \( \textbf{Remark} \)
Most of the following proofs or different versions can also be found in [K]. Notice, however, that some of them only give the idea for the proof so that we had to work out some details, especially in the following paragraph.

\( \textbf{§ 31.2} \quad M(L_0, K, q) \cong \tilde{M}(\tilde{A}) \)

If a Moufang set \( M(L_0, K, q) \) of quadratic form type with basepoint \( e \) is isomorphic to a Moufang set \( \tilde{M}(\tilde{A}) \) of linear type, then \( \tilde{A} \) is quadratic over the field \( \tilde{K} := \gamma(e) \tilde{K} \) and \( \gamma \) is induced by an isomorphism \( \gamma, \phi : (L_0, K, q) \to (\tilde{A}, \tilde{K}, N^\tilde{K}_{\tilde{K}}) \) of quadratic spaces.

(31.11) \( \textbf{Lemma} \)
Given a quadratic space \( (L_0, K, q) \) such that \( \dim K L_0 \leq 2 \), we have

\[
M := M(L_0, K, q) = M(L_0, K, q) =: \tilde{M}.
\]

In particular, the corresponding Hua maps coincide.

\( \textbf{Proof} \)
We have

\[
\forall x \in L_0 : \quad \tau(x) = -x^\sigma \cdot q(x)^{-1} = -x^\sigma * e \cdot q(x)^{-1} = -x^\sigma * N^\tilde{K}_{\tilde{K}}(x)^{-1} = -x^{-1} = \tilde{\tau}(x) \cdot
\]

\( \Box \)
(31.12) Notation Until proposition (31.20), \( M := \mathbb{M}(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q) \) is a Moufang set of quadratic form type with basepoint \( \epsilon \), \( \hat{M} := \mathbb{M}(\hat{A}) \) is a Moufang set of linear type and \( \gamma : \hat{M} \to \hat{M} \) is a Jordan isomorphism such that \( \gamma(1_M) = 1_{\hat{M}} \).

(31.13) Lemma The map
\[
\phi : \mathbb{K} \to \hat{\mathbb{K}} := \gamma(\langle \epsilon \rangle_\mathbb{K}) \subseteq \hat{A}, \quad s \mapsto \gamma(\epsilon \cdot s)
\]
is an isomorphism of fields.

**Proof**
By lemma (4.7), we have
\[
\forall s, t \in \mathbb{K} : \quad \phi(sts) = \gamma(\epsilon \cdot sts) = \gamma(h_{\epsilon,s}(\epsilon \cdot t)) = \tilde{h}_{\gamma(\epsilon,s)}(\gamma(\epsilon \cdot t)) = \phi(s)\phi(t)\phi(s).
\]
As a consequence, \( \phi : \mathbb{K} \to \hat{\mathbb{K}} \) is a Jordan homomorphism, hence \( \phi : \mathbb{K} \to \phi(\mathbb{K}) = \gamma(\langle \epsilon \rangle_\mathbb{K}) \) is an isomorphism of fields by lemma (27.4).

(31.14) Notation Given \( x \in L_0 \setminus \langle \epsilon \rangle_\mathbb{K} \), we set \( R_x := \langle \epsilon, x \rangle_\mathbb{K} \).

(31.15) Remark Given \( x \in L_0 \setminus \langle \epsilon \rangle_\mathbb{K} \), the triple \( (R_x, \mathbb{K}, q) \) is a quadratic space such that \( \dim_{\mathbb{K}} R_x = 2 \).

(31.16) Notation Given \( x \in L_0 \setminus \langle \epsilon \rangle_\mathbb{K} \), we set \( \mathbb{F}_x := \mathbb{F}(R_x, \mathbb{K}, q) \).

(31.17) Lemma Given \( x \in L_0 \setminus \langle \epsilon \rangle_\mathbb{K} \), the map
\[
\gamma_{\mathbb{F}_x} : \mathbb{F}_x \to \gamma(\mathbb{F}_x) \subseteq \hat{A}, \quad y \mapsto \gamma(y)
\]
is an isomorphism of fields.

**Proof**
By lemma (31.11), the Hua maps of \( M(R_x, \mathbb{K}, q) \) and \( \mathbb{M}(\mathbb{F}_x) \) coincide, hence \( \gamma_{\mathbb{F}_x} : \mathbb{F}_x \to \hat{\mathbb{K}} \) is a Jordan homomorphism so that we may apply lemma (27.4).

(31.18) Proposition Let \( x \in L_0 \). Then the following holds:
(a) We have
\[
\forall s \in \mathbb{K} : \quad \gamma(s) = \gamma(x) \cdot \phi(s).
\]
In particular, the map \( (\gamma, \phi) : (L_0, \mathbb{K}) \to (\hat{A}, \hat{\mathbb{K}}) \) is an isomorphism of vector spaces.

(b) We have
\[
\forall s \in \mathbb{K} : \quad \gamma(s) = \phi(s) \cdot \gamma(x).
\]
In particular, we have \( \hat{\mathbb{K}} \subseteq Z(\hat{A}) \).

**Proof**
If \( x \in \langle \epsilon \rangle_\mathbb{K} \), the assertions result from lemma (31.13), so assume \( x \in L_0 \setminus \langle \epsilon \rangle_\mathbb{K} \).

(a) Given \( s \in \mathbb{K} \), we have
\[
\gamma(s) = \gamma(x \cdot (\epsilon \cdot s)) = \gamma(x) \cdot \gamma(\epsilon \cdot s) = \gamma(x) \cdot \phi(s).
\]

(b) Given \( s \in \mathbb{K} \), we have
\[
\gamma(s) = \gamma(x \cdot s) = \gamma((\epsilon \cdot s) \cdot x) = \gamma(\epsilon \cdot s) \cdot \gamma(x) = \phi(s) \cdot \gamma(x).
\]
(31.19) Lemma \hspace{5pt} Given \( x \in L_0 \), we have
\[
h_x(\epsilon) - x \cdot T(x) + \epsilon \cdot q(x) = 0_{L_0}.
\]

Proof
Let \( x \in L_0 \). By remark (4.9) (b), we have
\[
h_x(\epsilon) - x \cdot T(x) + \epsilon \cdot q(x) = x \cdot f_q(x, \bar{\epsilon}) - \bar{\epsilon} \cdot q(x) - x \cdot T(x) + \epsilon \cdot q(x)
= x \cdot T(x) - x \cdot T(x) - \epsilon \cdot q(x) + \epsilon \cdot q(x) = 0_{L_0}.
\]

(31.20) Proposition \hspace{5pt} Given \( x \in L_0^* \), we have
\[
\gamma(x)^2 - \gamma(x) \cdot \phi(T(x)) + \phi(q(x)) = 0_{\tilde{K}}.
\]
In particular, the alternative division ring \( \tilde{A} \) is quadratic over \( \tilde{K} \) with norm \( \tilde{N} := N_{\tilde{K}}^{\tilde{K}} \), satisfying
\[
\tilde{N} \circ \gamma = \phi \circ q.
\]

Proof
Given \( x \in L_0^* \), we have
\[
0_{\tilde{K}} = \gamma(0_{L_0}) = \gamma(h_x(\epsilon) - x \cdot T(x) + \epsilon \cdot q(x)) = \gamma(h_x(\epsilon)) - \gamma(x \cdot T(x)) + \gamma(\epsilon \cdot q(x))
= \tilde{h}_\gamma(x) \gamma(x) - \gamma(x) \cdot \phi(T(x)) + \phi(q(x)) = \gamma(x)^2 - \gamma(x) \cdot \phi(T(x)) + \phi(q(x))
\]
by lemma (31.19) and proposition (31.18) (a), which shows that \( \tilde{A} \) is quadratic over \( \tilde{K} \). Given \( x \in L_0 \setminus \langle \epsilon \rangle_K \), we have \( \gamma(x) \in \tilde{A} \setminus \tilde{K} \) and thus
\[
\tilde{N} (\gamma(x)) = \phi(q(x))
\]
since the minimum equation is unique. Finally, given \( s \in K \), we have
\[
\tilde{N} (\gamma(\epsilon s)) = \tilde{N} (\phi(s)) = \phi(s)^2 = \phi(q(\epsilon s))
\]
by lemma (31.13). \( \square \)

(31.21) Theorem \hspace{5pt} Let \( M := M(L_0, K, q) \) be a Moufang set of quadratic form type with basepoint \( \epsilon \) and let \( \tilde{M} := M(\tilde{A}) \) be a Moufang set of linear type. A map \( \gamma : M \to \tilde{M} \) is a Jordan isomorphism such that \( \gamma(1_M) = 1_{\tilde{M}} \) if and only if the map
\[
\phi : K \to \tilde{K} := \gamma(\langle \epsilon \rangle_K) \subseteq \tilde{A}, \ s \mapsto \gamma(\epsilon s)
\]
is an isomorphism of fields, \( \tilde{A} \) is quadratic over \( \tilde{K} \) with norm \( \tilde{N} := N_{\tilde{K}}^{\tilde{K}} \) and the map
\[
(\gamma, \phi) : (L_0, K, q) \to (\tilde{A}, \tilde{K}, \tilde{N})
\]
is an isomorphism of quadratic spaces.

Proof
\( \Rightarrow \) By lemma (31.13), the map \( \phi : K \to \tilde{K} \) is an isomorphism of fields. By proposition (31.20) and proposition (31.18) (a), \( \tilde{A} \) is quadratic over \( \tilde{K} \), and the map \( (\gamma, \phi) : (L_0, K, q) \to (\tilde{A}, \tilde{K}, \tilde{N}) \) is an isomorphism of quadratic spaces.
“⇐” We have $\gamma(1_M) = \gamma(1) = \phi(1) = 1_{\tilde{A}} = 1_{M}$. By lemma (4.2), we have
\[
\gamma(h_a(x)) = \gamma(a \cdot f_q(a, x^q) - x^q \cdot q(a)) = \gamma(a) \cdot \phi(f_q(a, x^q)) - \gamma(x^q) \cdot \phi(q(a))
\]
\[
= \gamma(a) \cdot \phi(q(a + x^q) - q(a) - q(x^q)) - \gamma(x^q) \cdot \tilde{N}(\gamma(a))
\]
\[
= \gamma(a) \cdot (\tilde{N}(\gamma(a) + \gamma(x^q)) - \tilde{N}(\gamma(a)) - \tilde{N}(\gamma(x^q))) - \gamma(x^q) \cdot \tilde{N}(\gamma(a))
\]
\[
= \gamma(a) \cdot (\gamma(x)^q \gamma(x)^q + \gamma(x)^q \gamma(a)) - \gamma(x^q) \cdot \tilde{N}(\gamma(a))
\]
\[
= \tilde{N}(\gamma(a)) \cdot \gamma(x)^q + \gamma(a) \gamma(x)^q \gamma(a) - \gamma(x^q) \cdot \tilde{N}(\gamma(a))
\]
\[
= \gamma(a) \gamma(x) \gamma(a) = \tilde{h}_{\gamma(a)}(\gamma(x))
\]
for all $a \in L_0^*$, $x \in L_0$.

\[\square\]

\section*{(31.22) Corollary}

Let $(\tilde{A}, \mathbb{K}, N_{\tilde{A}}^2)$ be a quadratic space of type $(m)$. Then we have
\[
M(\mathbb{A}, \mathbb{K}, N_{\tilde{A}}^2) \cong M(\mathbb{A}).
\]

\subsection*{Proof}

Let $\gamma := \text{id}_{\tilde{A}}$. Then the map $\phi = \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}} : K \to \mathbb{K} = \gamma((1_{\tilde{A}})_{\mathbb{K}})$ is an isomorphism of fields, and the map
\[
(\gamma, \phi) = (\text{id}_{\tilde{A}}, \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}}) : (\mathbb{A}, K, N_{\tilde{A}}^2) \to (\tilde{A}, \mathbb{K}, N_{\tilde{A}}^2)
\]
is an isomorphism of quadratic spaces so that we may apply theorem (31.21).

\[\square\]

\section*{(31.23) Lemma}

More precisely: Let $(\tilde{A}, \mathbb{K}, N_{\tilde{A}}^2)$ be a quadratic space of type $(m)$. Then we have
\[
\tilde{M} := M(\tilde{A}, \mathbb{K}, N_{\tilde{A}}^2) = M(\tilde{A}) =: \tilde{M}.
\]

\subsection*{Proof}

We have
\[
\forall x \in \tilde{A} : \quad \tau(x) = -x^q \cdot N_{\tilde{A}}^2(x)^{-1} = -x^{-1} = \tilde{\tau}(x).
\]

\[\square\]

\section*{§ 31.3 $M(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0) \cong M(\tilde{A})$}

\section*{(31.24) Theorem}

Let $M := M(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0)$ be a Moufang set of indifferent type and let $\tilde{M} := M(\tilde{A})$ be a Moufang set of linear type. A map $\gamma : M \to \tilde{M}$ is a Jordan isomorphism such that $\gamma(1_M) = 1_{\tilde{M}}$ if and only if $\mathbb{K}_0 = \mathbb{K}$, $\tilde{A}$ is a field and the map $\gamma : \tilde{A} \to \mathbb{K}_0$ is an isomorphism of fields. In particular, the indifferent set $(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0)$ is non-proper if we have $M \cong \tilde{M}$.

\subsection*{Proof}

“⇒” The map $\gamma : \tilde{A} \to \mathbb{K}_0 \subseteq \mathbb{K}$ is a Jordan homomorphism. Since $\mathbb{K}$ is associative, Hua’s theorem implies that $\mathbb{K}_0 = \gamma(\tilde{A})$ is a skew-field, which is thus, in fact, a subfield of $\mathbb{K}$. By Hua’s theorem again, the map $\gamma$ is an isomorphism of fields. In particular, $\tilde{A} = \gamma^{-1}(\mathbb{K}_0)$ is a field. Moreover, we have
\[
\mathbb{K}_0 = (\mathbb{K}_0) = \mathbb{K}.
\]
hence $(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0) = (\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{L}_0)$ is non-proper.

“⇐” We have $\gamma(1_{\mathbb{K}_0}) = \gamma(1_{\tilde{A}}) = 1_{\mathbb{K}_0} = 1_{\mathbb{L}_0}$. Given $a \in \tilde{A}^*$ and $x \in \tilde{A}$, we have
\[
\gamma(h_a(x)) = \gamma(axa) = \gamma(a)\gamma(x)\gamma(a) = h_{\gamma(a)}(\gamma(x)).
\]

\[\square\]
§ 31.4 \( M(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma) \cong M(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}) \)

(31.25) Lemma Let \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\) be a non-proper involutory set with the additional assumption that \(\mathbb{K}_0\) is a field if \(\sigma = \text{id}_\mathbb{K}\) and \(\text{Char} \mathbb{K} = 2\). Then \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\) is of quadratic type.

Proof
Assume that \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\) is not quadratic of type \(\upsilon\), i.e., \(\mathbb{K}\) is a skew-field.

- \(\sigma = \text{id}_\mathbb{K}\), \(\text{Char} \mathbb{K} \neq 2\): Then \(\mathbb{K}\) is a field and \(\mathbb{K}_\sigma = \mathbb{K}_0 = \text{Fix}(\sigma) = \mathbb{K}\), hence \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\) is quadratic of type \(\iota\).
- \(\sigma = \text{id}_\mathbb{K}\), \(\text{Char} \mathbb{K} = 2\): Then \(\mathbb{K}\) is a field and \(\mathbb{K}^2 \subseteq \mathbb{K}_0 \subseteq \mathbb{K}\), hence \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\) is quadratic of type \((m)\in \{\iota, \iota\}\).
- \(\sigma \neq \text{id}_\mathbb{K}\): By (23.23) of [TW], \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\) is quadratic of type \((m)\in \{\iota, \iota\}\).

\(\square\)

(31.26) Theorem Let \(\tilde{M} := M(\tilde{\mathbb{A}})\) be a Moufang set of linear type and let \(M := M(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\) be a Moufang set of involutory type. A map \(\gamma : \tilde{M} \to M\) is a Jordan isomorphism such that \(\gamma(1_{\tilde{M}}) = 1_M\) if and only if \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\) is of quadratic type, \(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}\) and \(\mathbb{K}_0\) are fields and the map \(\gamma : \tilde{\mathbb{A}} \to \mathbb{K}_0\) is an isomorphism of fields. In particular, the involutory set \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\) is non-proper if we have \(M \cong \tilde{M}\).

Proof

"\(\Rightarrow\)" If \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\) is quadratic of type \(\upsilon\), \(\mathbb{K}_0\) is a field and the map \(\gamma : M(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}) \to M(\mathbb{K}_0)\) is a Jordan isomorphism, hence an isomorphism of fields by theorem (31.2) since \(\mathbb{K}_0\) is associative and commutative. In particular, \(\tilde{\mathbb{A}}\) is a field. In the sequel we suppose \(\mathbb{K}\) to be associative.

The map \(\gamma : \tilde{\mathbb{A}} \to \mathbb{K}_0 \subseteq \mathbb{K}\) is a Jordan homomorphism. Since \(\mathbb{K}\) is associative, Hua’s theorem implies that \(\mathbb{K}_0 = \gamma(\tilde{\mathbb{A}})\) is a skew-subfield, which is thus, in fact, a subfield of \(\mathbb{K}\) since we have \(\mathbb{K}_0 \subseteq \text{Fix}(\sigma)\) and, therefore,

\[ \forall x, y \in \mathbb{K}_0 : \quad xy = (xy)^\sigma = y^\sigma x^\sigma = yx. \]

By Hua’s theorem again, \(\gamma\) is an isomorphism of fields. In particular, \(\tilde{\mathbb{A}} = \gamma^{-1}(\mathbb{K}_0)\) is a field. Moreover, \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\) is non-proper by lemma (5.2) and thus quadratic of type \((m)\in \{\iota, \ldots, \upsilon\}\) by lemma (31.25).

"\(\Leftarrow\)" We have

\[ \gamma(1_{\tilde{M}}) = \gamma(1_{\tilde{\mathbb{A}}}) = 1_{\tilde{\mathbb{A}}} = 1_\mathbb{K} = 1_M. \]

Given \(a \in \tilde{\mathbb{A}}^*\) and \(x \in \tilde{\mathbb{A}}\), we have

\[ \gamma(\tilde{h}_a(x)) = \gamma(axa) = \gamma(a)\gamma(x)\gamma(a) = \gamma(a)\gamma(\gamma(a)) = h_{\gamma(a)}(\gamma(x)). \]

\(\square\)

§ 31.5 \( M(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q) \cong M(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q}) \)

(31.27) Remark Cf. chapter 4.6 in [K] for another proof of the main result of this paragraph.

(31.28) Notation Until theorem (31.41), \(M := M(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\) is a Moufang set of quadratic form type with basepoint \(\epsilon\), \(\tilde{M} := M(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q})\) is a Moufang set of proper quadratic form type with basepoint \(\tilde{\epsilon}\) and \(\text{dim}_\mathbb{K} L_0 \geq 3\), and \(\gamma : M \to \tilde{M}\) is a Jordan isomorphism such that \(\gamma(1_M) = 1_{\tilde{M}}\).
(3.29) Lemma  If we have
\[ \forall x \in L_0^*: \quad \gamma((x)_K) \subseteq (\gamma(x))_{\mathbb{K}} , \]
we have
\[ \forall x \in L_0^*: \quad \gamma((x)_K) = (\gamma(x))_{\mathbb{K}} . \]

Proof  Notice that we have \( \dim_{\mathbb{K}} \bar{L}_0 \geq 3 \). First of all, assume \( \dim_{\mathbb{K}} L \leq 2 \). Then \( \gamma(L_0) \) is contained in a two-dimensional \( \mathbb{K} \)-subspace of \( \bar{L}_0 \) and hence in a proper subspace of \( \bar{L}_0 \), which contradicts the fact that \( \gamma : L_0 \to \bar{L}_0 \) is a bijection. We obtain \( \dim_{\mathbb{K}} \geq 3 \), ans thus, by symmetry,
\[ \forall x \in L_0^*: \quad \gamma^{-1}((\gamma(x))_{\mathbb{K}}) \subseteq (\gamma^{-1}(\gamma(x)))_{\mathbb{K}} = (x)_K , \]
hence
\[ \forall x \in L_0^*: \quad \gamma((x)_K) \supseteq (\gamma(x))_{\mathbb{K}} . \]

(3.30) Notation  Given \( x \in L_0^*, y \in L_0 \) and \( s \in \mathbb{K} \), we set
\[ \psi_1(x, y, s) := \gamma(x \cdot s) \cdot f_q(\gamma(x), \gamma(y)^s) - \gamma(y)^s \cdot q(\gamma(x \cdot s)) , \]
\[ \psi_2(x, y, s) := \gamma(x) \cdot f_q(\gamma(x), \gamma(y^s)) - \gamma(y^s) \cdot q(\gamma(x)) , \]
\[ \psi_3(x, y, s) := \gamma(x) \cdot f_q(\gamma(x \cdot s), \gamma(y)^s) + \gamma(x \cdot s) \cdot f_q(\gamma(x), \gamma(y)^s) - \gamma(y)^s \cdot f_q(\gamma(x \cdot s), \gamma(x)) , \]
\[ \psi_4(x, y, s) := \gamma(x) \cdot f_q(\gamma(x), \gamma(y^s)) - 2\gamma(y^s) \cdot \tilde{q}(\gamma(x)) \cdot q(\gamma(x)) . \]

(3.31) Lemma  Let \( x \in L_0^*, y \in L_0 \) and \( s \in \mathbb{K} \). Then the following holds:
(a) We have
\[ \psi_1(x, y, s + 1\mathbb{K}) = \psi_1(x, y, s) + \psi_1(x, y, 1\mathbb{K}) + \psi_3(x, y, s) . \]
(b) We have
\[ \psi_2(x, y, s + 1\mathbb{K}) = \psi_2(x, y, s) + \psi_2(x, y, 1\mathbb{K}) + \psi_4(x, y, s) . \]
(c) We have \( \psi_1(x, y, s) = \psi_2(x, y, s) \).
(d) We have \( \psi_3(x, y, s) = \psi_4(x, y, s) \).

Proof  
(a) This is a direct calculation using the facts that \( \gamma \) is additive and that we have
\[ \forall x \in L_0, \quad s \in \mathbb{K}: \quad \tilde{q}(\gamma(x \cdot s) + \gamma(x)) = \hat{q}(\gamma(x \cdot s)) + \tilde{q}(\gamma(x)) + f_q(\gamma(x \cdot s), \gamma(x)) . \]
(b) This a direct calculation using the fact that \( \gamma \) is additive.
(c) By lemma (4.5) and lemma (4.7), we have
\[ \psi_1(x, y, s) = \gamma(x \cdot s) \cdot f_q(\gamma(x \cdot s), \gamma(y)^s) - \gamma(y)^s \cdot \tilde{q}(\gamma(x \cdot s)) \]
\[ = \tilde{h}_{\gamma(x \cdot s)}(\gamma(y)) = \gamma(h_{x \cdot s}(y)) = \gamma(h_{x \cdot s}(y^s)) = \hat{h}_{\gamma(x)}(\gamma(y^s)) \]
\[ = \gamma(x) \cdot f_q(\gamma(x), \gamma(y^s)) - \gamma(y^s) \cdot \tilde{q}(\gamma(x)) = \psi_2(x, y, s) . \]
(d) By (a), (b) and (c), we have
\[ \gamma_1(x, y, s) + \gamma_1(x, y, 1\mathbb{K}) + \gamma_3(x, y, s) = \gamma_1(x, y, s + 1\mathbb{K}) = \gamma_2(x, y, s + 1\mathbb{K}) \]
\[ = \gamma_2(x, y, s) + \gamma_2(x, y, 1\mathbb{K}) + \gamma_4(x, y, s) , \]
hence \( \gamma_3(x, y, s) = \gamma_4(x, y, s) \) by (c) again.

(31.32) Lemma  Assume $\text{Char} \mathbb{K} = 2$. Given $x \in L_0$ such that $\gamma(x) \notin \bar{L}_0^+$, we have
\[ \forall s \in \mathbb{K} : \quad \gamma(x \cdot s) \in (\gamma(x))_{\mathbb{K}}. \]

Proof  
Lemma (31.31) (d) simplifies to
\[ \gamma(x) \cdot f_{\bar{q}}(\gamma(x \cdot s), \gamma(y)) + \gamma(x \cdot s) \cdot f_{\bar{q}}(\gamma(x), \gamma(y)) + \gamma(y) \cdot f_{\bar{q}}(\gamma(x \cdot s), \gamma(x)) = 0_{L_0} \tag{31.1} \]
for all $x \in L_0^+$, $y \in L_0$, $s \in \mathbb{K}$. Since we have $\dim_{\mathbb{K}} \bar{L}_0 \geq 3$, there is an element $y \in L_0$ such that $\gamma(y)^\# \in (\gamma(x)^\# \cap \gamma(x \cdot s)^\#$. Therefore, we have
\[ \forall s \in \mathbb{K} : \quad f_{\bar{q}}(\gamma(x \cdot s), \gamma(x)) = 0_{\mathbb{K}}, \]
and equation (31.1) simplifies to
\[ \gamma(x) \cdot f_{\bar{q}}(\gamma(x \cdot s), \gamma(y)) = \gamma(x \cdot s) \cdot f_{\bar{q}}(\gamma(x), \gamma(y)) \]
for all $x \in L_0^+$, $y \in L_0$, $s \in \mathbb{K}$. By assumption, there is an element $y \in L_0$ such that $f_{\bar{q}}(\gamma(x), \gamma(y)) \neq 0_{\mathbb{K}}$, hence
\[ \gamma(x \cdot s) = \gamma(x) \cdot f_{\bar{q}}(\gamma(x \cdot s), \gamma(y)) f_{\bar{q}}(\gamma(x), \gamma(y))^{-1} \in (\gamma(x))_{\mathbb{K}}. \]
\[ \square \]

(31.33) Notation  
- Until proposition (31.37), we assume $\text{Char} \mathbb{K} = 2$.
- Given $x \in L_0$ such that $\gamma(x) \notin \bar{L}_0^+$, let $\phi_x : \mathbb{K} \to \bar{K}$ defined by
\[ \forall s \in \mathbb{K} : \quad \gamma(x \cdot s) = \gamma(x) \cdot \phi_x(s). \]

(31.34) Lemma  Let $x \in L_0$ be such that $\gamma(x) \notin \bar{L}_0^+$ and let $y \in L_0$ be such that $\gamma(y) \in \bar{L}_0^+$. Then we have
\[ \gamma(x + y) \notin \bar{L}_0^+. \]

Proof  
Given $z \in L_0$, we have
\[ f_{\bar{q}}(\gamma(x + y), \gamma(z)) = f_{\bar{q}}(\gamma(x), \gamma(z)), \]
hence $\gamma(x + y) \notin \bar{L}_0^+$. \[ \square \]

(31.35) Corollary  Let $x \in L_0$ be such that $\gamma(x) \notin \bar{L}_0^+$ and let $y \in L_0$ be such that $\gamma(y) \in \bar{L}_0^+$. Then we have
\[ \forall t \in \mathbb{K}^* : \quad \gamma(x \cdot t + y) \notin \bar{L}_0^+. \]

Proof  
By lemma (31.32), we have
\[ \forall t \in \mathbb{K}^* : \quad \gamma(x \cdot t) = \gamma(x) \cdot \phi_x(t) \notin \bar{L}_0^+ \]
so that we may apply lemma (31.34). \[ \square \]

(31.36) Lemma  Let $x, y \in L_0$ be such that $\gamma(y) \notin (\gamma(x))_{\mathbb{K}}$ and $\gamma(x), \gamma(y) \notin \bar{L}_0^+$. Then we have
\[ \phi_x = \phi_y. \]
Proposition
The assertion is clearly true for $K = F_2$ so that we may assume $|K| \geq 4$.

(i) $\gamma(y) \notin \langle \gamma(x) \rangle_{\tilde{K}}$, $\gamma(x + y) \notin \tilde{L}_0^+$: Given $s \in K$, we have

$$\gamma(x) \cdot \phi_{x+y}(s) + \gamma(y) \cdot \phi_{x+y}(s) = \gamma((x + y) \cdot s) = \gamma(x \cdot s) + \gamma(y \cdot s)$$

$$= \gamma(x) \cdot \phi_x(s) + \gamma(y) \cdot \phi_y(s),$$

hence

$$\phi_x(s) = \phi_{x+y}(s) = \phi_y(s).$$

The condition in this step is always fulfilled if we have $\tilde{L}_0^+ = \{0\}$ in the following.

(ii) $y \in \langle x \rangle_K$, which means that we allow $\gamma(y) \in \langle \gamma(x) \rangle_{\tilde{K}}$ in this case, cf. lemma (31.32): Since we have $|K| \geq 4$, there is an element $t \in K^*$ such that

$$x \cdot t \notin \{x, y\}.$$

Let $z \in L_0^*$ be such that $\gamma(z) \in \tilde{L}_0^+$, which implies $\gamma(z) \notin \langle \gamma(x) \rangle_{\tilde{K}}$. Then we have

$$\gamma(x \cdot t + z) \notin \tilde{L}_0^+,$$  

$$\gamma(x + x \cdot t + z) \notin \tilde{L}_0^+, \quad \gamma(y + x \cdot t + z) \notin \tilde{L}_0^+$$

by corollary (31.35) and thus $\phi_x = \phi_{x+t+z} = \phi_y$ by (i).

(iii) $\gamma(y) \notin \langle \gamma(x) \rangle_{\tilde{K}}$, $\gamma(x + y) \in \tilde{L}_0^+$: Let $t \in K \setminus \{0, 1_K\}$. By lemma (31.32) and corollary (31.35), we have

$$\gamma(x \cdot t) \notin \tilde{L}_0^+,$$  

$$\gamma(x \cdot t + y) = \gamma(x \cdot (t + 1_K) + (x + y)) \notin \tilde{L}_0^+,$$

hence $\phi_x 

\phi_{x \cdot t} = \phi_y$ by the previous steps.

\[\square\]

(31.37) Proposition If we have $\text{Char } K = 2$, the map $\gamma : L_0 \to \tilde{L}_0$ is an isomorphism of vector spaces.

Proof
We show that we have

$$\forall x \in L_0^*, \ s \in K : \quad \gamma(x \cdot s) \in \langle \gamma(x) \rangle_{\tilde{K}}$$

so that we may apply the fundamental theorem of projective geometry by lemma (31.29).

Let $x \in L_0^*$. By lemma (31.32), we may assume $\gamma(x) \in L_0^+$. Since $(L_0, K, \tilde{q})$ is proper, there is an element $y \in L_0$ such that $\gamma(y) \notin L_0^+$. Moreover, we have $\gamma(y) \notin \langle \gamma(x + y) \rangle_{\tilde{K}}$, and, by lemma (31.34), $\gamma(x + y) \notin \tilde{L}_0$. By lemma (31.36) therefore, we have

$$\phi_y = \phi_{x+y},$$

and thus

$$\gamma(x \cdot s) + \gamma(y) \cdot \phi_y(s) = \gamma(x \cdot s) + \gamma(y \cdot s) = \gamma((x + y) \cdot s)$$

$$= \gamma(x + y) \cdot \phi_{x+y}(s) = \gamma(x) \cdot \phi_y(s) + \gamma(y) \cdot \phi_y(s),$$

for each $s \in K$, hence

$$\forall s \in K : \quad \gamma(x \cdot s) = \gamma(x) \cdot \phi_y(s) \in \langle \gamma(x) \rangle_{\tilde{K}}.$$

\[\square\]
Lemma
Assume $\text{Char} \mathbb{K} = 2$. We drop the condition $	ext{Char} \mathbb{K} = 2$.

Lemma
Assume $\text{Char} \mathbb{K} \neq 2$. Let $y \in L_0^*$ and $s \in \mathbb{K}$. Given $x \in L_0^*$ such that
\[
 f_q(\gamma(x), \gamma(y)^\varphi) = 0_{\mathbb{K}} = f_q(\gamma(x), \gamma(y \cdot s)) ,
\]
we have
\[
f_q(\gamma(x \cdot s), \gamma(y)^\varphi) = 0_{\mathbb{K}} .
\]

Proof
By lemma (31.31) (d), we have
\[
\gamma(x) \cdot f_q(\gamma(x \cdot s), \gamma(y)^\varphi) = \gamma(y)^\varphi \cdot f_q(\gamma(x \cdot s), \gamma(x)) - 2\gamma(y \cdot s)^\varphi \cdot \bar{q}(\gamma(x)) .
\]
Assume $f_q(\gamma(x \cdot s), \gamma(y)^\varphi) \neq 0_{\mathbb{K}}$. Then we have
\[
\gamma(x) \in (\gamma(y)^\varphi, \gamma(y \cdot s)^\varphi)_{\mathbb{K}} \subseteq (\gamma(x)\bot)_{\mathbb{K}} .
\]

Proposition
If we have $\text{Char} \mathbb{K} \neq 2$, the map $\gamma : L_0 \to \tilde{L}_0$ is an isomorphism of vector spaces.

Proof
We show that we have
\[
\forall y \in L_0^*, \ s \in \mathbb{K} : \gamma(y \cdot s) \in (\gamma(y))_{\mathbb{K}}
\]
so that we may apply the fundamental theorem of projective geometry by lemma (31.29).

Let $y \in L_0^*$. By assumption, there is an element $x \in L_0^*$ such that
\[
f_q(\gamma(x), \gamma(y)^\varphi) = 0_{\mathbb{K}} = f_q(\gamma(x), \gamma(y \cdot s)) .
\]
By lemma (31.31) (d) and lemma (31.39), we have
\[
\gamma(y)^\varphi \cdot f_q(\gamma(x \cdot s), \gamma(x)) = 2\gamma(y \cdot s)^\varphi \cdot \bar{q}(\gamma(x)) ,
\]
hence
\[
\gamma(y \cdot s) = \frac{1}{2} \gamma(y) \cdot f_q(\gamma(x \cdot s), \gamma(x)) \bar{q}(\gamma(x))^{-1} \in (\gamma(y))_{\mathbb{K}} .
\]

Theorem
Let $\Xi$ be a quadratic space with basepoint $\epsilon$, let $\tilde{\Xi}$ be a proper quadratic space with basepoint $\tilde{\epsilon}$ and let $\tilde{M} := M(\Xi)$, $\tilde{\hat{M}} := \hat{M}(\tilde{\Xi})$ be the corresponding Moufang sets of quadratic form type. A map $\gamma : M \to \tilde{M}$ is a Jordan isomorphism such that $\gamma(1_\mathbb{K}) = 1_{\tilde{\mathbb{K}}}$ if and only if one of the following holds:

(i) We have $\dim_{\mathbb{K}} \tilde{L}_0 \geq 3$ and there is an isomorphism $\phi : \mathbb{K} \to \tilde{\mathbb{K}}$ of fields such that the map
\[
(\gamma, \phi) : (L_0, \mathbb{K}, q) \to (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q})
\]
is an isomorphism of quadratic spaces. In particular, we have $\dim_{\mathbb{K}} L_0 = \dim_{\mathbb{K}} \tilde{L}_0$.

(ii) We have $\dim_{\mathbb{K}} \tilde{L}_0 \leq 2$, the map
\[
\phi : \mathbb{K} \to \tilde{\mathbb{K}} := \gamma((\epsilon)_{\mathbb{K}}) \subseteq \hat{\mathbb{F}} := \hat{F}(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q}), \ s \mapsto \gamma(\epsilon \cdot s)
\]
is an isomorphism of fields, the field $\hat{\mathbb{F}}$ is quadratic over $\tilde{\mathbb{K}}$, and the map
\[
(\gamma, \phi) : (L_0, \mathbb{K}, q) \to (\hat{F}, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, N_{\hat{\mathbb{F}}}^{\tilde{\mathbb{K}}})
\]
is an isomorphism of quadratic spaces. This is true even if $\tilde{\Xi}$ is non-proper.
Proof

“⇒” Let \( \gamma, \phi \) be an isomorphism of quadratic spaces (independent of the target space \((\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q})\) or \((\mathbb{F}, \tilde{K}, N_{\tilde{K}}^F)\)). By lemma (4.2), we have
\[
\gamma(h_x(x)) = \gamma(x \cdot f_{q(y)} x, y^2) = \gamma(x) \cdot \phi(f_{q(y)} x, y^2) = \gamma(y^2) \cdot \phi(q(x)) \]
for all \( x \in L^*_0 \), \( y \in L_0 \) which completes the case \( \dim_{\tilde{K}} \tilde{L}_0 \geq 3 \). In the case \( \dim_{\tilde{K}} \tilde{L}_0 \leq 2 \) moreover, we have
\[
\text{M}(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q}) = \text{M}(\mathbb{F}) = \text{M}(\tilde{K}, \tilde{F}, N_{\tilde{K}}^F)
\]
by lemma (31.11) and lemma (31.23) so that
\[
\gamma : \text{M}(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q}) \to \text{M}(\tilde{K}, \tilde{F}, N_{\tilde{K}}^F) = \text{M}(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q})
\]
is a Jordan isomorphism.

“⇐” Let \( \tilde{L}_0 \geq 3 \): By proposition (31.37) and proposition (31.40), there is an isomorphism \( \phi : \tilde{K} \to \tilde{K} \) of fields such that the map \((\gamma, \phi) : (L_0, K) \to (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K})\) is an isomorphism of vector spaces. By lemma (31.19), we have
\[
\tilde{h}_{\gamma(x)}(\tilde{e}) = \gamma(x) \cdot \phi(T(x)) + \tilde{e} \cdot \phi(q(x)) = \gamma(h_x(\epsilon) - x \cdot T(x) + \epsilon \cdot q(x)) = 0_{L_0}
\]
and
\[
\tilde{h}_{\gamma(x)}(\tilde{e}) = \gamma(x) \cdot \tilde{T}(\gamma(x)) + \tilde{e} \cdot \tilde{q}(\gamma(x)) = 0_{L_0}
\]
for each \( x \in L^*_0 \), hence
\[
\forall x \in L^*_0 : -\gamma(x) \cdot \phi(T(x)) + \tilde{e} \cdot \phi(q(x)) = -\gamma(x) \cdot \tilde{T}(\gamma(y)) + \tilde{e} \cdot \tilde{q}(\gamma(x))
\]
which implies
\[
\forall x \in L_0 \setminus \{\epsilon\}_K : \tilde{q}(\gamma(x)) = \phi(q(x))
\]
Given \( s \in K \), we have
\[
\tilde{q}(\gamma(\epsilon \cdot s)) = \tilde{q}(\tilde{e} \cdot \phi(s)) = \phi(s^2) = \phi(q(\epsilon \cdot s))
\]
• \( \dim_{\tilde{K}} \tilde{L}_0 \leq 2 \): By lemma (31.11), we have
\[
\text{M}(L_0, K, q) \cong \text{M}(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q}) = \text{M}(\mathbb{F}(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q})
\]
Now we apply theorem (31.7).
Part VII

An Inventory of Moufang Polygons
As in the simply laced case, the parametrization for the appearing Moufang polygons in root group sequences of a given twin building is an important technical tool for the classification of twin buildings: We can make use of the knowledge about the parametrizing Moufang sets and Jordan isomorphisms between them, i.e., we may apply the results of chapter 31.

Chapter 32 Parametrized Moufang Polygons

Before we give the appearing examples, we have to establish the concept of standard and opposite parametrized Moufang polygons as we can read a root group sequence in two directions.

(32.1) Definition

- The symbol $T$ is standard of type 3.
- The symbols $Q_I, Q_Q, Q_D, Q_P, Q_E$ and $Q_F$ are standard of type 4.
- The symbol $H$ is standard of type 6.
- The symbol $O$ is standard of type 8.

(32.2) Definition

- A parameter system of type $T$ is an alternative division ring $A$.
- A parameter system of type $Q_I$ is a proper involutory set $(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)$.
- A parameter system of type $Q_Q$ is a quadratic space $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ with basepoint $\epsilon$.
- A parameter system of type $Q_D$ is a proper indifferent set $(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, L_0)$.
- A parameter system of type $Q_P$ is a proper right pseudo-quadratic space $(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma, L_0, q)$.
- A parameter system of type $Q_E$ is a quadratic space $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ of type $E_6, E_7, E_8$.
- A parameter system of type $Q_F$ is a quadratic space $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ of type $F_4$.
- A parameter system of type $H$ is a hexagonal system $(J, F, \#)$.
- A parameter system of type $O$ is an octagonal set $(\mathbb{K}, \sigma)$.

(32.3) Definition

A parametrized standard Moufang $n$-gon is a standard root group sequence

$$X(\Xi) = \left( U_{[1,n]}[x_1(M_1), \ldots, x_n(M_n)] \right),$$

where $X$ is a standard symbol of type $n \in \{3, 4, 6, 8\}$, $\Xi$ is a parameter system of type $X$ and $M_1, \ldots, M_n$ are the parameter groups with respect to the parametrizations $x_1, \ldots, x_n$ and the corresponding commutator relations, cf. chapter 16 of [TW].

(32.4) Remark

(a) Given a parametrized standard Moufang $n$-gon $X(\Xi)$, the parameter groups $M_1, \ldots, M_n$ are Moufang sets.

(b) For reasons of brevity, we will write

$$X(\Xi) = \left( x_1(M_1), \ldots, x_n(M_n) \right)$$

instead of $X(\Xi) = \left( U_{[1,n]}[x_1(M_1), \ldots, x_n(M_n)] \right)$. 

- 159 -
(32.5) Definition  Let $\mathcal{X}$ be a standard symbol of type $n \in \{3, 4, 6, 8\}$.

- The symbol $\mathcal{X}^o$ is the corresponding opposite symbol of type $n$. We set $(\mathcal{X}^o)^o := \mathcal{X}$.
- A parameter system of type $\mathcal{X}^o$ is just a parameter system of type $\mathcal{X}$, except for the following standard symbols:
  - A parameter system of type $Q^o_2$, is a proper left pseudo-quadratic space.
  - Hexagonal systems and octagonal sets are not taken into account yet.

(32.6) Notation

- In the following, a symbol $\mathcal{X}$ denotes either a standard or an opposite symbol of type $n$ for some $n \in \{3, 4, 6, 8\}$.
- In the following, a parameter system $\Xi$ denotes a parameter system of type $\mathcal{X}$ for some symbol $\mathcal{X}$.

(32.7) Remark  The following list is not complete since we restrict to parameter systems for $n$-gons with $n \in \{3, 4\}$. The list can be extended easily.

(32.8) Definition  Given a parameter system $\Xi$, there is a natural way to define an opposite parameter system $\Xi^o$:

- Given an alternative division ring $A$, the corresponding opposite parameter system $A^o$ is just the opposite alternative division ring $A^o$ as in definition (3.7).
- Given an involutory set $(K_0, K_0, \sigma)$, the corresponding opposite parameter system is $(K_0, K_0, \sigma)^o := (K_0^o, K_0^o, \sigma)$,
  which is an involutory set.

- Given an indiffernt set $(K_0, L_0)$, the corresponding opposite parameter system is $(K_0, L_0)^o := (K_0, L_0)$,
  which is the indiffernt set itself.

- Given a right (resp. left) pseudo-quadratic space $(K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)$, the corresponding opposite parameter system is $(K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)^o := (K_0, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)$,
  which is a left (resp. right) pseudo-quadratic space.

- Given a quadratic space $(L_0, K, q)$, the corresponding opposite parameter system is $(L_0, K, q)^o := (L_0, K, q)$,
  which is the quadratic space itself.

(32.9) Remark  Let $\Xi$ be a parameter system. If $\Xi$ is of type $\mathcal{X}$, then $\Xi^o$ is of type $\mathcal{X}^o$.

(32.10) Definition  An parametrized opposite Moufang $n$-gon is a root group sequence

$$\mathcal{X}^o(\Xi) = (x_1(M_1), \ldots, x_n(M_n))$$

such that

$$\{x_n(M_n^o), \ldots, x_1(M_1^o)\} = \mathcal{X}(\Xi^o),$$

where $\mathcal{X}$ is a standard symbol of type $n \in \{3, 4, 6, 8\}$ and $\Xi$ is a parameter system of type $\mathcal{X}^o$. 

- 160 -
Chapter 32 Parametrized Moufang Polygons

(32.11) Remark
(a) Parametrized opposite Moufang $n$-gons can be obtained as follows: Take the opposite root group sequence $(x_n(M_n), \ldots, x_1(M_1))$ of some parametrized standard Moufang $n$-gon $X(\Xi) = (x_1(M_1), \ldots, x_n(M_n))$, calculate the commutator relations and interpret them in the opposite parameter system $\Xi^o$.

(b) By definition, each parametrized opposite Moufang $n$-gon arises in this way.

(c) We will make this more explicit in the next chapter.

(32.12) Definition A parametrized Moufang polygon of type $X$ is a parametrized standard or opposite Moufang $n$-gon $X(\Xi)$ for some symbol $X$ of type $n$ and some parameter system of type $X$.

(32.13) Remark Two isomorphic Moufang polygons are necessarily $n$-gons for the same value $n \in \{3, 4, 6, 8\}$, cf. p. 419 of [TW]. However, there are six families of Moufang quadrangles, and there are indeed quadrangles belonging to different families, cf. chapter 38 of [TW]. But the six families of parametrized Moufang quadrangles are disjoint if we use the above list of parameter systems, i.e., two isomorphic parametrized quadrangles are necessarily of the same type $X$, cf. (38.9) of [TW].

(32.14) Definition Let $X(\Xi), X(\check{\Xi})$ be parametrized Moufang polygons of the same type $X$.

- An isomorphism $\alpha : X(\Xi) \rightarrow X(\check{\Xi})$ is an ordered set $(\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n)$ such that $\alpha_i : M_i \rightarrow M_i$ is an isomorphism of groups for each $i \in \{1, \ldots, n\}$ and such that 
  $$(x_1\alpha_1(M_1), \ldots, x_n\alpha_n(M_n)) = X(\Xi).$$

- A reparametrization for $X(\Xi)$ is an ordered set $\alpha = (\Xi, \alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n)$ such that $\Xi$ is a parameter system of type $X$ and $\alpha_i : M_i \rightarrow M_i$ is an isomorphism of groups for each $i \in \{1, \ldots, n\}$ and such that 
  $$(x_1\alpha_1(M_1), \ldots, x_n\alpha_n(M_n)) = X(\check{\Xi}).$$

(32.15) Remark The following results enable us to define parametrizations for root group sequences such that we have $\gamma(1_M) = 1_M$ for each appearing glueing $\gamma$.

(32.16) Lemma Given a parametrized Moufang $n$-gon $X(\Xi)$, we have

$$1_{M_1} \in Z(M_1), \quad 1_{M_n} \in Z(M_n).$$

Proof
This results from the fact that $M_1$ and $M_n$ are commutative except for the symbols $Q_P$, $Q_E$, $O$. In these cases, the assertion results from definition (10.15) and (38.10) of [TW], cf. Fig. 5 on page 354 of [TW].

(32.17) Lemma Let $X(\Xi)$ be a parametrized Moufang $n$-gon and let $a \in Z(M_1), b \in Z(M_n)$. Then the following holds:

(a) If $X$ is of type $\mathcal{T}$, $Q_I$, $Q_D$, $Q_P$, $\mathcal{H}$, $O$, there is a reparametrization $\alpha = (\Xi, \alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n)$ s.t.

$$x_1(\alpha_1(1_{M_1})) = x_1(a), \quad x_n(\alpha_n(1_{M_n})) = x_n(b).$$

(b) If $X$ is of type $Q_Q$, there is a reparametrization $\alpha = (\Xi, \alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_{n-1}, \text{id}_{M_n})$ such that

$$x_1(\alpha_1(1_{M_1})) = x_1(a), \quad \check{q}(b) = 1_{\check{M}_n}.$$

In particular, we have $1_{\check{M}_n} = b$. 

- 161 -
Proof

(a) $\mathcal{T}$: This results from lemma (18.8).

$\mathcal{Q}_I$: This results from (35.16) and (22.39) in [TW].

$\mathcal{Q}_{D}$: This results from (35.18) in [TW].

$\mathcal{Q}_P$: This results from (35.19) and (25.20) in [TW].

$\mathcal{H}$: This results from (29.40) and (29.42) in [TW].

$\mathcal{O}$: This results from (31.35) in [TW].

(b) $\mathcal{Q}_Q$: This results from (35.17) and (23.25) in [TW].

\begin{enumerate}
\item[(32.18)] Lemma Given a parametrized quadrangle $Q_E(L_0, K, q)$ and $a \in Z(M_1)$, $b \in Z(M_n)$, there is a reparametrization $\alpha = (\tilde{\Xi}, \alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_{n-1}, \text{id}_{M_n})$ such that
\begin{equation}
\begin{split}
x_1(\alpha_1(1_{\tilde{M}_1})) = x_1(a), \quad \tilde{q}(b) = 1_K.
\end{split}
\end{equation}

In particular, we have $1_{\tilde{M}_n} = b$.

\begin{proof}
By remark (21.17) of [TW], $Q_E(L_0, K, q)$ is an extension of $Q_Q(L_0, K, q)$, and by proposition (21.4) and (38.10) of [TW], the first root group is $Y_1 = Z(U_1)$. We apply lemma (32.17) (b) to the quadrangle $Q_Q(L_0, K, q)$ and extend the reparametrization for $Q_Q(L_0, K, q)$ to a parametrization for $Q_E(L_0, K, q)$, which is possible by theorem (21.12) of [TW], more precisely, by its proof.
\end{proof}

\item[(32.19)] Lemma Let $Q_F(L_0, K, q)$ be a parametrized quadrangle, let $(F, \hat{L}_0, \hat{q})$ be as in definition (14.12) of [TW] and let $a \in \text{Def}(\hat{q})^*, b \in \text{Def}(q)^*$. Then there is a reparametrization $\alpha = (\tilde{\Xi}, \alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_{n-1}, \text{id}_{M_n})$ such that
\begin{equation}
\begin{split}
x_1(\alpha_1(1_{\tilde{M}_1})) = x_1(a), \quad \tilde{q}(b) = 1_K.
\end{split}
\end{equation}

In particular, we have $1_{\tilde{M}_n} = b$.

\begin{proof}
By remark (21.18) of [TW], $Q_E(L_0, K, q)$ is an extension of $Q_Q(L_0, K, q)$, and by proposition (21.4), remark (21.18) and the proof of (14.13) of [TW], the first root group is
\begin{equation}
Y_1 = \{ x_1(0, t) \mid t \in K \} = x_1(\text{Def}(\hat{q})).
\end{equation}

We apply lemma (32.17) (b) to the quadrangle $Q_Q(L_0, K, q)$ and extend the reparametrization for $Q_Q(L_0, K, q)$ to a parametrization for $Q_E(L_0, K, q)$ which is possible by theorem (21.12) of [TW], more precisely, by its proof.
\end{proof}

\item[(32.20)] Notation Let $I$ be an index set, let $i \neq j \in I$ and let
\begin{equation}
\mathcal{B}_{(i,j)} = \mathcal{X}(\Xi) = (U_{[1,n]}, x_1(M_1), \ldots, x_n(M_n))
\end{equation}
be a parametrized Moufang $n$-gon. Then $M^i_{(i,j)} := M_i$ denotes the parameter group of the first root group and $M^j_{(i,j)} := M_n$ denotes the parameter group of the last root group with corresponding parametrizations $x^i_{(i,j)} := x_1$ and $x^j_{(i,j)} := x_n$. Moreover, we set
\begin{equation}
\mathcal{B}^o_{(i,j)} := \mathcal{X}^o(\Xi^o).
\end{equation}

\item[(32.21)] Remark Let $\mathcal{B}_{(1,2)} := Q_F(L_0, K, q)$ and $\mathcal{B}_{(2,3)} := Q_F(\hat{L}_0, \hat{K}, \hat{q})$ be quadrangles of type $F_3$, and let $\gamma : M^2_{(1,2)} \to M^2_{(2,3)}$ be a Jordan isomorphism. Then we have $\gamma(0, F) = (0, K)$, cf. theorem (31.6) and equation (32.1).
\end{enumerate}
Chapter 33  Parametrized Quadrangles

§ 33.1  Quadrangles of Involutory Type

(33.1) Definition  Let \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\) be a (proper) involutory set.

- The root group sequence

\[ \mathcal{Q}_1(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma) := (x_1(\mathbb{K}_0), x_2(\mathbb{K}), x_3(\mathbb{K}_0), x_4(\mathbb{K})) \]

with commutator relations

\[ \forall s, t \in \mathbb{K} : \quad [x_2(s), x_4(t)^{-1}] := x_3(s^\sigma t + t^\sigma s), \]

\[ \forall s \in \mathbb{K}, u \in \mathbb{K}_0 : \quad [x_1(u), x_4(s)^{-1}] := x_2(us)x_3(s^\sigma us) \]

is the parametrized standard quadrangle of involutory type with respect to \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\).

- The root group sequence

\[ \mathcal{Q}_1'(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma) := (x_1(\mathbb{K}), x_2(\mathbb{K}_0), x_3(\mathbb{K}), x_4(\mathbb{K}_0)) \]

with commutator relations

\[ \forall s, t \in \mathbb{K} : \quad [x_1(s)^{-1}, x_3(t)] := x_2(-st^\sigma - ts^\sigma), \]

\[ \forall s \in \mathbb{K}, u \in \mathbb{K}_0 : \quad [x_1(s)^{-1}, x_4(u)] := x_2(-us^\sigma)x_3(-su) \]

is the parametrized opposite quadrangle of involutory type with respect to \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\).

(33.2) Lemma  Let \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)\) be a (proper) involutory set and let

\[ \mathcal{Q}_1'(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma) = (x_1(\mathbb{K}), x_2(\mathbb{K}_0), x_3(\mathbb{K}), x_4(\mathbb{K}_0)) \]

be the corresponding opposite quadrangle. Then the action of the Hua automorphism

\[ h_1(s) := \mu(x_1(1_{\mathbb{K}}))^{-1}\mu(x_1(s)) \]

on \(x_1(\mathbb{K}) \times x_4(\mathbb{K}_0)\) corresponds to the map

\[ (t, u) \mapsto (st^\sigma, s^{-1}us^{-\sigma}) , \]

and the action of the Hua automorphism

\[ h_4(s) := \mu(x_4(1_{\mathbb{K}}))^{-1}\mu(x_4(s)) \]

on \(x_1(\mathbb{K}) \times x_4(\mathbb{K}_0)\) corresponds to the map

\[ (t, u) \mapsto (ts^{-1}, s^\sigma us) . \]

Proof  
If we consider the quadrangle \(\mathcal{Q}_1(\mathbb{K}^0, \mathbb{K}^0_0, \sigma)\), then the action of \(h_1(s)\) on \(x_4(\mathbb{K}_0) \times x_1(\mathbb{K})\) corresponds to the map

\[ (u, t) \mapsto (s^{-\sigma} \circ u \circ s^{-1}, s \circ t \circ s) = (s^{-1}us^{-\sigma}, st^\sigma) , \]

and the action of \(h_4(s)\) on \(x_4(\mathbb{K}_0) \times x_1(\mathbb{K})\) corresponds to the map

\[ (u, t) \mapsto (s \circ u \circ s^\sigma, s^{-1} \circ t) = (s^\sigma us, ts^{-1}) , \]

cf. (33.13) of [TW].
§ 33.2 Quadrangles of Pseudo-Quadratic Form Type

(33.3) Definition

- Let \((K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)\) be a (proper) right pseudo-quadratic space. Then the root group sequence

\[
Q_P(K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q) := (x_1(T), x_2(K), x_3(T), x_4(K))
\]

with commutator relations

\[
[x_1(a, t), x_4(b, u)^{-1}] := x_2(f(a, b)) ,
\]

\[
[x_2(v), x_4(w)^{-1}] := x_3(0, v^w w + w^v) ,
\]

\[
[x_1(a, t), x_4(v)^{-1}] := x_2(tv)x_3(a, v^tv)
\]

for all \(v, w \in K, (a, t), (b, u) \in T\) is the parametrized standard quadrangle of pseudo-quadratic form type with respect to \((K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)\).

- Let \((K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)\) be a (proper) left pseudo-quadratic space. Then the root group sequence

\[
Q_P^L(K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q) := (x_1(K), x_2(T), x_3(K), x_4(T))
\]

with commutator relations

\[
[x_2(b, u)^{-1}, x_4(a, t)] := x_3(−f(a, b)) ,
\]

\[
[x_1(w)^{-1}, x_3(v)] := x_2(0, −w^v − vw^v) ,
\]

\[
[x_1(v)^{-1}, x_4(a, t)] := x_2(−va, −v^a t^av) x_3(−vt)
\]

for all \(v, w \in K, (a, t), (b, u) \in T\) is the parametrized opposite quadrangle of pseudo-quadratic form type with respect to \((K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)\).

(33.4) Lemma 
Let \((K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)\) be a (proper) left pseudo-quadratic space and let

\[
Q_P^L(K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q) = (x_1(K), x_2(T), x_3(K), x_4(T))
\]

be the corresponding opposite quadrangle. Then the action of the Hua automorphism

\[
h_1(s) := \mu(x_1(1_K))^{-1} \mu(x_1(s))
\]

on \(x_1(K) \times x_4(T)\) corresponds to the map

\[
(u, (b, v)) \mapsto (sus, (s^{-1}b, s^{-1}vs^{-1}))
\]

and the action of the Hua automorphism

\[
h_4(a, t) := \mu(x_4(0, 1_K))^{-1} \mu(x_4(a, t))
\]

on \(x_1(K) \times x_4(T)\) corresponds to the map

\[
(u, (b, v)) \mapsto (ut^{-s}, (t^avb − t^a f(a, b)t^{-1}a, t^avt))
\]

Proof
If we consider the quadrangle \(Q_P(K_0^L, K_0^R, \sigma, L_0, q)\), then the action of \(h_1(s)\) on \(x_4(T) \times x_1(K)\) corresponds to the map

\[
((b, v), u) \mapsto ((b \circ s^{-1}, s^{-1}v^s \circ s^{-1}), s \circ u \circ s) = ((s^{-1}b, s^{-1}vs^{-1}), sus)
\]

and the action of \(h_4(a, t)\) on \(x_4(T) \times x_1(K)\) corresponds to the map

\[
((b, v), u) \mapsto ((b \circ t^a - a \circ t^{-1} \circ f(a, b) \circ t^a, t \circ v \circ t^a), t^{-s} \circ u) = ((t^avb - t^a f(a, b)t^{-1}a, t^avt), ut^{-s})
\]

cf. (33.13) of [TW].
§ 33.3 Quadrangles of Quadratic Form Type

(33.5) Definition  Let \((L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\) be a quadratic space with basepoint \(\epsilon\).

- The root group sequence
  \[
  \mathcal{Q}_Q(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q) := (x_1(\mathbb{K}), x_2(L_0), x_3(\mathbb{K}), x_4(L_0))
  \]
  with commutator relations
  \[
  [x_2(a), x_4(b)^{-1}] := x_3(f(a, b)), \\
  [x_1(t), x_4(a)^{-1}] := x_2(at)x_3(tq(a))
  \]
  for all \(a, b \in L_0, t \in \mathbb{K}\) is the parametrized standard quadrangle of quadratic form type with respect to \((L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\).

- The root group sequence
  \[
  \mathcal{Q}_Q^0(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q) := (x_1(L_0), x_2(\mathbb{K}), x_3(L_0), x_4(\mathbb{K}))
  \]
  with commutator relations
  \[
  [x_1(b)^{-1}, x_1(a)] := x_2(-f(a, b)), \\
  [x_1(a)^{-1}, x_1(t)] := x_2(-tq(a))x_3(-at)
  \]
  for all \(a, b \in L_0, t \in \mathbb{K}\) is the parametrized opposite quadrangle of quadratic form type with respect to \((L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\).

(33.6) Lemma  Let \((L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\) be a quadratic space with basepoint \(\epsilon\) and let

\[
\mathcal{Q}_Q^0(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q) = (x_1(L_0), x_2(\mathbb{K}), x_3(L_0), x_4(\mathbb{K}))
\]

be the corresponding opposite quadrangle. Then the action of the Hua automorphism

\[
h_1(a) := \mu(x_1(\epsilon))^{-1}\mu(x_1(a))
\]
on \(x_1(L_0) \times x_4(\mathbb{K})\) corresponds to the map

\[
(v, u) \mapsto (\pi_3(v) \cdot q(a), u/q(a)),
\]
and the action of the Hua automorphism

\[
h_4(s) := \mu(x_4(1_\mathbb{K}))^{-1}\mu(x_4(s))
\]
on \(x_1(L_0) \times x_4(\mathbb{K})\) corresponds to the map

\[
(b, u) \mapsto (b \cdot t^{-1}, t^2u).
\]

Proof  If we consider the quadrangle \(\mathcal{Q}_P(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)\), then the action of \(h_1(a)\) on \(x_4(\mathbb{K}) \times x_1(L_0)\) corresponds to the map

\[
(u, v) \mapsto (u/q(a), \pi_3(v) \cdot q(a)),
\]
and the action of \(h_4(s)\) on \(x_4(\mathbb{K}) \times x_1(L_0)\) corresponds to the map

\[
(u, b) \mapsto (t^2u, b \cdot t^{-1}),
\]

cf. (33.11) of [TW].
§ 33.4 Quadrangles of Indifferent Type

(33.7) Definition  Let \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0)\) be a (proper) indifferent set.

- The root group sequence
  \[ Q_D(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0) := (x_1(\mathbb{K}_0), x_2(\mathbb{L}_0), x_3(\mathbb{K}_0), x_4(\mathbb{L}_0)) \]
  with commutator relations
  \[ \forall t \in \mathbb{K}_0, a \in \mathbb{L}_0 : \quad [x_1(t), x_4(a)] = x_2(t^2 a) x_3(t a) \]
  is the parametrized standard quadrangle of indifferent type with respect to \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0)\).

- The root group sequence
  \[ Q_{D'}(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0) := (x_1(\mathbb{L}_0), x_2(\mathbb{K}_0), x_3(\mathbb{L}_0), x_4(\mathbb{K}_0)) \]
  with commutator relations
  \[ \forall t \in \mathbb{K}_0, a \in \mathbb{L}_0 : \quad [x_1(a), x_4(t)] = x_2(-t a) x_3(-t^2 a) = x_2(t a) x_3(t^2 a) \]
  is the parametrized opposite quadrangle of indifferent type with respect to \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0)\).

(33.8) Lemma  Let \((\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0)\) be a (proper) indifferent set and let

\[ Q_{D'}(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0) = (x_1(\mathbb{L}_0), x_2(\mathbb{K}_0), x_3(\mathbb{L}_0), x_4(\mathbb{K}_0)) \]

be the corresponding opposite quadrangle. Then the action of the Hua automorphism
\[ h_1(a) := \mu(x_1(1_{\mathbb{K}}))^{-1} \mu(x_1(a)) \]
on \(x_1(\mathbb{L}_0) \times x_4(\mathbb{K}_0)\) corresponds to the map
\[ (b, u) \mapsto (b a^2, u a^{-1}) , \]
and the action of the Hua automorphism
\[ h_4(t) := \mu(x_4(1_{\mathbb{K}}))^{-1} \mu(x_4(t)) \]
on \(x_1(\mathbb{L}_0) \times x_4(\mathbb{K}_0)\) corresponds to the map
\[ (b, u) \mapsto (b t^{-2}, u t^2) . \]

**Proof**
If we consider the quadrangle \(Q_D(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0)\), then the action of \(h_1(a)\) on \(x_4(\mathbb{K}_0) \times x_1(\mathbb{L}_0)\) corresponds to the map
\[ (u, b) \mapsto (u a^{-1}, b a^2) , \]
and the action of \(h_4(s)\) on \(x_4(\mathbb{K}_0) \times x_1(\mathbb{L}_0)\) corresponds to the map
\[ (u, b) \mapsto (u t^2, b t^{-2}) , \]
cf. (33.12) of [TW].

§ 33.5 Quadrangles of Type \(E_n, F_4\)

For an overview of those quadrangles, we refer to (16.6), (33.14), (16.7) and (33.15) of [TW].
Chapter 34  The Moufang Sets of Moufang Polygons

We give an overview of the Moufang sets appearing as root groups of Moufang triangles and quadrangles.

(34.1) Remark  Let $B_{(1,2)} := \mathcal{X}(\Xi)$ be a parametrized standard Moufang polygon. Then one of the following holds:

(i) We have
$$M^1_{(1,2)} = M(\mathcal{A}) = M^2_{(1,2)}$$
if $B_{(1,2)} = T(\mathcal{A})$ for some alternative division ring $\mathcal{A}$.

(ii) We have
$$M^1_{(1,2)} = M(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma), \
M^2_{(1,2)} = M(\mathbb{K})$$
if $B_{(1,2)} = Q_I(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)$ for some (proper) involutory set $(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)$.

(iii) We have
$$M^1_{(1,2)} = M(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0, q), \
M^2_{(1,2)} = M(\mathbb{K})$$
if $B_{(1,2)} = Q_P(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0, q)$ for some (proper) pseudo-quadratic space $(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma, \mathbb{L}_0, q)$.

(iv) We have
$$M^1_{(1,2)} = M(\mathbb{K}), \
M^2_{(1,2)} = M(\mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K})$$
if $B_{(1,2)} = Q_Q(\mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ for some quadratic space $(\mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ with basepoint $\epsilon$.

(v) We have
$$M^1_{(1,2)} = M(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0), \
M^2_{(1,2)} = M(\mathbb{L}, \mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K}_0^2)$$
if $B_{(1,2)} = Q_I(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0)$ for some (proper) indifferent set $(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \mathbb{L}_0)$.

(vi) We have
$$M^1_{(1,2)} = M(S), \
M^2_{(1,2)} = M(\mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K})$$
if $B_{(1,2)} = Q_E(\mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ for some quadratic space $(\mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ of type $E_n$.

(vii) We have
$$M^1_{(1,2)} = M(\mathbb{F}, \mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{q}), \
M^2_{(1,2)} = M(\mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$$
if $B_{(1,2)} = Q_4(\mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ for some quadratic space $(\mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ of type $F_4$.

(viii) We have
$$M^1_{(1,2)} = M(J, \mathbb{F}, \#), \
M^2_{(1,2)} = M(\mathbb{F})$$
if $B_{(1,2)} = H(J, \mathbb{F}, \#)$ for some hexagonal system $(J, \mathbb{F}, \#)$.

(ix) We have
$$M^1_{(1,2)} = M(\mathbb{K}), \
M^2_{(1,2)} = M(\mathbb{K}, \sigma)$$
if $B_{(1,2)} = O(\mathbb{K}, \sigma)$ for some octagonal system $(\mathbb{K}, \sigma)$.

(34.2) Remark  The Hua automorphisms of lemma (18.9) and chapter 33, which can be defined for each polygon, cf. chapter 33 of [TW], induce the Hua maps on the corresponding Moufang sets. Each Hua automorphism of a polygon which is part of an integrable foundation is induced by an automorphism of the whole building, cf. theorem (2.35).
Part VIII

Foundations
We generalize the definitions and results of chapter 19, i.e., we give the definition of a foundation involving arbitrary Moufang polygons and show that we can attach a foundation to each twin building. Once again, this foundation turns out to be a classifying invariant of the corresponding twin building, and the integrability criterions of chapter 19 hold as well.

Chapter 35 Definition

(35.1) Definition

- Let $M$ be a Coxeter matrix. A foundation of type $M$ is a set
  \[ F := \{ B_{(i,j)}, \gamma_{(i,j,k)} \mid (i, j) \in A(M), (i, j, k) \in G(M) \} \]
  such that:
  
  (F1) Given $(i, j) \in A(M)$, then $B_{(i,j)} = X_{(i,j)}(\Xi_{(i,j)})$ for some symbol $X_{(i,j)}$ of type $m_{ij}$ as
  in notation (32.6) and some parameter system $\Xi_{(i,j)}$ of type $X_{(i,j)}$.
  
  (F2) Given $(i, j) \in A(M)$, we have $B_{(i,j)} = B_{(j,i)}^o$.
  
  (F3) Given $(i, j, k) \in G(M)$, then $\gamma_{(i,j,k)} : M_{(i,j)}^o \to M_{(j,k)}^o$ is an isomorphism of groups
  satisfying
  \[ \gamma_{(i,j,k)}(1_M) = 1_M, \quad \gamma_{(i,j,k)} \circ \gamma_{(k,l,j)}^{-1} \circ \gamma_{(k,l,j)} = \text{id}^o. \]
  
  (F4) Given $(i, j, k), (i, j, l), (i, j, k) \in G(M)$, we have
  \[ \gamma_{(i,j,k)} = \gamma_{(i,j,l)} \circ \gamma_{(i,j,k)} \circ \gamma_{(i,j,l)}. \]

- Given a foundation $F$, we denote the corresponding Coxeter Matrix by $F$.

- A foundation $F$ is a Moufang foundation if each glueing $\gamma := \gamma_{(i,j,k)}$ is a Jordan isomorphism, i.e., we have
  \[ \forall a \in M_{(i,j)}^o, x \in M_{(i,j)} : \gamma(h_{\alpha}(x)) = h_{\gamma(a)}(\gamma(x)). \]

(35.2) Definition

Let $F$ be a foundation over $I = V(F)$ and let $J \subseteq I$. The $J$-residue of $F$ is the foundation
\[ F_J := \{ B_{(i,j)}, \gamma_{(i,j,k)} \mid (i, j) \in J^2 \cap A(F), (i, j, k) \in J^3 \cap G(F) \}. \]

(35.3) Remark

Since a foundation is, in fact, an amalgam of Moufang polygons, an isomorphism of foundations is a system of isomorphism of Moufang polygons preserving the glueings.

(35.4) Definition

Let $F, \tilde{F}$ be foundations.

- An isomorphism $\alpha : F \to \tilde{F}$ is a system $\alpha = \{ \pi, \alpha_{(i,j)} \mid (i, j) \in A(F) \}$ of isomorphisms
  \[ \pi : F \to \tilde{F}, \quad \alpha_{(i,j)} = (\alpha_{(i,j)}^i, \ldots, \alpha_{(i,j)}^j) : B_{(i,j)} \to B_{(\pi(i),\pi(j))} \]
  such that
  \[ \forall (i, j, k) \in G(F) : \quad \tilde{\gamma}_{(\pi(i),\pi(j),\pi(k))} \circ \alpha_{(i,j)}^k = \alpha_{(j,k)}^l \circ \gamma_{(i,j,k)} \]
  and
  \[ \forall (i, j) \in A(F) : \quad \alpha_{(i,j)} = \alpha_{(j,i)}^o. \]

- An isomorphism $\alpha : F \to \tilde{F}$ is special if $F = \tilde{F}$ and $\pi = \text{id}_F$.

- An automorphism of $F$ is an isomorphism $\alpha : F \to F$. 

- 171 -
Chapter 36  Root Group Systems

The fact that a root group systems is a classifying invariant of the corresponding twin building is a fundamental result in twin building theory.

(36.1) Definition  Let \( B \) be a twin building of type \( M \), let \( \Sigma \) be a twin apartment of \( B \) and let \( c \in O_\Sigma \).

- Given \((i, j) \in A(M)\), let \( \alpha_i, \alpha_j \) be the simple roots with respect to \((\Sigma, c)\) and let \( \Theta(i, j) \) be as in theorem (2.32) (d). Then
  \[
  U(i, j) := (U_{i, j}^1, U_{i, j}^2, \ldots, U_{i, j}^j) := \Theta(i, j)
  \]
denotes the root group sequence of \( B \) from \( \alpha_i \) to \( \alpha_j \), which is isomorphic to the root group sequence of \( B_{ij} \) from \( \alpha_i \cap B_{ij} \) to \( \alpha_j \cap B_{ij} \).

- The resulting set
  \[
  \mathcal{U}(B, M, \Sigma, c) := \{ U(i, j) \mid (i, j) \in A(M) \}
  \]
is the root group system of \( B \) based at \((\Sigma, c)\).

(36.2) Lemma  Given \((i, j, k) \in G(F)\), we have \( U_{i, j}^j = U_{j, k}^i \).

Proof  This holds by definition.

(36.3) Definition  Let \( \mathcal{U} := \mathcal{U}(B, M, \Sigma, c) \) and \( \tilde{\mathcal{U}} := \mathcal{U}(\tilde{B}, \tilde{M}, \tilde{\Sigma}, \tilde{c}) \) be root group systems.

- An isomorphism \( \alpha : \mathcal{U} \to \tilde{\mathcal{U}} \) is a system
  \[
  \alpha = \{ \pi, \alpha(i, j) \mid (i, j) \in A(M) \}
  \]
of isomorphisms
  \[
  \pi : M \to \tilde{M}, \quad \alpha(i, j) : U(i, j) \to \tilde{U}(\pi(i), \pi(j))
  \]
of root group sequences such that
  \[
  \forall (i, j, k) \in G(M) : \alpha(i, j)|U_{i, j}^j = \alpha(j, k)|U_{j, k}^i, \quad \forall (i, j) \in A(M) : \alpha(i, j) = \alpha_{(i, j)}^a.
  \]
- An isomorphism \( \alpha : \mathcal{U} \to \tilde{\mathcal{U}} \) is special if \( M = \tilde{M} \) and \( \pi = \text{id}_M \).
- An automorphism of \( \mathcal{U} \) is an isomorphism \( \alpha : \mathcal{U} \to \mathcal{U} \).

(36.4) Theorem  Two root group systems \( \mathcal{U}(B, M, \Sigma, c) \) and \( \mathcal{U}(\tilde{B}, M, \tilde{\Sigma}, \tilde{c}) \) of a twin building \( B \) are specially isomorphic.

Proof  This is a consequence of theorem (2.22).

(36.5) Theorem  Let \( \mathcal{U} := \mathcal{U}(B, M, \Sigma, c) \) be a root group system of a twin building \( B \) which satisfies condition (CO). Then the isomorphism class of \( \mathcal{U} \) is a classifying invariant of the isomorphism class of \( B \).

Proof  This is a consequence of the extension theorem (2.23).
Chapter 37 Foundations and Root Group Systems

Given a root group system, there is a natural way to attach a foundation to it.

(37.1) Definition Let $\mathcal{U}(B, M, \Sigma, c)$ be a root group system.

- Given $(i, j) \in A(M)$, there is a symbol $X_{(i, j)}$ and a parameter system $\Xi_{(i, j)}$ such that $U_{(i, j)} \cong X_{(i, j)}(\Xi_{(i, j)})$. In particular, there is a system of parametrizations

$$x_{(i, j)}^*: M_{(i, j)}^* \to U_{(i, j)}^*, \ t \mapsto x_{(i, j)}^*(t), \ * \in \{i, j\}$$

extending to the defining relations for $X_{(i, j)}(\Xi_{(i, j)})$. Such a parametrization yields an opposite system of parametrizations

$$x_{(j, i)}^*: (M_{(i, j)}^*)^o \to U_{(j, i)}^*, \ t \mapsto x_{(j, i)}^*(\text{id}^o(t)), \ * \in \{j, i\}.$$  

The resulting set

$$\Lambda := \{X_{(i, j)}(\Xi_{(i, j)}) \mid (i, j) \in A(M)\}$$

is a parameter system for $\mathcal{U}$.

- Given $(i, j, k) \in G(M)$ and parametrizations $X_{(i, j)}(\Xi_{(i, j)})$ and $X_{(j, k)}(\Xi_{(j, k)})$, we define the glueing $\gamma_{(i, j, k)}: M_{(i, j)}^* \to M_{(j, k)}^*$ by

$$x_{(j, i)}^j(t) = x_{(j, k)}^j(\gamma_{(i, j, k)}(t))$$

which is justified by lemma (36.2). Then $\gamma_{(i, j, k)}$ is an isomorphism of groups satisfying $\gamma_{(i, j, k)} = \text{id}^o \circ \gamma_{(i, j, l)}^{-1} \circ \text{id}^o$. By lemma (32.16), (32.17), (32.18) and (32.19), we may adjust all the parametrizations such that

$$\forall \ (i, j, k) \in G(M) : \ \gamma_{(i, j, k)}(1_M) = 1_M.$$

In the first instance, we have to adjust the glueings connecting quadrangles of type $F_4$ (for which we need remark (32.21)) since we have the least flexibility in this case: The element $1_B$ is an element in the corresponding defect.

(37.2) Lemma Given a root group system $\mathcal{U} := \mathcal{U}(B, M, \Sigma, c)$, a parameter system $\Lambda$ as in definition (37.1) induces a foundation

$$F(\mathcal{U}, \Lambda) = \{X_{(i, j)}(\Xi_{(i, j)}), \gamma_{(i, j, k)} \mid (i, j) \in A(M), (i, j, k) \in G(M)\}.$$  

Proof

We emphasize that the glueings in definition (37.1) are identifications with respect to directed edges. Given $(i, j, k), (i, j, l), (l, j, k) \in G(M)$ and $t \in M_{(i, j)}^*$, we have

$$x_{(j, k)}^i(\gamma_{(i, j, k)}(t)) = x_{(i, j)}^i(t) = x_{(i, j)}^i(\gamma_{(i, j, l)}(t))$$

and thus $\gamma_{(i, j, k)} = \gamma_{(i, j, l)} \circ \text{id}^o \circ \gamma_{(i, j, l)}$. □

(37.3) Definition A foundation $F$ is integrable if it is the foundation of a twin building $B$, i.e., if there are a root group system $\mathcal{U} := \mathcal{U}(B, M, \Sigma, c)$ and a parameter system $\Lambda$ for $\mathcal{U}$ such that $F = F(\mathcal{U}, \Lambda)$.

(37.4) Theorem Let $F$ be an integrable foundation. Then $F$ is a Moufang foundation.
Part VIII Foundations

**Theorem**
Let \( (i,j,k) \in G(F) \) and \( \gamma := \gamma_{(i,j,k)} \). If we set

\[
\begin{align*}
    h(a) &:= \mu(x^j_{(i,j)}(1_M))^{-1} \mu(x^i_{(i,j)}(a)), & a \in (M^j_{(i,j)})^*, \\
    \tilde{h}(a) &:= \mu(x^j_{(j,k)}(1_M))^{-1} \mu(x^i_{(j,k)}(a)), & a \in (M^j_{(j,k)})^*,
\end{align*}
\]

we have

\[
\tilde{h}(\gamma(a)) = \mu(x^j_{(j,k)}(1_M))^{-1} \mu(x^i_{(j,k)}(\gamma(a))) = \mu(x^j_{(i,j)}(1_M))^{-1} \mu(x^i_{(i,j)}(a)) = h(a)
\]

for each \( a \in M^j_{(i,j)} \). Moreover, we have

\[
x^i_{(j,j)}(x^{h(a)}(x)) = x^i_{(j,j)}(h_u(x)), \quad x^i_{(j,k)}(y^{h(b)}) = x^i_{(j,k)}(\tilde{h}_b(y))
\]

for all \( a \in (M^j_{(i,j)})^*, x \in M^j_{(i,j)}, b \in (M^j_{(j,k)})^*, y \in M^j_{(j,k)} \). Combining these two facts yields

\[
x^i_{(j,k)}(\gamma(h_u(x))) = x^i_{(j,j)}(h_u(x)) = x^i_{(j,j)}(x^{h(a)}) = x^i_{(j,k)}(\gamma(x)) \tilde{h}_b(x) = x^i_{(j,k)}(\tilde{h}_b(\tilde{h}_b(\gamma(x))))
\]

and thus \( \gamma(h_u(x)) = \tilde{h}_b(x)\gamma(x) \) for all \( a \in (M^j_{(i,j)})^*, x \in M^j_{(i,j)} \).

\[\blacklozenge\]

**Remark**

The following result provides an integrability criterion.

**Definition**
Let \( F \) be a foundation.

- Let \( (\tilde{F}, \varphi) \) be a cover of \( F \). Then the foundation

\[
F(\tilde{F}, \varphi) := \{ B_{(i,j)}, \tilde{\gamma}_{(i,j,k)} \mid (i,j) \in A(\tilde{F}), (i,j,k) \in G(\tilde{F}) \}
\]

with

\[
\forall (i,j) \in A(\tilde{F}) : \tilde{B}_{(i,j)} = B_{(\varphi(i), \varphi(j))}, \quad \forall (i,j,k) \in G(\tilde{F}) : \tilde{\gamma}_{(i,j,k)} = \gamma_{(\varphi(i), \varphi(j), \varphi(k))}
\]

is the cover corresponding to \( (\tilde{F}, \varphi) \).

- A foundation \( \tilde{F} \) is a cover of \( F \) if there is a cover \( (\tilde{F}, \varphi) \) of \( F \) such that

\[
\tilde{F} \cong F(\tilde{F}, \varphi).
\]

**Theorem**
Let \( F \) be a foundation and let \( \tilde{F} \) be a cover of \( F \). Then \( F \) is integrable if \( \tilde{F} \) is integrable.

**Proof**
This is a consequence of theorem C in \([\text{MLoc}]\).

**Remark**
The next step is to show that the foundation attached to a root group system is unique up to isomorphism. Moreover, we want to prove that the building corresponding to an integrable foundation is unique up to isomorphism.

**Proposition**
Let \( \mathcal{U} := \mathcal{U}(B, M, \Sigma, c) \) and \( \tilde{\mathcal{U}} := \mathcal{U}(\tilde{B}, \tilde{M}, \tilde{\Sigma}, \tilde{c}) \) be root group systems and let \( \Lambda \) and \( \tilde{\Lambda} \) be parameter systems for \( \mathcal{U} \) and \( \tilde{\mathcal{U}} \), respectively. Then the following holds:

(a) An isomorphism \( \tilde{\alpha} : F(\mathcal{U}, \Lambda) \to F(\tilde{\mathcal{U}}, \tilde{\Lambda}) \) induces an isomorphism \( \alpha : \mathcal{U} \to \tilde{\mathcal{U}} \).

(b) An isomorphism \( \alpha : \mathcal{U} \to \tilde{\mathcal{U}} \) induces an isomorphism \( \tilde{\alpha} : F(\mathcal{U}, \Lambda) \to F(\tilde{\mathcal{U}}, \tilde{\Lambda}) \).
Corollary
Let

\[ \alpha_{(i,j)} : U_{(i,j)} \to \bar{U}_{(\pi(i),\pi(j))} \]

induces an isomorphism

\[ \tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)} : \mathcal{X}_{(i,j)}(\Xi_{(i,j)}) \to \mathcal{X}_{(i,j)}(\tilde{\Xi}_{(\pi(i),\pi(j))}) \]

and vice versa. Given \((i,j) \in A(M)\), we have

\[ \alpha_{(i,j)} = \alpha_{(j,i)}^0 \iff \tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)} = \tilde{\alpha}_{(j,i)}^0 . \]

Now we may go on as in the proof of proposition (19.16).

\[ \square \]

Chapter 38 Reparametrizations and Isomorphisms

The concept of reparametrizations is quite similar to that of isomorphisms. However, we deal with a single foundation and produce (in fact, all the) foundations which are isomorphic to a given one. Moreover, this concept allows us to complete the proof that a foundation is a classifying invariant of the corresponding twin building.

(38.1) Definition Let \( \mathcal{F} \) be a foundation.

- A system of reparametrizations

\[ \alpha := \{ \alpha_{(i,j)} \mid (i,j) \in A(F) \} \]

satisfying \( \alpha_{(i,j)} = \alpha_{(j,i)}^0 \) for each \((i,j) \in A(F)\) and

\[ \gamma_{(i,j,k)} \circ \alpha_{(i,j)}^j(1) = \alpha_{(j,k)}^j(1) \]

for each \((i,j,k) \in G(F)\) is a reparametrization for \( \mathcal{F} \).

- Given a reparametrization \( \alpha \) for \( \mathcal{F} \), we set

\[ \mathcal{F}_\alpha := \{ \mathcal{X}_{(i,j)}(\tilde{\Xi}_{(i,j)}), \tilde{\gamma}_{(i,j,k)}(\tilde{\Xi}_{(i,j)}) \mid (i,j) \in A(F), (i,j,k) \in G(F) \} \]

with

\[ \tilde{\gamma}_{(i,j,k)} := (\alpha_{(j,k)}^j)^{-1} \circ \gamma_{(i,j,k)} \circ \alpha_{(i,j)}^j \]

for each \((i,j,k) \in G(F)\).

(38.2) Lemma Let \( \mathcal{U} := \mathcal{U}(\mathcal{B}, M, \Sigma, c) \) be a root group system, let \( \mathcal{F} := \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{U}, \Lambda) \) for some parameter system \( \Lambda \) for \( \mathcal{U} \), let \( \alpha \) be a reparametrization for \( \mathcal{F} \) and let \( \tilde{\Lambda} \) be the parameter system induced by \( \alpha \). Then we have \( \tilde{\mathcal{F}} := \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{U}, \tilde{\Lambda}) = \mathcal{F}_\alpha \).

Proof
We have

\[ x_{(j,k)}^j(\tilde{\gamma}_{(i,j,k)}(t)) = \tilde{x}_{(i,j)}^j(t) = x_{(i,j)}^j(\alpha_{(i,j)}^j(t)) \]

\[ = x_{(i,j)}^j(\gamma_{(i,j,k)} \circ \alpha_{(i,j)}^j(t)) = \tilde{x}_{(j,k)}^j((\alpha_{(j,k)}^j)^{-1} \circ \gamma_{(i,j,k)} \circ \alpha_{(i,j)}^j(t)) \]

for each \( t \in \tilde{M}_{(i,j)}^j \).

(38.3) Corollary Let \( \mathcal{U} := \mathcal{U}(\mathcal{B}, M, \Sigma, c) \) be a root group system, let \( \mathcal{F} := \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{U}, \Lambda) \) for some parameter system \( \Lambda \) for \( \mathcal{U} \) and let

\[ \alpha := \{ \pi, \alpha_{(i,j)} \mid (i,j) \in A(F) \} : \mathcal{F} \to \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \]

be an isomorphism. Then \( \tilde{\mathcal{F}} \) is integrable.
Part VIII Foundations

**Proof**
Take \( \tilde{\Xi}_{(i,j)} := \Xi(\pi(i),\pi(j)), (\alpha^i_{(i,j)})^{-1}, \ldots, (\alpha^j_{(i,j)})^{-1} \) as reparametrization for \( X_{(i,j)}(\Xi_{(i,j)}) \), then replace \( i \in I \) by \( \pi(i) \in \tilde{I} \). The resulting parameter system \( \Lambda \) satisfies
\[
F(U, \Lambda) = \tilde{F}.
\]
\( \square \)

(38.4) **Theorem** The isomorphism class of an integrable foundations \( F = F(U, \Lambda) \) is a classifying invariant of the isomorphism class of the corresponding building.

**Proof** This results from corollary (38.3), proposition (37.9) and theorem (36.5).
\( \square \)

(38.5) **Remark** The following theorem shows that the concept of reparametrization is useful if we want to determine all the foundations isomorphic to a given foundation \( F \).

(38.6) **Theorem** Let \( F, \tilde{F} \) be foundations with \( F = \tilde{F} \). Then the following holds:

(a) Let \( \tilde{\alpha} = \{ \tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)} \mid (i,j) \in A(F) \} : F \to \tilde{F} \) be a special isomorphism. Then there is a reparametrization \( \alpha \) of \( F \) such that \( F_\alpha = \tilde{F} \).

(b) Let \( \alpha = \{ \alpha_{(i,j)} \mid (i,j) \in A(F) \} \) be a reparametrization for \( F \) such that \( F_\alpha = \tilde{F} \). Then there is a special isomorphism \( \tilde{\alpha} : F \to \tilde{F} \).

**Proof**

(a) If we take \( \alpha := \{ \alpha_{(i,j)} \mid (i,j) \in A(F) \} \) with
\[
\alpha_{(i,j)} := \{ \tilde{\Xi}_{(i,j)}, (\tilde{\alpha}^i_{(i,j)})^{-1}, \ldots, (\tilde{\alpha}^j_{(i,j)})^{-1} \}
\]
as reparametrization for \( F \), then \( F_\alpha = \tilde{F} \).

(b) We have
\[
\alpha_{(i,j)} = \{ \tilde{\Xi}_{(i,j)}, \tilde{\alpha}^i_{(i,j)}, \ldots, \tilde{\alpha}^j_{(i,j)} \}
\]
for each \( (i,j) \in A(F) \), thus \( \tilde{\alpha} := \{ \text{id}_F, \tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)} \mid (i,j) \in A(F) \} : F \to \tilde{F} \) with
\[
\tilde{\alpha}_{(i,j)} := \{ (\alpha^i_{(i,j)})^{-1}, \ldots, (\alpha^j_{(i,j)})^{-1} \}
\]
is an isomorphism.
\( \square \)

(38.7) **Remark**

(a) Let \( F \) and \( \tilde{F} \) be foundations and let
\[
\alpha = \{ \pi, \alpha_{(i,j)} \mid (i,j) \in A(F) \} : F \to \tilde{F}
\]
be an isomorphism. As we may replace \( i \in V(F) \) by \( \pi(i) \in V(\tilde{F}) \), we may consider \( \alpha \) as special. Thus it suffices to determine all foundations which are specially isomorphic to \( F \). The remaining foundations isomorphic to \( F \) are obtained by relabelings of the vertex set.

(b) The theorem is useful if we want to show that two given foundations \( F \) and \( \tilde{F} \) with isomorphic residues \( R \) and \( \tilde{R} \) are isomorphic. In this case, we may replace \( R \) by \( \tilde{R} \), observing that there is a relabeling of the corresponding vertices involved.
Part IX

443-Foundations
Now we are ready to turn to the classification of integrable 443-foundations, whose Moufang polygons are two quadrangles and one triangle and whose Coxeter diagrams are complete graphs. The first step is to exclude quadrangles of type $E_4$, of type $F_4$ and of indifferent type. Then we turn to unitary quadrangles, i.e., quadrangles of pseudo-quadratic form or involutory type. As we restrict to proper parameter systems, there are not many possibilities to glue these polygons together.

The final class is that of quadrangles of quadratic form type, which is rich in integrable foundations. In order to avoid characteristic 2 trouble, there is one point where we restrict to proper quadratic spaces although a small gap is the consequence.

**Chapter 39 Definition**

(39.1) **Definition** A 443-foundation is a foundation

$$\mathcal{F} := \{B_{(1,2)}, B_{(2,3)}, B_{(3,1)}, \gamma_{(1,2,3)}, \gamma_{(2,3,1)}, \gamma_{(3,1,2)}\}$$

such that $B_{(1,2)}$ and $B_{(2,3)}$ are quadrangles and $B_{(3,1)}$ is a triangle.

(39.2) **Notation**

- Given a 443-foundation $\mathcal{F}$, we set
  $$\gamma_1 := \gamma_{(3,1,2)}$$
  $$\gamma_2 := \gamma_{(1,2,3)}$$
  $$\gamma_3 := \gamma_{(2,3,1)}$$

- Throughout the rest of this part, $\mathcal{F}$ is an integrable 443-foundation.

**Chapter 40 The Quadrangles Are Not of Type $E_n$**

(40.1) **Lemma** Let $B = (x_1(M_1), \ldots, x_4(M_4))$ be a parametrized standard quadrangle of type $E_n$. Then the following holds:

(a) The Moufang set $M_1$ is non-commutative.

(b) We have $M_4 = M(L_0, K, q)$ for some quadratic space $(L_0, K, q)$ of type $E_n$.

**Proof**

(a) This results from (38.10) of [TW].

(b) This holds by definition, cf. remark (34.1) (vi) or example (16.6) of [TW].

(40.2) **Theorem** The quadrangles are not of type $E_n$.

**Proof**

Suppose that $B_{(1,2)}$ or $B_{(2,1)}$ is a parametrized standard quadrangle of type $E_n$. The glueing $\gamma_1 : M_{(3,1)}^1 \to M_{(1,2)}^1$ is a Jordan isomorphism. We have $M_{(3,1)}^1 = M(\mathbb{K})$ for some alternative division ring $\mathbb{K}$, thus $M_{(3,1)}^1$ is commutative. Hence we have $M_{(3,1)}^1 = M(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q})$ for some quadratic space $(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q})$ of type $E_n$ by lemma (40.1).

Notice that $(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q})$ is proper by remark (4.27). By theorem (31.7), the alternative division ring $\mathbb{A}$ is quadratic over a subfield $F$ of its center $K := Z(\mathbb{A})$ with $N := N_F^2$, and $(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q})$ and $(\mathbb{A}, F, N)$ are isomorphic as quadratic spaces. In particular, we have $\tilde{K} \cong F$ and

$$\dim_{\mathbb{K}} \tilde{L}_0 = \dim_{\mathbb{F}} \mathbb{A} \in \{1, 2, 4, 8\} \cap \{6, 8, 12\} = \{8\}.$$  

As a consequence, $(\mathbb{O}, \mathbb{K}, N) = (\mathbb{A}, F, N)$ is of type $(v)$ and $(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q})$ is of type $E_7$. But by corollary (4.29) (c), we have $(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q}) \not\cong (\mathbb{O}, \mathbb{K}, N)$ as quadratic spaces $\not\sim$.  

\[ \text{Q.E.D.} \]
Chapter 41 The Quadrangles Are Not of Type $F_4$

(41.1) **Remark** Let $Q_F(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q) = (x_1(\mathbb{M}_1), x_2(\mathbb{M}_2), x_3(\mathbb{M}_3), x_4(\mathbb{M}_4))$ be a quadrangle of type $F_4$, where $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ is a quadratic space of type $F_4$.

(a) By remark (21.18) of [TW], the quadrangle $Q_F(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ is an extension of the quadrangle $Q_Q(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$, thus we have $M_4 = M(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$.

(b) By remark (21.18) of [TW] again, the quadrangle $Q_F^o(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)^o$ is an extension of the quadrangle $Q_Q(L_0, \mathbb{F}, q)$, thus we have $M_4 = M(L_0, \mathbb{F}, q)$, where $(L_0, \mathbb{F}, q)$ is the quadratic space of type $F_4$ as defined in (14.12) of [TW], cf. (14.13) of [TW].

(41.2) **Theorem** The quadrangles are not of type $F_4$.

**Proof** Suppose that $B_{(1,2)}$ or $B_{(2,1)}$ is a parametrized standard quadrangle of type $F_4$. The glueing $\gamma_1 : M_4^{(3,1)} \rightarrow M_4^{(1,2)}$ is a Jordan isomorphism. We have $M_4^{(3,1)} = M(\hat{A})$ for some alternative division ring $\hat{A}$. By remark (41.1), we have $M_4^{(1,2)} = M(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ for some quadratic space $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ of type $F_4$. By theorem (31.7), the alternative division ring $\hat{A}$ is quadratic over a subfield $\hat{F}$ of its center $\hat{K} := Z(\hat{A})$, and $(L_0, \mathbb{K}, q)$ and $(\hat{A}, \hat{F}, N_{\hat{F}}^\hat{A})$ are isomorphic as quadratic spaces, which contradicts lemma (4.36).

Chapter 42 The Quadrangles Are Not of Indifferent Type

(42.1) **Remark** Let $B := Q_D(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, L_0) = (x_1(\mathbb{M}_1), x_2(\mathbb{M}_2), x_3(\mathbb{M}_3), x_4(\mathbb{M}_4))$ be a quadrangle of indifferent type, where $(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, L_0)$ is a proper indifferent set.

(a) By definition, the Moufang set $M_4 = M(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, L_0)$ is of indifferent type.

(b) By remark (35.9) of [TW], we have $B^c = Q_D(\mathbb{L}, \mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K}_0^2)$, thus we have $M_4 = M(\mathbb{L}, \mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K}_0^2)$, where $(\mathbb{L}, \mathbb{L}_0, \mathbb{K}_0^2)$ is the opposite of $(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, L_0)$, which is proper by lemma (6.4).

(42.2) **Theorem** The quadrangles are not of indifferent type.

**Proof** Suppose that $B_{(1,2)}$ or $B_{(2,1)}$ is a parametrized standard quadrangle of indifferent type. By remark (42.1), we have $M_4^{(1,2)} = M(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, L_0)$ for some proper indifferent set $(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, L_0)$, we have $M_4^{(3,1)} = M(\hat{A})$ for some alternative division ring $\hat{A}$, and the glueing $\gamma_1 : M_4^{(3,1)} \rightarrow M_4^{(1,2)}$ is a Jordan isomorphism, which contradicts theorem (31.24).

(42.3) **Remark** Now we are done with the exclusion of certain families of quadrangles. Next we pass to unitary 443-foundations, which can not be obtained as fixed point foundations of covers. As in the $A_2$-case with positive glueings, the parametrizing structures are quaternion division algebras, and the existence can be shown via Tits indices.

Then we finally come to 443-foundations involving quadrangles of quadratic form type, which can be constructed as fixed point foundations of covers.

In both cases however, we leave off the existence proofs which require different kinds of techniques.
Chapter 43  Unitary Quadrangles

As quadrangles of pseudo-quadratic form type are extensions of quadrangles of involutory type (which are not necessarily of purely involutory type) and as quadrangles of involutory type can be considered as quadrangles of pseudo-quadratic form type of a non-proper pseudo-quadratic space, it is natural to treat them in a common setup. As a consequence, we sometimes omit the assumption of a proper parameter system to obtain a general statement for both the families.

§ 43.1 Definitions

(43.1) Definition

- A foundation\[ \mathcal{F} := \{ B_{(1,2)} = Q_I(\hat{\Xi}), B_{(2,3)} = Q_I(\Xi), B_{(3,1)} = T(\hat{\mathbb{K}}), \gamma_{(1,2,3)}, \gamma_{(2,3,1)}, \gamma_{(3,1,2)} \} \]
  for some proper involutory sets \( \Xi \) and \( \hat{\Xi} \) is a \( 443 \)-foundation of involutory type.
- A foundation\[ \mathcal{F} := \{ B_{(1,2)} = Q_P(\hat{\Xi}), B_{(2,3)} = Q_P(\Xi), B_{(3,1)} = T(\hat{\mathbb{K}}), \gamma_{(1,2,3)}, \gamma_{(2,3,1)}, \gamma_{(3,1,2)} \} \]
  for some proper pseudo-quadratic spaces \( \Xi \) and \( \hat{\Xi} \) is a \( 443 \)-foundation of pseudo-quadratic form type.
- A \( 443 \)-foundation is of unitary type if it is either of involutory type or of pseudo-quadratic form type.

(43.2) Notation  Given a \( 443 \)-foundation \( \mathcal{F} \), we set \[ \gamma_1 := \gamma_{(3,1,2)}, \quad \gamma_2 := \gamma_{(1,2,3)}, \quad \gamma_3 := \gamma_{(2,3,1)}. \]

(43.3) Lemma  Let \( \mathcal{F} \) be an integrable \( 443 \)-foundation of unitary type. Then \( \hat{\mathbb{K}} \) is associative.

Proof  The glueings \( \gamma_3 = \gamma_{(1,3,2)} \) and \( \gamma_1 = \gamma_{(3,1,2)} \) are positive or negative by Hua’s theorem. In particular, \( \hat{\mathbb{K}} \) is associative.

(43.4) Lemma  Let \( \mathbb{K} \) be a skew-field, let \( M \subseteq \mathbb{K} \) and let \( a, b, c \in \mathbb{K} \) such that

\[ 1_{\mathbb{K}} \in M, \quad \forall x \in M : \quad axb = cx. \]

Then we have \[ b \in C_\mathbb{K}(M), \quad M \subseteq C_\mathbb{K}(b). \]

Proof  We have \[ c = c \cdot 1_{\mathbb{K}} = a \cdot 1_{\mathbb{K}} \cdot b = ab \]
and therefore \[ \forall x \in M : \quad xb = a^{-1}(axb) = a^{-1}(abx) = bx. \]
(43.5) Theorem Let $\mathcal{F}$ be an integrable 443-foundation of pseudo-quadratic form type with $\Xi = \Xi^0$ and $\gamma_2 = \text{id}_\Pi^0$ and let $\pi_t : T \to K$, $(a, t) \mapsto t$.

If one of the glueings is negative, we have

$$\pi_t(T) \subseteq Z(K).$$

In particular, we have $K_0 \subseteq Z(K)$.

Proof Assume that $\gamma_3 = \gamma_{(2, 3, 1)}$ is negative (otherwise, we consider the opposite buildings and glueings).

By taking $(K, \gamma_3, \gamma_3, \gamma_3)$ as reparametrization for $\mathcal{T}(\tilde{K})$, we may assume

$$\tilde{K} = K, \quad \gamma_3 = \text{id}_K.$$

If we set

$$h(s) := \mu(x_{(3, 1)}^1(1_K))^{-1} \mu(x_{(3, 1)}^1(s^{-1})),$$

$$\tilde{h}(s) := \mu(x_{(1, 2)}^1(1_K))^{-1} \mu(x_{(1, 2)}^1(s^{-1})),$$

we have

$$h(s) = \mu(x_{(3, 1)}^1(1_K))^{-1} \mu(x_{(3, 1)}^1(s^{-1})) = \mu(x_{(1, 2)}^1(1_K))^{-1} \mu(x_{(1, 2)}^1(\gamma_1(s)^{-1})) = \tilde{h}(\gamma_1(s))$$

for each $s \in K^*$,

$$x_{(2, 3)}^3(t) = x_{(3, 1)}^3(t) = x_{(3, 1)}^3(ts) = x_{(3, 1)}^3(ts)$$

for all $s \in K^*$, $t \in K$ by lemma (18.9) and

$$x_{(2, 3)}^2(a, t)^h(s) = x_{(1, 2)}^2(a, t)^{\tilde{h}(\gamma_1(s))}$$

$$(a \cdot s, s^\sigma \cdot t \cdot \gamma_1(s)) = x_{(2, 3)}^2(a \cdot s, s^\sigma \cdot t \cdot \gamma_1(s) )$$

for all $s \in K^*$, $(a, t) \in T$ by lemma (33.4). Given $s \in K^*$, the Hua automorphism $h(\gamma_1^{-1}(s))$ induces an automorphism $\alpha_s \in \text{Aut}(B_{(2, 3)})$ which satisfies

$$x_{(2, 3)}^2(a, t) \mapsto x_{(2, 3)}^2(a \cdot s, s^\sigma \cdot t \cdot \gamma_1^{-1}(s)),$$

$$x_{(2, 3)}^3(t) \mapsto x_{(2, 3)}^3(t \cdot \gamma_1^{-1}(s)).$$

If we set $\tilde{\alpha} := \alpha_{(2, 3)}(s, \text{id}_K, \text{id}_K, \text{id}_K)$ as in (37.33) of [TW], then $\tilde{\alpha}$ satisfies

$$x_{(2, 3)}^2(a, t) \mapsto x_{(2, 3)}^2(a \cdot s, s^\sigma \cdot t \cdot \gamma_1^{-1}(s)),

x_{(2, 3)}^3(t) \mapsto x_{(2, 3)}^3(t \cdot \gamma_1^{-1}(s)).$$

By (37.33) of [TW], there is an element $c \in K_0$ such that

$$\forall t \in \pi_t(T) : \quad s^\sigma ts = ct.$$

Lemma (43.4) implies that we have

$$\pi_t(T) \subseteq \mathcal{C}_K(s).$$

Since $s \in K^*$ is arbitrary, it follows that

$$\pi_t(T) \subseteq Z(K).$$

(43.6) Remark Notice that we don’t need the fact that $\Xi$ is proper by definition of our parameter systems, i.e., if we allow $\Xi$ to be non-proper, the theorem remains true. As a consequence, we get a similar result for 443-foundations of involutory type which can be considered as 443-foundations of pseudo-quadratic form type for some non-proper pseudo-quadratic spaces, cf. lemma (43.19).
§ 43.2 Quadrangles of Pseudo-Quadratic Form Type

(43.7) Notation Throughout this paragraph, \( F \) is an integrable 443-foundation such that at least one quadrangle is of pseudo-quadratic form type.

(43.8) Lemma The foundation \( F \) is of pseudo-quadratic form type.

Proof We may assume that \( B_{(1,2)} \) or \( B_{(2,1)} \) is a standard quadrangle \( Q_P(\hat{\mathbb{K}}, \hat{\mathbb{K}}_0, \hat{\sigma}, \hat{L}_0, \hat{q}) \) of pseudo-quadratic form type and thus \( M^1_{(1,2)} = M(\hat{\mathbb{K}}) \) or \( M^1_{(1,2)} = M(\hat{\mathbb{K}}, \hat{\mathbb{K}}_0, \hat{\sigma}, \hat{L}_0, \hat{q}) \). But since the map \( \gamma_1 : M(\hat{\mathbb{K}}) = M^1_{(1,2)} \rightarrow M^1_{(1,2)} \) is a Jordan isomorphism and Moufang sets of linear type are commutative while Moufang sets of pseudo-quadratic form type are not, we obtain that

\[
B_{(1,2)} = Q_P(\hat{\mathbb{K}}, \hat{\mathbb{K}}_0, \hat{\sigma}, \hat{L}_0, \hat{q})^0 .
\]

Now \( B_{(2,3)} \) is a Moufang quadrangle such that \( M^2_{(2,3)} \) is non-commutative, and since we excluded quadrangles of type \( E_n \) in chapter 40, we have

\[
B_{(2,3)} = Q_P(\hat{\Xi})
\]

for some proper pseudo-quadratic space \( \Xi \). \( \square \)

(43.9) Notation Until proposition (43.12), \( F \) is an integrable 443-foundation of pseudo-quadratic form type such that \( K \) is non-commutative.

(43.10) Remark By theorem (8.1), the Jordan isomorphism \( \gamma_2 = \gamma_{(1,2,3)} : \hat{T} \rightarrow T \) is induced by an isomorphism \( \Phi : \hat{\Xi}^o \rightarrow \Xi \) of pseudo-quadratic spaces. By taking \( (\Xi^o, \phi^{-1}, \phi^{-1}, \Phi^{-1}) \) as reparametrization for \( Q_P(\hat{\Xi}) \), we may assume

\[
\hat{\Xi} = \Xi^o , \quad \gamma_2 = \text{id}_{\hat{\Xi}}^o .
\]

(43.11) Lemma Both the glueings \( \gamma_1 \) and \( \gamma_3 \) are positive.

Proof If one of the glueings is negative, then we have

\[
K_0 \subseteq \pi_K(T) \subseteq Z(K)
\]

by theorem (43.5), thus \( (K, K_0, \sigma) \) is non-proper by lemma (5.2). By remark (9.9), we have

\[
(K, K_0, \sigma) = (\mathbb{H}, Z(\mathbb{H}), \sigma_s)
\]

for some quaternion division algebra \( \mathbb{H} \). Given \( a \in L_0 \), we have

\[
q(a) \in \pi_\mathbb{H}(T) \subseteq Z(\mathbb{H}) , \quad a = 0_{L_0}
\]

and thus \( L_0 = \{ 0_{L_0} \} \). But then \( \Xi \) is non-proper. \( \square \)

(43.12) Proposition The skew-field \( K \) is a quaternion division algebra and \( F \) is isomorphic to the foundation

\[
F_{443}(\Xi) := \{ \hat{B}_{(1,2)} = Q_P(\hat{\Xi}^o), \hat{B}_{(2,3)} = Q_P(\Xi), \hat{B}_{(3,1)} = T(\hat{\Xi}^o), \hat{\gamma}_1 = \sigma_s, \hat{\gamma}_2 = \text{id}_{\hat{\Xi}}^o, \hat{\gamma}_3 = \text{id}_K^o \} .
\]
Proof
As \( \gamma_3 = \gamma_{(2,3,1)} \) is positive, we may take \( (\mathbb{K}^o, \gamma_3^3, \gamma_3^2, \gamma_3) \) as reparametrization for \( \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{K}) \). Therefore, we may assume
\[
\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{K}^o, \quad \gamma_3 = \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{K}^o}.
\]

Let \( s \in \mathbb{K}^o \). As in the proof of proposition (43.20), we obtain an automorphism \( \alpha_s \in \text{Aut}(\mathcal{B}_{(2,3)}) \) satisfying
\[
x_{(2,3)}^2(a, t) \mapsto x_{(2,3)}^2(a \cdot \gamma_1^!(s) \cdot \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{K}^o}(s), \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{K}^o}(s) \cdot \gamma_1(s) \cdot t \cdot \gamma_1^!(s) \cdot \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{K}^o}(s)) \quad \text{and} \quad x_{(2,3)}^3(t) \mapsto x_{(2,3)}^3(t).
\]

By (37.33) of [TW], the map
\[
\varphi_1 : L_0 \to L_0, \quad a \mapsto a \cdot \gamma_1^!(s) \cdot \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{K}^o}(s)
\]
is an isomorphism of vector spaces satisfying
\[
\forall a \in L_0, \quad t \in \mathbb{K} : \quad \varphi_1(a \cdot t) = \varphi_1(a) \cdot t.
\]

As \( \Xi \) is proper, we have \( L_0 \neq \{0_{L_0}\} \) and thus
\[
\forall t \in \mathbb{K} : \quad t \cdot \gamma_1^!(s) \cdot \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{K}^o}(s) = \gamma_1^!(s) \cdot \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{K}^o}(s) \cdot t, \quad \gamma_1^!(s) \cdot \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{K}^o}(s) \in Z(\mathbb{K}).
\]

Since \( \mathbb{K} \) is non-commutative by assumption, lemma (5.6) (b) shows that \( \mathbb{K} \) is a quaternion division algebra and that we have
\[
\gamma_1 = \sigma_s : \mathbb{K}^o \to \mathbb{K}^o.
\]

(43.13) Remark Let \( \mathcal{F} \) be an integrable 443-foundation of pseudo-quadratic form type such that \( \mathbb{K} \) is a field, but \( \mathbb{K} \neq \mathbb{F}_4 \) if \( \text{dim}_{\mathbb{K}} L_0 = 1 \). Then \( (\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma) \) is non-proper by lemma (5.2) and thus quadratic of type (iii) by remark (9.9). Moreover, we may reparametrize as in the non-commutative case, but we cannot get more information concerning the glueing \( \gamma_1 \), i.e., we have
\[
\mathcal{F} \cong \mathcal{F}_{443}(\Xi, \gamma) := \{ \tilde{\mathcal{B}}_{(1,2)} = \mathcal{Q}_p(\Xi^o), \tilde{\mathcal{B}}_{(2,3)} = \mathcal{Q}_p(\Xi), \tilde{\mathcal{B}}_{(3,1)} = \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{K}), \tilde{\gamma}_1 = \gamma, \tilde{\gamma}_2 = \mathrm{id}_T, \tilde{\gamma}_3 = \mathrm{id}_E \}
\]
for some pseudo-quadratic space \( \Xi \) such that \( (\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma) \) is quadratic of type (iii) and for some \( \gamma \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{K}). \)

(43.14) Theorem Let \( \mathcal{F} \) be an integrable 443-foundation such that at least one quadrangle is of pseudo-quadratic form type and such that \( \mathbb{K} \neq \mathbb{F}_4 \) if \( \text{dim}_{\mathbb{K}} L_0 = 1 \), where \( \mathcal{B}_{(3,1)} = \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{K}) \). Then one of the following holds:

(i) We have
\[
\mathcal{F} \cong \mathcal{F}_{443}(\Xi, \gamma) := \{ \tilde{\mathcal{B}}_{(2,1)} = \tilde{\mathcal{B}}_{(2,3)} = \mathcal{Q}_p(\Xi^o), \tilde{\mathcal{B}}_{(3,1)} = \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{K}), \tilde{\gamma}_1 = \sigma_s, \tilde{\gamma}_2 = \mathrm{id}_T, \tilde{\gamma}_3 = \mathrm{id}_E \}
\]
for some proper pseudo-quadratic space \( \Xi = (\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma, L_0, q) \) such that \( \mathbb{K} \) is a quaternion division algebra and \( \sigma_s \) is its standard involution.

(ii) We have
\[
\mathcal{F} \cong \mathcal{F}_{443}(\Xi, \gamma) := \{ \tilde{\mathcal{B}}_{(2,1)} = \tilde{\mathcal{B}}_{(2,3)} = \mathcal{Q}_p(\Xi), \tilde{\mathcal{B}}_{(3,1)} = \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{K}), \tilde{\gamma}_1 = \gamma, \tilde{\gamma}_2 = \mathrm{id}_T, \tilde{\gamma}_3 = \mathrm{id}_E \}
\]
for some proper pseudo-quadratic space \( \Xi = (\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma, L_0, q) \) such that \( (\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma) \) is quadratic of type (iii) and for some \( \gamma \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{K}). \)

Proof
This results from lemma (43.8), proposition (43.12) and remark (43.13). \( \square \)
§ 43.3 Quadrangles of Involutory Type

(43.15) Notation Throughout this paragraph, $\mathcal{F}$ is an integrable 443-foundation such that at least one quadrangle is of involutory type.

(43.16) Lemma The foundation $\mathcal{F}$ is of involutory type.

Proof

We may assume that $\mathcal{B}_{(1,2)}$ or $\mathcal{B}_{(2,1)}$ is a standard quadrangle $\mathcal{Q}_I(\hat{K}, \hat{K}_0, \sigma)$ of involutory type and thus $M^{1}_{(1,2)} = M(\hat{K})$ or $M^{1}_{(1,2)} = M(\hat{K}, \hat{K}_0, \sigma)$. Since $(\hat{K}, \hat{K}_0, \sigma)$ is proper, we have

$$M(\hat{K}) = M^{1}_{(3,1)} \cong M^{1}_{(1,2)} \neq M(\hat{K}, \hat{K}_0, \sigma)$$

by theorem (31.26) and thus

$$\mathcal{B}_{(1,2)} = \mathcal{Q}_I((\hat{K}, \hat{K}_0, \sigma)^o) .$$

Since we excluded quadrangles of type $E_n, F_4$, of indifferent type and of pseudo-quadratic form type in the previous paragraphs, the quadrangle $\mathcal{B}_{(2,3)}$ is either of quadratic form type or of involutory type.

Assume that $\mathcal{B}_{(2,3)}$ is of quadratic form type. Then we have $M^{2}_{(2,3)} = M(\mathcal{K})$ or $M^{3}_{(2,3)} = M(\mathcal{K})$ for some field $\mathcal{K}$. But we have

$$M^{3}_{(2,3)} \cong M^{3}_{(3,1)} = M(\hat{K}) = M^{1}_{(3,1)} \cong M^{1}_{(1,2)} = M(\hat{K}) ,$$

where $\hat{K}$ is a non-commutative skew-field since $(\hat{K}, \hat{K}_0, \tilde{q})$ is proper, and thus $M^{3}_{(2,3)} \neq M(\mathcal{K})$.

Moreover, we have

$$M^{2}_{(2,3)} \cong M^{2}_{(1,2)} = M(\hat{K}, \hat{K}_0, \sigma)$$

and thus $M^{2}_{(2,3)} \neq M(\mathcal{K})$ by theorem (31.26) \footnote{2}.

Therefore, the quadrangle $\mathcal{B}_{(2,3)}$ is of involutory type, i.e., $\mathcal{B}_{(2,3)}$ or $\mathcal{B}_{(3,2)}$ is a standard quadrangle $\mathcal{Q}_I(\mathcal{K}, \mathcal{K}_0, \sigma)$. Since we have

$$M^{3}_{(2,3)} \cong M^{3}_{(3,1)} = M(\hat{K})$$

and $(\mathcal{K}, \mathcal{K}_0, \sigma)$ is proper, we have $M^{3}_{(2,3)} \neq M(\mathcal{K}, \mathcal{K}_0, \sigma)$ by theorem (31.26) again and thus

$$\mathcal{B}_{(2,3)} = \mathcal{Q}_I(\mathcal{K}, \mathcal{K}_0, \sigma) .$$

\( \square \)

(43.17) Notation Throughout the rest of this paragraph, $\mathcal{F}$ is an integrable 443-foundation of involutory type.

(43.18) Remark

By theorem (5.3), the Jordan isomorphism

$$\gamma_2 = \gamma_{(1,2,3)} : \hat{K}_0 \to \mathcal{K}_0$$

is induced by an isomorphism

$$\phi : (\hat{K}, \hat{K}_0, \sigma) \to (\mathcal{K}, \mathcal{K}_0, \sigma) =: \Xi$$

of involutory sets. As a consequence, the map

$$\tilde{\phi} := \phi \circ \sigma^o : (\hat{K}^o, \hat{K}_0^o, \sigma) \to (\mathcal{K}, \mathcal{K}_0, \sigma)$$

is an isomorphism of involutory sets that induces $\gamma_2$ as well. By taking $(\Xi^o, \tilde{\phi}^{-1}, \tilde{\phi}^{-1}, \tilde{\phi}^{-1})$ as reparametrization for $\mathcal{Q}_I(\hat{K}, \hat{K}_0, \sigma)$, we may assume

$$(\hat{K}, \hat{K}_0, \sigma) = (\mathcal{K}^o, \mathcal{K}_0^o, \sigma) , \quad \gamma_2 = id_{\mathcal{K}_0^o} .$$
(43.19) Lemma  Both the glueings $\gamma_1$ and $\gamma_3$ are positive.

Proof  Notice that we have
$$Q_1(\mathbb{K}, K_0, \sigma) = Q_0(\mathbb{K}, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)$$
for $L_0 := \{0\}$, $q := 0$. If one of the glueings is negative, we have
$$K_0 = \pi_\mathbb{K}(T) \subseteq Z(\mathbb{K})$$
by theorem (43.5), where we did not use the fact that $(\mathbb{K}, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)$ is proper in the given setup. But then $(\mathbb{K}, K_0, \sigma)$ is non-proper by lemma (5.2).

(43.20) Proposition  The skew-field $\mathbb{K}$ is a quaternion division algebra and $\mathcal{F}$ is isomorphic to the foundation
$$\mathcal{F}_{443}(\Xi) := \{\widetilde{B}(1,2) = Q_1(\Xi)^0, \widetilde{B}(2,3) = Q_1(\Xi), \widetilde{B}(3,1) = T(\mathbb{K}^0), \gamma_1 = \sigma, \gamma_2 = \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}^0}, \gamma_3 = \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}^0}\}.$$

Proof  As $\gamma_3 = \gamma(\mathbb{K}^0, 1)$ is positive, we may take $(\mathbb{K}^0, \gamma_3^0, \gamma_1^0, \gamma_2^0)$ as reparametrization for $T(\mathbb{K})$. Therefore, we may assume
$$\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{K}^0,$$
$$\gamma_3 = \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}}.$$

- If we set
$$h_1(s) := \mu(x^1_{(1,1)}(1_{K^0}))^{-1} \mu(x^1_{(1,1)}(s^{-1})),$$
$$\tilde{h}_1(s) := \mu(x^1_{(1,1)}(1_{K^0}))^{-1} \mu(x^1_{(1,2)}(s^{-1})),$$
for each $s \in \mathbb{K}^0$,
$$x^1_{(2,3)}(t)^{h_1(s)} = x^1_{(1,1)}(1_{K^0})^{h_1(s)} = x^1_{(3,3)}(1_{K^0}(t) \circ s) = x^1_{(2,3)}(1_{K^0}(s) \cdot t)$$
for all $s \in \mathbb{K}^0$, $t \in \mathbb{K}$ by lemma (18.9) and
$$x^2_{(2,3)}(t)^{h_1(s)} = x^2_{(2,3)}(\text{id}_{\mathbb{K}^0}(t))^{h_1(\gamma_1 t(s))}$$
$$= x^2_{(1,2)}(\gamma_1 t(s) \circ \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}^0}(t) \circ \gamma_1 t(s))^{\gamma_1 t(s)} = x^2_{(3,3)}(\gamma_1 t(s))^{\gamma_1 t(s) \cdot t \cdot \gamma_1 t(s)}$$
for all $s \in \mathbb{K}^0$, $t \in \mathbb{K}$ by lemma (33.2).

- If we set
$$h_3(s) := \mu(x^3_{(1,1)}(1_{K^0}))^{-1} \mu(x^3_{(3,3)}(s)),$$
$$\tilde{h}_3(s) := \mu(x^3_{(1,1)}(1_{K^0}))^{-1} \mu(x^3_{(3,3)}(s)),$$
for each $s \in \mathbb{K}^0$,
$$x^3_{(2,3)}(t)^{h_3(s)} = x^3_{(1,1)}(1_{K^0})^{h_3(s)}$$
$$= x^3_{(1,1)}(1_{K^0}(s^{-1} \circ \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}^0}(t) \circ s^{-1})) = x^3_{(2,3)}(\text{id}_{\mathbb{K}}(s^{-1}) \cdot t \cdot \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}}(s^{-1}))$$
for all $s \in \mathbb{K}^0$, $t \in \mathbb{K}$ by lemma (18.9) and
$$x^2_{(2,3)}(t)^{h_3(s)} = x^2_{(2,3)}(1_{\mathbb{K}}(1_{K^0}(s))) = x^2_{(2,3)}(\text{id}_{\mathbb{K}}(s) \cdot t \cdot \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}}(s))$$
for all $s \in \mathbb{K}^0$, $t \in \mathbb{K}$ by (33.13) of [TW].
Therefore, given \( s \in \mathbb{K}^\circ \), \( h_3(s)h_1(s) \) induces an automorphism \( \alpha_s \in \text{Aut}(\mathcal{B}_{(2,3)}) \) which satisfies
\[
x_{(2,3)}^2(t) \mapsto x_{(2,3)}^2 \left( \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}}^\circ(s)^\sigma \cdot \gamma_1(s)^\sigma \cdot t \cdot \gamma_1(s) \cdot \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}}^\circ(s) \right) , \quad x_{(2,3)}^3(t) \mapsto x_{(2,3)}^3 \left( t \cdot \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}}^\circ(s)^{-1} \right).
\]
If we set \( \tilde{\alpha} := \alpha_{(\text{id}_{\mathbb{K}}^\circ(s),1_\mathbb{K},(\text{id}_{\mathbb{K}^0},\text{id}_{\mathbb{K}^0}))} \) as in (37.33) of [TW], then \( \tilde{\alpha}_s \in \text{Aut}(\mathcal{B}_{(2,3)}) \) satisfies
\[
x_{(2,3)}^2(t) \mapsto x_{(2,3)}^2 \left( \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}}^\circ(s)^\sigma \cdot \gamma_1(s)^\sigma \cdot t \cdot \gamma_1(s) \cdot \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}}^\circ(s) \right) , \quad x_{(2,3)}^3(t) \mapsto x_{(2,3)}^3(t).
\]
By (37.33) of [TW], there is an element \( c \in \mathbb{K}_0^* \) such that
\[
\forall t \in \mathbb{K}_0 : \quad \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}}^\circ(s)^\sigma \cdot \gamma_1(s)^\sigma \cdot t \cdot \gamma_1(s) \cdot \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}}^\circ(s) = c \cdot t .
\]
Lemma (43.4) implies that we have
\[
\gamma_1 = \sigma_s : \mathbb{K}^\circ \rightarrow \mathbb{K}^\circ .
\]

(43.21) Theorem Let \( \mathcal{F} \) be an integrable 434-foundation such that at least one quadrangle is of involutory type. Then we have
\[
\mathcal{F} \cong \mathcal{F}_{434}(\Xi) = \{ \mathcal{B}_{(1,2)}, \mathcal{Q}_1(\Xi^\circ), \mathcal{B}_{(2,3)}, \mathcal{Q}_1(\Xi), \mathcal{B}_{(3,1)} = \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{K}^\circ), \gamma_1 = \sigma_s, \gamma_2 = \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}_0}, \gamma_3 = \text{id}_{\mathbb{K}} \}
\]
for some proper involutory set \( \Xi = (\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma) \) such that \( \mathbb{K} \) is a quaternion division algebra.

Proof
This results from lemma (43.16) and proposition (43.20).

(43.22) Remark
(a) By remark (11.2) of [TW], the pair \( (\mathbb{K}, \sigma) \) uniquely determines \( \mathbb{K}_0 \) if we have \( \text{Char} \mathbb{K} \neq 2 \).
(b) By lemma (3.1.6) of [K] and (35.7) of [TW], we may assume \( \sigma = \gamma_s \) if we have \( \text{Char} \mathbb{K} = 2 \) and \( \sigma \) is an involution of the first kind.

Chapter 44 Quadrangles of Quadratic Form Type

By the previous chapters, there is only one case left: Both the quadrangles are of quadratic form type.

(4.41) Notation
- Throughout this chapter, \( \mathcal{F} \) is an integrable 434-foundation such that both the quadrangles are of quadratic form type.
- Given a foundation, if neither \( \gamma_{(i,j,k)} \) nor \( \gamma_{(k,j,i)} \) is specified, these glueings are supposed to be the identity map.

(4.42) Proposition If we have
\[
\mathcal{F} = \{ \mathcal{B}_{(2,1)} = \mathcal{Q}_1(\mathcal{L}_0, \mathbb{K}, \hat{q}), \mathcal{B}_{(2,3)} = \mathcal{Q}_1(\mathcal{L}_0, \hat{\mathbb{K}}, \hat{q}), \mathcal{B}_{(3,1)} = \mathcal{T}(\mathcal{A}), \gamma_1, \gamma_2, \gamma_3 \} ,
\]
then \( \mathcal{A} \) is quadratic over subfields \( \mathbb{F}_1, \mathbb{F}_2 \) of its center, and \( \mathcal{F} \) is isomorphic to the foundation
\[
\mathcal{F}_{434}(\mathcal{A}, (\mathbb{F}_1, \mathbb{F}_2), \gamma_2) := \{ \mathcal{B}_{(2,1)} = \mathcal{Q}_1(\mathcal{A}, \mathbb{F}_1, N_{\mathbb{F}_1}^\mathcal{A}), \mathcal{B}_{(2,3)} = \mathcal{Q}_1(\mathcal{A}, \mathbb{F}_2, N_{\mathbb{F}_2}^\mathcal{A}), \mathcal{B}_{(3,1)} = \mathcal{T}(\mathcal{A}), \gamma_2 \}
\]
for some isomorphism \( \gamma_2 : \mathbb{F}_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_2 \) of fields.
We have
\[ M(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q}) = M_{(2, 1)} = M_{(3, 1)} = M(\bar{A}) = M_{(3, 1)} = M_{(2, 3)} = M(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q}) . \]

By theorem (31.7), the alternative division ring $\bar{A}$ is quadratic over subfields $F_1, F_2$ of its center, and the maps
\[ \gamma_1 : \bar{A} \to \tilde{L}_0 , \quad \gamma_3^{-1} : \bar{A} \to \tilde{L}_0 \]
are induced by isomorphisms
\[ (\gamma_1, \phi_1) : (\bar{A}, F_1, N_{E_1}^\mathbb{K}) \to (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q}) , \quad (\gamma_3^{-1}, \phi_3^{-1}) : (\bar{A}, F_2, N_{E_2}^\mathbb{K}) \to (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q}) \]
of quadratic spaces. Now we take
\[ \alpha_{(2, 1)} := (\Xi_1, \phi_1, \gamma_1, \phi_1, \gamma_1) , \quad \alpha_{(2, 3)} := (\Xi_2, \phi_3^{-1}, \gamma_3^{-1}, \phi_3^{-1}, \gamma_3^{-1}) \]
as reparametrizations for $B_{(2, 1)}$ and $B_{(2, 3)}$, respectively, where $\Xi_i := (\bar{A}, F_i, N_{E_i}^\mathbb{K})$.

(44.3) Proposition If we have
\[ F = \{ B_{(1, 2)} = Q_Q(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q}), B_{(2, 3)} = Q_Q(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q}), B_{(3, 1)} = \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{K}), \gamma_1, \gamma_2, \gamma_3 \} , \]
then $\mathbb{K}$ is a field which is quadratic over some subfield $F$ of its center, $F$ is quadratic over some subfield $E$ of its center, and we have
\[ F \cong F_{443}(\mathbb{K}, F, E, \gamma_1) := \{ B_{(1, 2)} = Q_Q(F, E, N_{E}^\mathbb{K}), B_{(2, 3)} = Q_Q(\mathbb{K}, F, N_{F}^\mathbb{K}), B_{(3, 1)} = \mathcal{T}(F), \gamma_1 \} \]
for some isomorphism $\gamma_1 : \mathbb{K} \to E$ of fields.

Proof Since we have
\[ M(\mathbb{K}) = M_{(3, 1)} = M_{(2, 1)} = M(\tilde{\mathbb{K}}) , \]
the alternative division ring $\tilde{\mathbb{K}} \cong \tilde{\mathbb{K}}$ is a field by Hua’s theorem. We have
\[ M(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q}) = M_{(2, 3)} = M_{(3, 1)} = M(\mathbb{K}) , \]
therefore, $\mathbb{K}$ is quadratic over some subfield $F$ of its center by theorem (31.7), and the map $\gamma_3^{-1} : \mathbb{K} \to L_0$ is induced by an isomorphism $(\gamma_3^{-1}, \phi_3^{-1}) : (\mathbb{K}, F, N_{F}^\mathbb{K}) \to (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q})$ of quadratic spaces. By taking
\[ \alpha_{(2, 3)} := ( (\mathbb{K}, F, N_{F}^\mathbb{K}), \phi_3^{-1}, \gamma_3^{-1}, \phi_3^{-1}, \gamma_3^{-1} ) \]
as reparametrization for $B_{(2, 3)}$, we may assume $B_{(2, 3)} = Q_Q(\mathbb{K}, F, N_{F}^\mathbb{K})$ and $\gamma_3 = \text{id}_F$. Moreover, we have
\[ M(\mathbb{F}) = M_{(2, 3)} = M_{(1, 2)} = M(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q}) , \]
therefore, $\mathbb{F}$ is quadratic over some subfield $E$ of its center by theorem (31.7) again, and the map $\gamma_2^{-1} : \mathbb{F} \to L_0$ is induced by an isomorphism $(\gamma_2^{-1}, \phi_2^{-1}) : (\mathbb{F}, E, N_{E}^\mathbb{K}) \to (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q})$ of quadratic spaces. By taking
\[ \alpha_{(1, 2)} := ( (\mathbb{F}, E, N_{E}^\mathbb{K}), \phi_2^{-1}, \gamma_2^{-1}, \phi_2^{-1}, \gamma_2^{-1} ) \]
as reparametrization for $B_{(1, 2)}$, we may assume $B_{(1, 2)} = Q_Q(\mathbb{F}, E, N_{E}^\mathbb{K})$ and $\gamma_2 = \text{id}_E$. Finally, the map $\gamma_1 : \mathbb{K} \to E$ is an isomorphism of fields by Hua’s theorem.

(44.4) Proposition If we have
\[ F = \{ B_{(1, 2)} = Q_Q(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q}), B_{(3, 2)} = Q_Q(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q}), B_{(3, 1)} = \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{A}), \gamma_1, \gamma_2, \gamma_3 \} , \]
such that $(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q})$ is proper with $\dim_k \tilde{L}_0 \geq 3$, we have
\[ F \cong F_{443}( (\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q}), \gamma_3) := \{ B_{(1, 2)} = B_{(3, 2)} = Q_Q(\tilde{L}_0, \tilde{\mathbb{K}}, \tilde{q}), B_{(3, 1)} = \mathcal{T}(\tilde{\mathbb{K}}), \gamma_3 \} \]
for some $\gamma_3 \in \text{Aut}(\tilde{\mathbb{K}})$. 

- 188 -
Proof
By Hua’s theorem, the map $\gamma_{1}^{-1} : \hat{K} \to A$ is an isomorphism of fields. By taking
$$
\alpha_{(3,1)} := (\hat{K}, \gamma_{1}^{-1}, \gamma_{1}^{-1}, \gamma_{1}^{-1}, \).
$$
as reparametrization for $B_{(3,1)}$, we may assume $B_{(3,1)} = T(\hat{K})$ and $\gamma_{3} = \id{\hat{K}}$. Moreover, by theorem (31.6), the map $\gamma_{2} : \hat{L}_{0} \to \hat{L}_{0}$ is induced by an isomorphism $(\gamma_{2}, \phi_{2}) : (\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q}) \to (\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q})$ of quadratic spaces. By taking
$$
\alpha_{(3,2)} := ((\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q}), \phi_{2}, \gamma_{2}, \phi_{2}, \gamma_{2})
$$
as reparametrization for $B_{(3,2)}$, we may assume $B_{(3,2)} = Q_{Q}(\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q})$ and $\gamma_{2} = \id{\hat{L}_{0}}$. Now the map $\gamma_{3} : \hat{K} \to \hat{K}$ is an isomorphism of fields by Hua’s theorem.

(44.5) Proposition
If we have
$$
F = \{B_{(1,2)} = Q_{Q}(\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q}), B_{(3,2)} = Q_{Q}(\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q}), B_{(3,1)} = T(A), \gamma_{1}, \gamma_{2}, \gamma_{3}\},
$$
such that $\dim_{\hat{K}} \hat{L}_{0} \leq 2$, we have
$$
F \cong F_{443}(\hat{\Xi}, \hat{\Xi}, \gamma_{2}) := \{B_{(1,2)} = Q_{Q}(\hat{\Xi}, \hat{K}, \hat{q}), B_{(3,2)} = Q_{Q}(\hat{\Xi}, \hat{K}, \hat{q}), B_{(3,1)} = T(\hat{K}), \gamma_{3}\},
$$
for the quadratic space $\hat{\Xi} := (\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q})$ with $\dim_{\hat{K}} \hat{L}_{0} \leq 2$ (and thus of type $(m) \in \{(i), (ii), (iii)\}$, some quadratic space $\hat{\Xi} := (\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q})$ of type $(m) \in \{(i), (ii), (iii)\}$ and some isomorphism $\gamma_{3} : \hat{K} \to \hat{K}$ of fields.

Proof
By theorem (31.6), there is a quadratic space $(\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q})$ of type $(m) \in \{(i), (ii), (iii)\}$ such that the map $\gamma_{2} : \hat{L}_{0} \to \hat{L}_{0}$ is induced by an isomorphism $(\gamma_{2}, \phi_{2}) : (\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q}) \to (\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q})$ of quadratic spaces. Notice that we don’t need $(\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q})$ to be proper to establish case (ii) of theorem (31.6). By taking
$$
\alpha_{(1,2)} := ((\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, q), \phi_{2}^{-1}, \gamma_{2}^{-1}, \phi_{2}^{-1}, \gamma_{2}^{-1})
$$
as reparametrization for $B_{(1,2)}$, we may assume $B_{(1,2)} = Q_{Q}(\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, q)$ and $\gamma_{2} = \id{\hat{L}_{0}}$. By Hua’s theorem, the map $\gamma_{1}^{-1} : \hat{K} \to A$ is an isomorphism of fields. By taking
$$
\alpha_{(3,1)} := (\hat{K}, \gamma_{1}^{-1}, \gamma_{1}^{-1}, \gamma_{1}^{-1}, \)
$$
as reparametrization for $B_{(3,1)}$, we may assume $B_{(3,1)} = T(\hat{K})$ and $\gamma_{1} = \id{\hat{K}}$. Now the map $\gamma_{3} : \hat{K} \to \hat{K}$ is an isomorphism of fields by Hua’s theorem.

(44.6) Theorem
Let $F$ be an integrable 443-foundation such that both the quadrangles are of quadratic form type and such that $(\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q})$ is proper. Then $F$ is isomorphic to one of the following foundations:

(i) $F_{443}(A, (\hat{\Xi}, \hat{\Xi}, \gamma_{2}))$ as in proposition (44.2)

(ii) $F_{443}(\hat{K}, \hat{K}, \hat{K}, \gamma_{1})$ as in proposition (44.3)

(iii) $F_{443}(\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q}, \gamma_{3})$ as in proposition (44.4)

(iv) $F_{443}(\hat{\Xi}, \hat{\Xi}, \gamma_{3})$ as in proposition (44.5)

Proof
This results from propositions (44.2), (44.3), (44.4), and (44.5).

(44.7) Remark
Notice that we supposed $(\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q})$ to be proper only in proposition (44.4). The remaining results are valid even if both the parametrizing quadratic spaces are non-proper. In particular, case (ii) of theorem (31.6) doesn’t require $(\hat{L}_{0}, \hat{K}, \hat{q})$ to be proper.
Chapter 45  Conclusion

We summarize the previous results to have a complete list of integrable 443-Foundations. By remark (44.7), the theorem can be extended to non-proper quadratic spaces by adding quadratic spaces of type (i) except for case (vi). However, we don’t give the existence proofs.

(45.1) Theorem (Classification of 443 Twin Buildings) An integrable 443-foundation $F$ with proper parameter systems is isomorphic to one of the following foundations:

(i) $F_{443}(\Xi)$ for some proper pseudo-quadratic space $\Xi = (\mathbb{H}, \mathbb{H}_0, \sigma, L_0, q)$ such that $\mathbb{H}$ is a quaternion division algebra:

(ii) $F_{443}(\Xi, \gamma)$ for some proper pseudo-quadratic space $\Xi = (\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma, L_0, q)$ such that $(\mathbb{K}, \mathbb{K}_0, \sigma)$ is quadratic of type (iii) and for some automorphism $\gamma \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{K})$:

(iii) $F_{443}(\Xi)$ for some proper involutory set $\Xi = (\mathbb{H}, \mathbb{H}_0, \sigma)$ such that $\mathbb{H}$ is a quaternion division algebra:

(iv) $F_{443}(A, (F_1, F_2), \gamma)$ for some proper quadratic spaces $\Xi_i := (A, F_i, N_\mathbb{H}^A_i)$, $i = 1, 2$, of type (ii)-(v) and some isomorphism $\gamma : F_1 \to F_2$ of fields:
(v) $\mathcal{F}_{443}(K, F, E, \gamma)$ for some proper quadratic spaces $(K, F, N^F_K)$, $(F, E, N^F_E)$ of type (ii)-(iii) and some isomorphism $\gamma : K \to E$ of fields:

![Diagram](image1)

(vi) $\mathcal{F}_{443}(\Xi, \gamma)$ for some proper quadratic space $\Xi = (L_0, K, q)$ such that $\dim_K L_0 \geq 3$ and some automorphism $\gamma \in \text{Aut}(K)$:

![Diagram](image2)

(vii) $\mathcal{F}_{443}(\tilde{\Xi}, \gamma)$ for some proper quadratic space $\tilde{\Xi} = (L_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q})$ of type (ii)-(iii) and some isomorphism $\gamma : \tilde{K} \to K$ of fields:

![Diagram](image3)

**Proof**
This holds by theorems (40.2), (41.2), (42.2), (43.14), (43.21) and (44.6).

(45.2) Remark

(a) Notice the restriction in theorem (43.14) which we did not mention in the above formulation.

(b) Let $(A, K, N^A_K)$ be a quadratic space of type (m). Then we have

$$M := M(A, K, N^A_K) = M(A) =: \tilde{M}$$

by lemma (31.23).

(45.3) Corollary If we have $\dim_{F_1} A \geq 3$ in case (iv) of theorem (45.1), we have

$$\Xi_2 = \Xi_1.$$

**Proof**
This results from theorem (31.6) as we have $M(\Xi_1) = M(A) = M(\Xi_2)$.

- 191 -
Appendix
Chapter 46  \( \tilde{A}_2 \)-Buildings Revisited

We prove theorem (21.39) without using the building at infinity.

(46.1) Proposition  Let

\[ \mathcal{F} := \{ B_{(1,2)} = T(\hat{A}), B_{(2,3)} = T(\hat{A}), B_{(3,1)} = T(\hat{A}), \gamma_{(1,2,3)}, \gamma_{(2,3,1)}, \gamma_{(3,1,2)} \} \]

be an integrable foundation of type \( \tilde{A}_2 \) such that the defining field is a non-commutative skew-field and such that at least one glueing is positive. Then each glueing is positive.

**Proof**

Assume that \( \gamma_2 = \gamma_{(1,2,3)} \) is positive. Without loss of generality we may assume that \( \gamma_3 = \gamma_{(2,3,1)} \) is negative (otherwise, we consider the opposite buildings and glueings). By taking \( (\hat{A}, \gamma_3, \gamma_3, \gamma_3) \) as reparametrization for \( T(\hat{A}) \), we may assume

\[ \hat{A} = A, \quad \gamma_3 = \text{id}_A, \]

and by taking \( (\hat{A}^c, \gamma_2^{-1}, \gamma_2^{-1}, \gamma_2^{-1}) \) as reparametrization for \( T(\hat{A}) \), we may assume

\[ \hat{A} = A^c, \quad \gamma_2 = \text{id}_A^c . \]

If we set

\[ h(s) := \mu(x_{(3,1)}^1(1_A))^{-1} \mu(x_{(3,1)}^1(s^{-1})) , \quad s \in \hat{A}^*, \]

\[ \tilde{h}(s) := \mu(x_{(1,2)}^1(1_A))^{-1} \mu(x_{(1,2)}^1(s^{-1})) , \quad s \in \hat{A}^* , \]

we have

\[ h(s) = \mu(x_{(3,1)}^1(1_A))^{-1} \mu(x_{(3,1)}^1(s^{-1})) = \mu(x_{(1,2)}^1(1_A))^{-1} \mu(x_{(1,2)}^1(\gamma_1(s)^{-1})) = \tilde{h}(\gamma_1(s)) \]

for each \( s \in \hat{A}^* \),

\[ x_{(2,3)}^3(t)^{h(s)} = x_{(3,1)}^3(t)^{\tilde{h}(s)} = x_{(3,1)}^3(t) = x_{(2,3)}^3(t \cdot s) \]

and

\[ x_{(2,3)}^2(t)^{h(s)} = x_{(1,2)}^2(t)^{\tilde{h}(\gamma_1(s))} = x_{(1,2)}^2(\gamma_1(s) \circ t \circ \gamma_1(s)) = x_{(2,3)}^2(\gamma_1(s) \cdot t \cdot \gamma_1(s)) \]

for all \( s \in \hat{A}^* \), \( t \in A \) by lemma (18.9). Given \( s \in K \), the Hua automorphism \( h(\gamma_1^{-1}(s)) \) induces an automorphism \( \alpha_s \in \text{Aut}(B_{(2,3)}) \) which satisfies

\[ x_{(2,3)}^2(t) \mapsto x_{(2,3)}^2(s \cdot t \cdot s) , \quad x_{(2,3)}^3(t) \mapsto x_{(2,3)}^3(t \cdot \gamma_1^{-1}(s)) . \]

If we set \( \tilde{\alpha} := (\text{id}_K, \rho_{\gamma_1(s)}, \rho_{\gamma_1(s)}) \), then \( \tilde{\alpha} \alpha_s \) satisfies

\[ x_{(2,3)}^2(t) \mapsto x_{(2,3)}^2(s \cdot t \cdot s) , \quad x_{(2,3)}^3(t) \mapsto x_{(2,3)}^3(t) . \]

By lemma (21.27), there is an element \( c \in \hat{A}^* \) such that

\[ \forall t \in \hat{A} : \quad stc = c . \]

Lemma (43.4) implies that we have

\[ s \in Z(\hat{A}) . \]

Since \( s \in \hat{A} \) is arbitrary, it follows that

\[ \hat{A} \subseteq Z(\hat{A}) \quad \Box . \]
Appendix

(46.2) Proposition  Let
\[ \mathcal{F} := \{ \mathcal{B}(1,2) = \mathcal{T}(\hat{A}), \mathcal{B}(2,3) = \mathcal{T}(\hat{A}), \mathcal{B}(3,1) = \mathcal{T}(\hat{A}), \mathcal{T}(1,2,3), \mathcal{T}(2,3,1), \mathcal{T}(3,1,2) \} \]
be an integrable foundation of type $\hat{A}_2$ such that the defining field is a non-commutative skew-field and such that each glueing is positive. Then the skew-field $\hat{A}$ is a quaternion division algebra and $\mathcal{F}$ is isomorphic to the foundation
\[ \mathcal{P}_A(\hat{A}) := \{ \hat{B}(1,2) = \mathcal{T}(\hat{A}^o), \hat{B}(2,3) = \mathcal{T}(\hat{A}), \hat{B}(3,1) = \mathcal{T}(\hat{A}^o), \hat{\gamma}_1 = \sigma, \hat{\gamma}_2 = \text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}, \hat{\gamma}_3 = \text{id}_{\hat{A}^o} \}. \]

Proof
As $\gamma_2 = \gamma_{(2,3,1)}$ is positive, we may take $(\hat{A}^o, \gamma_2^{-1}, \gamma_2^{-1}, \gamma_2^{-1})$ as reparametrization for $\mathcal{T}(\hat{A})$. Therefore, we may assume
\[ \hat{A} = \hat{A}^o, \quad \gamma_2 = \text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}. \]
As $\gamma_3 = \gamma_{(2,3,1)}$ is positive, we may take $(\hat{A}^o, \gamma_3^o, \gamma_3^o, \gamma_3^o)$ as reparametrization for $\mathcal{T}(\hat{A})$. Therefore, we may assume
\[ \hat{A} = \hat{A}^o, \quad \gamma_3 = \text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}. \]

- If we set
\[ h_1(s) := \mu(x_{(3,1)}^1(1_k))^{-1} \mu(x_{(3,1)}^1(s^{-1})), \quad s \in \hat{A}^o, \]
\[ \tilde{h}_1(s) := \mu(x_{(1,2)}^1(1_k))^{-1} \mu(x_{(1,2)}^1(s^{-1})), \quad s \in \hat{A}^o, \]
we have
\[ h_1(s) = \mu(x_{(3,1)}^1(1_k))^{-1} \mu(x_{(3,1)}^1(s^{-1})) = \mu(x_{(1,2)}^1(1_k))^{-1} \mu(x_{(1,2)}^1(s^{-1})) = \tilde{h}_1(\gamma_1(s)) \]
for each $s \in \hat{A}^o$,
\[ x_{(2,3)}^2(t)^{h_1(s)} = x_{(3,1)}^3(\text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}(t))^{h_1(s)} = x_{(3,1)}^3(\text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}(t) \circ s) = x_{(2,3)}^3(\text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}(s) \cdot t) \]
for all $s \in \hat{A}^o$, $t \in \hat{A}$ by lemma (18.9) and
\[ x_{(2,3)}^2(t)^{h_1(\gamma_1(s))} = x_{(2,3)}^2(\text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}(t)^{h_1(\gamma_1(s))}) = x_{(2,3)}^2(\gamma_1(s) \circ \text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}(t) \circ \gamma_1(s)) = x_{(2,3)}^2(\gamma_1(s) \cdot t \cdot \gamma_1(s)) \]
for all $s \in \hat{A}^o$, $t \in \hat{A}$ by lemma (18.9).

- If we set
\[ h_3(s) := \mu(x_{(3,1)}^3(1_k))^{-1} \mu(x_{(3,1)}^3(s)), \quad s \in \hat{A}^o, \]
\[ \tilde{h}_3(s) := \mu(x_{(2,3)}^3(1_k))^{-1} \mu(x_{(2,3)}^3(s)), \quad s \in \hat{A}, \]
we have
\[ h_3(s) = \mu(x_{(3,1)}^3(1_k))^{-1} \mu(x_{(3,1)}^3(s^{-1})) = \mu(x_{(1,2)}^3(1_k))^{-1} \mu(x_{(1,2)}^3(\text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}(s^{-1}))) = \tilde{h}_3(\text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}(s)) \]
for each $s \in \hat{A}^o$,
\[ x_{(2,3)}^2(t)^{h_3(s)} = x_{(3,1)}^3(\text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}(t))^{h_3(s)} = x_{(3,1)}^3(s^{-1} \circ \text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}(t) \circ s^{-1}) = x_{(2,3)}^2(\text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}(s^{-1}) \cdot t \cdot \text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}(s)^{-1}) \]
for all $s \in \hat{A}^o$, $t \in \hat{A}$ by lemma (18.9) and
\[ x_{(2,3)}^2(t)^{h_3(s)} = x_{(2,3)}^2(t)^{\tilde{h}_3(\text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}(s))} = x_{(2,3)}^2(\text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}(s)^{\sigma} \cdot t \cdot \text{id}_{\hat{A}^o}(s)) \]
for all $s \in \hat{A}^o$, $t \in \hat{A}_0$ by lemma (18.9).
Given \( s \in \mathbb{A}^* \), then \( h_3(s)h_1(s) \) induces an automorphism \( \alpha_s \in \text{Aut}(\mathcal{B}_{(2,3)}) \) which satisfies
\[
x_{(2,3)}^2(t) \mapsto x_{(2,3)}^2(id_K^o(s) \cdot \gamma_1^o(s) \cdot t \cdot \gamma_1^o(s) \cdot id_K^o(s)), \quad x_{(2,3)}^3(t) \mapsto x_{(2,3)}^3(t \cdot id_K^o(s)^{-1}) .
\]
If we set \( \tilde{\alpha} := (id_K^o, \rho_{\text{ad}(s)}, \rho_{\text{ad}(s)}) \), then \( \tilde{\alpha}\alpha_s \in \text{Aut}(\mathcal{B}_{(2,3)}) \) satisfies
\[
x_{(2,3)}^2(t) \mapsto x_{(2,3)}^2(id_K^o(s) \cdot \gamma_1^o(s) \cdot t \cdot \gamma_1^o(s) \cdot id_K^o(s)), \quad x_{(2,3)}^3(t) \mapsto x_{(2,3)}^3(t) .
\]
By lemma (21.27), there is an element \( c \in \mathbb{A}^* \) such that
\[
\forall \ t \in \mathbb{A} : \quad id_K^o(s) \cdot \gamma_1^o(s) \cdot t \cdot \gamma_1^o(s) \cdot id_K^o(s) = c \cdot t .
\]
Lemma (43.4) implies that we have
\[
\gamma_1 = \sigma_s : \mathbb{A}^o \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^o .
\]

(46.3) Theorem \hspace{1em} Let \( \mathcal{F} \) be an integrable foundation of type \( \mathbb{A}_2 \) such that the defining field is a non-commutative skew-field and such that at least one gluing is positive. Then there is a quaternion \( \mathcal{H} \) such that
\[
\mathcal{F} \cong \mathcal{P}_3(\mathcal{H}) = \{ \tilde{\mathcal{B}}_{(1,2)} = \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{H}^o), \tilde{\mathcal{B}}_{(2,3)} = \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{H}), \tilde{\mathcal{B}}_{(3,1)} = \mathcal{T}(\mathbb{H}^o), \tilde{\gamma}_1 = \sigma_s, \tilde{\gamma}_2 = id_{\mathbb{H}^o}, \tilde{\gamma}_3 = id_{\mathbb{H}} \} .
\]

Proof
This results from proposition (46.1) and proposition (46.2).

(46.4) Remark \hspace{1em} As we did not use the fact that the residues embed into the building at infinity, which is a result in twin building theory, the above theorem is true for any foundation of an arbitrary affine building of type \( \mathbb{A}_2 \) in which each Hua automorphism is induced by an automorphism of the whole building.

Chapter 47 Jordan Automorphisms of Octonion Division Algebras Revisited

We give a direct proof for proposition (28.9), independent of the characteristic.

(47.1) Theorem \hspace{1em} Let \( \mathcal{O} \) be an octonion division algebra with center \( \mathcal{K} := Z(\mathcal{O}) \) and norm \( N := N_K^\mathcal{O} \). Then we have
\[
\text{Aut}_J(\mathcal{O}) = \Gamma L_N(\mathcal{O}, \mathcal{K}) .
\]

Proof
Let \( (\varphi, \sigma) \in \Gamma L_N(\mathcal{O}, \mathcal{K}) \). Then we have
\[
\varphi(1_\mathcal{O}) = \varphi(1_\mathcal{O} \cdot 1_\mathcal{O}) = \sigma(1_\mathcal{O}) \cdot \varphi(1_\mathcal{O}) = 1_\mathcal{O} \cdot \varphi(1_\mathcal{O})
\]
and thus \( \varphi(1_\mathcal{O}) = 1_\mathcal{O} \). By definition, lemma (31.23) and theorem (31.41), we have
\[
\text{Aut}_J(\mathcal{O}) = \text{Aut}_J(\mathcal{M}(\mathcal{O})) = \text{Aut}_J(\mathcal{M}(\mathcal{O}, \mathcal{K}, N))
\]
\[
= \{ (\varphi, \sigma) \in \Gamma L_N(\mathcal{O}, \mathcal{K}) \mid \varphi(1_\mathcal{O}) = 1_\mathcal{O} \} = \Gamma L_N(\mathcal{O}, \mathcal{K}) .
\]
Chapter 48  The Defining Field Revisited

With theorem (47.1), we can prove theorem (21.6) without using proposition (21.3).

(48.1) Lemma  Let $F$ be a foundation such that there exists an edge $(a,b) \in A(F)$ with $A := A(a,b)$ an octonion division algebra. Then we have

$$\forall (i,j) \in A(F) : \quad A_{(i,j)} \cong A \lor A_{(i,j)} \cong A^o, \quad T(A_{(i,j)}) \cong T(A) \lor T(A_{(i,j)}) \cong T(A^o).$$

Proof
By theorem (47.1), each glueing $\gamma_{(i,j,k)}$ is a norm similarity. Therefore, we have

$$\forall (i,j,k) \in G(F) : \quad A_{(i,j)} \cong A_{(j,k)}$$

by theorem (1.7.1) of [Sp].

(48.2) Theorem  Let $\tilde{F}$ be an integrable foundation. Then there is an alternative division ring $\tilde{A}$ such that

$$\forall (i,j) \in A(\tilde{F}) : \quad \tilde{A}_{(i,j)} \cong A \lor \tilde{A}_{(i,j)} \cong A^o.$$

Proof
This is an immediate consequence of corollary (19.33) and lemma (48.1).

Chapter 49  Introduction in German

Historischer und theoretischer Hintergrund

Bei der folgenden Darstellung orientieren wir uns stark an den Ausführungen in [MLoc] und [AB].

Zwillingsgebäude

Gebäude wurden von J. Tits eingeführt, um halbeinfache algebraische Gruppen von einem geometrischen Standpunkt aus zu untersuchen. Eines der wichtigsten Resultate in der Gebäude-Theorie ist die Klassifikation der irreduziblen sphärischen Gebäuden vom Rang mindestens 3 in [T74]. Mittlerweile gibt es einen vereinfachten Beweis in [TW], der auf der Klassifikation der Moufang-Polygone beruht.

Vor über 25 Jahren definierten M. Ronan und J. Tits die Klasse der Zwillingsgebäude, eine natürliche Verallgemeinerung der sphärischen Gebäude. Motiviert wurde diese Definition durch die Theorie der Kac-Moody-Gruppen. Wir verweisen an diesem Punkt auf [T92] für allgemeine, weitergehende Informationen über Zwillingsgebäude.

Zwillingsgebäude verallgemeinern sphärische Gebäude in folgender Hinsicht: Bei sphärischen Gebäuden gibt es eine natürliche Oppositions-Relation auf der Menge der Kammern, die die Struktur des Gebäudes wesentlich einschränkt. Die oben erwähnte Klassifikation der irreduziblen sphärischen Gebäuden vom Rang mindestens 3 basiert letzten Endes genau auf dieser Oppositions-Relation. Ein Zwillingsgebäude besteht nun aus zwei verschiedenen Gebäuden gleichen Typs, auf deren Kammern eine symmetrische Relation eingeführt wird, die ähnliche Eigenschaften wie die Oppositions-Relation von sphärischen Gebäuden besitzt. Ein Zwillingsgebäude ist also ein Tripel bestehend aus zwei Gebäuden gleichen Typs und einer Oppositions-Relation auf den zwei „Hälften“ des Zwillingsgebäudes.
Das Klassifikations-Programm für 2-sphärische Zwillingsgebäude

Im Hinblick auf die Klassifikation der sphärischen Gebäude ergibt sich ganz natürlich die Frage, ob es auch möglich ist, Zwillingsgebäude höheren Ranges zu klassifizieren. Ein großer Teil von [T92] beschäftigt sich mit genau dieser Problemstellung. Zunächst stellt sich heraus, dass eine solche Klassifikation nur unter der zusätzlichen Annahme möglich ist, dass die Einträge der zugehörigen Coxeter-Matrizen endlich sind. Wir nennen diese Gebäude 2-sphärisch. Das in [T92] beschriebene Klassifikations-Programm basiert auf der Vermutung, dass es für jede 2-sphärische Coxeter-Matrix vom Typ $M$ eine Bijektion zwischen Zwillingsgebäuden vom Typ $M$ und bestimmten Moufang-Fundamenten vom Typ $M$ gibt.

Fundamente wurden von M. Ronan und J. Tits in [RT] eingeführt, um Kammer-Systeme zu beschreiben, die Kandidaten für die lokale Struktur eines Gebäudes sind. Grob gesagt sind Fundamente Amalgame von Rang-2-Gebäuden, die entlang bestimmter Rang-1-Residuen verklebt sind. Ist $c$ eine Kammer eines Gebäudes $B$ vom Typ $M$, so bildet die Vereinigung $E_2(c)$ der Rang-2-Residuen, die diese Kammer $c$ enthalten, ein Fundament vom Typ $M$, das Fundament von $B$ in $c$. Der Ausdruck „lokale Struktur“ ist also als eine Art 2-Umgebung einer Kammer $c$ des Gebäudes zu verstehen.

Es ist eine (nicht triviale) Tatsache, dass die Fundamente zweier Kammern in derselben Hälfte eines Zwillingsgebäudes isomorph sind. Darüber hinaus ist der Isomorphismus-Typ des Fundamentes der einen Hälfte durch den Isomorphismus-Typ des Fundaments der anderen Hälfte eindeutig bestimmt. Umgekehrt besagt eine Verallgemeinerung von Tits' Erweiterungssatz durch B. Mühlherr und M. Ronan in [MR], dass ein Zwillingsgebäude in fast allen Fällen durch das Fundament einer seiner Hälfen eindeutig bestimmt ist, siehe (5.10), (*5.11), (*9.11) und (*9.12) in [AB] für eine Zusammenfassung. Somit ist das Fundament in einer Kammer eine klassifizierende Invariante des zugehörigen Zwillingsgebäudes, falls die folgende Bedingung erfüllt ist:

(CO) Kein Rang-2-Residuum ist isomorph zu einem Gebäude, das zu einer der Gruppen $B_2(2)$, $G_2(2)$, $G_2(3)$ und $^2F_4(2)$ gehört.

Diese Bedingung garantiert, dass die Menge $c^e$ der einer Kammer $c \in B_e$ ($e \in \{\pm\}$) gegenüber liegenden Kammern stets eine Galerie-zusammenhängende Teilmenge von $B_{-e}$ ist.

In Anbetracht der bisherigen Überlegungen reduziert sich die Klassifikation der 2-sphärischen Zwillingsgebäude also auf die Klassifikation aller Fundamente, die als lokale Struktur eines Zwillingsgebäudes realisiert werden können. Wir nennen ein solches Fundament integrierbar. Bei der Bestimmung der integrierbaren Fundamente verfährt man in zwei Schritten.

**Schritt 1: Herausfiltern der nicht integrierbaren Fundamente**

In [T92] wird bewiesen, dass ein integrierbares Fundament Moufang ist, die Rang-2-Gebäude also Moufang-Polygone sind, deren Verklebungen mit den induzierten Moufang-Mengen auf den Rang-1-Residuen kompatibel sind. Eine erste notwendige Bedingung für die Integrierbarkeit eines Fundaments ist also die Moufang-Eigenschaft.

Als Folge dessen sind die Klassifikation der Moufang-Polygone in [TW] und die Lösung des Isomorphie-Problems für Moufang-Mengen grundlegend bei der Untersuchung, welche Moufang-Polygone zu einem Fundament zusammengefügt werden können. Zudem kann man die Liste der möglicherweise integrierbaren Fundamente weiter einschränken, indem man bestimmte Automorphismen des Zwillingsgebäudes betrachtet, die sogenannten Hua-Automorphismen, die in einem engen Zusammenhang mit den Doppel-$\mu$-Maps der auftauchenden Moufang-Mengen stehen.

**Schritt 2: Existenz- / Integrierbarkeits-Beweis**

Schließlich muss man beweisen, dass jeder der verbleibenden Kandidaten auch wirklich integrierbar ist. Das zugehörige Zwillingsgebäude ist dann bis auf Isomorphie eindeutig. In [MLoc] und seiner Habilitationsschrift [MHab] entwickelte B. Mühlherr Techniken, die bestimmte Zwillingsgebäude als Fixpunktmenge in zu Kac-Moody-Gruppen gehörenden Zwillingsgebäuden realisieren. Er, H. Petersson und R. Weiss bereiten momentan ein Buch vor, das weitergehende, substanzielle Hintergründe liefert.
Ziele und Ergebnisse

Diese Arbeit widmet sich der Erstellung vollständiger Listen integrierbarer Fundamente für bestimmte Diagramm-Typen. Wir folgen hierbei dem Ansatz für die Klassifikation sphärischer Gebäude in [TW], wobei wir jedoch die dort verwendeten Techniken verfeinern müssen, da Fundamente im Allgemeinen nicht nur vom zugehörigen Diagramm und dem definierenden (Alternativ-) Körper abhängen. Zum Beispiel gibt es für einen festen Schiefkörper $A$ in der Regel mehrere nicht isomorphe Fundamente vom Typ $\tilde{A}_3$: Automorphismen von $A$ spielen ebenfalls eine Rolle, was der Tatsache Rechnung trägt, dass es mehrere Möglichkeiten gibt, Moufang Polygone entlang eines Rang-1-Residuums zu verkleben.

Ein wesentlicher Aspekt ist die passende Parametrisierung von Sequenzen von Moufang-Polygonen bzw. deren Wurzelgruppen-Sequenzen mit den zugehörigen Kommutator-Relationen, um die verschiedenen Verklebungen sichtbar zu machen. Die entscheidende Subtilität ist die folgende: Jedes Moufang-Polygon wird zweimal parametrisiert, einmal für jede Richtung, in der die zugehörige Wurzelgruppen-Sequenz gelesen werden kann. Folglich erhalten wir Verklebungen zwischen gerichteten Moufang-Polygonen, und es macht einen Unterschied, ob wir $id_A : A \rightarrow A$ oder $id_A^o : A \rightarrow A^o$ betrachten, wobei $A^o$ der zu $A$ entgegengesetzte Schiefkörper ist: Ersteres ist ein Isomorphismus, während Letzteres ein Anti-Isomorphismus von Schiefkörpern ist.

Wie bereits erwähnt, ist das Herausfiltern nicht integrierbarer Fundamente eng verknüpft mit der Betrachtung von Moufang-Mengen und deren Isomorphismen. Deshalb beschäftigt sich ein großer Teil dieser Arbeit mit der Einführung der zugrundeliegenden Parameter-Systeme und der Lösung des Isomorphie-Problems für Moufang-Mengen. Viele Probleme wurden bereits gelöst, siehe [K], aber wir müssen die existierenden Ergebnisse für unsere Anforderungen sowohl verfeinern als auch erweitern und übersetzen deren Beweise in unser Setup.

**Fundamente mit einfachen Kanten (Simply Laced Foundations)**

Das Hauptergebnis dieser Arbeit ist die vollständige Klassifikation der Zwillingsgebäude mit einfachen Kanten via ihrer Fundamente. Natürlich ist die Hauptvoraussetzung für ein integrierbares Fundament die Moufang-Eigenschaft: Die Verklebungen sind Jordan-Isomorphismen, d.h., sie sind mit dem Jordan-Produkt $xyz$ verträglich.

Ein mächtiges Werkzeug ist der Satz von Hua, siehe [H] für eine Referenz, der das Isomorphie-Problem für Moufang-Mengen von Schiefkörpern löst: Jeder Jordan-Isomorphismus ist letztlich ein Iso- oder Anti-Isomorphismus von Schiefkörpern. Leider beinhaltet die Klasse von Parameter-Systemen für Moufang-Dreiecke zusätzlich Oktaven-Divisionsalgebren, was wegen der fehlenden Assoziativität zu einem gewissen Mehraufwand führt. Ein Nebenprodukt ist die Existenz von Jordan-Isomorphismen, die weder Iso- noch Anti-Isomorphismen von alternativen Ringen sind. Der aufwändigste Teil handelt von den Ausnahmefällen, in denen Oktaven auftauchen.

Wir geben an dieser Stelle einen Überblick über den Klassifikations-Prozess und streichen die Hauptideen heraus. Die folgenden Beobachtungen liefern die erste Einschränkung an Möglichkeiten:

1. Jedes Moufang-Dreieck ist über demselben alternativen Divisionsring $\mathbb{A}$ definiert.

2. Ein integrierbares Fundament vom Typ $A_3$ ist notwendigerweise über einem Schiefkörper definiert, und die Verklebung ist notwendigerweise ein Isomorphismus von Schiefkörpern. Folglich ist der entscheidende Schritt die Klassifikation der integrierbaren Fundamente vom Typ $A_2$, da dies die kleinsten sind, bei denen „Nicht-Standard“-Phänomene auftreten können. Die Theorie affiner Gebäude, von Bruhat-Tits-Gebäuden sowie die Theorie von Kompositions-Algebren, die bzgl. einer diskreten Bewertung komplett sind, ermöglichen uns weitere Einschränkungen:

3. Zu einer Oktaven-Divisionsalgebra $\mathbb{O}$ gibt es genau ein Zwillingsgebäude vom Typ $\tilde{A}_2$.

4. Ein integrierbares Fundament vom Typ $\tilde{A}_2$, dessen Verklebungen Anti-Isomorphismen sind, ist notwendigerweise über einer Quaternionen-Divisionsalgebra definiert, und zu einem Quaternionen-Schiefkörper $\mathbb{H}$ gibt es genau ein solches „positives“ Zwillingsgebäude vom Typ $\tilde{A}_2$. 

- 200 -
Eine genauere Betrachtung der Gruppe der Jordan-Automorphismen einer Oktaven-Divisionsalgebra hilft dabei, die Klassifikation der über Oktaven definierten Zwillingsgebäude abzuschließen:

(5) Es gibt keine integrierbaren Fundamente über Oktaven, deren zugehöriger Graph ein Tetraeder ist. Insbesondere sind \( \mathcal{A}_2(\mathcal{O}) = T(\mathcal{O}) \) und \( \tilde{\mathcal{A}}_2(\mathcal{O}) \) die einzigen integrierbaren Fundamente über einer Oktaven-Divisionsalgebra \( \mathcal{O} \).

Schließlich liefert die folgende Beobachtung in Verbindung mit (4) eine wesentliche Einschränkung der Liste integrierbarer Fundamente über echten Schiefkörpern, die keine Quaternionen-Schiefkörper sind:

(6) Ein integrierbares Fundament vom Typ \( D_4 \) ist notwendigerweise über einem Körper definiert.

Als Konsequenz sind über echten Schiefkörpern, die keine Quaternionen-Schiefkörper sind, nur Fundamente integrierbar, deren Diagramm ein Kreis, ein String, ein Strahl oder eine Kette ist und deren Verklebungen Isomorphismen von Schiefkörpern sind. Schließlich stellt die Kac-Moody-Theorie die Integrierbarkeit sicher, solange das zugehörige Coxeter-Diagramm ein Baum ist. Die restlichen Integrierbarkeits-Beweise basieren auf Techniken, die von B. Mühlherr entwickelt wurden.

Jordan-Automorphismen von alternativen Divisionsringen

In Hinblick auf den Satz von Hua, nach dem \( \text{Aut}_J(\mathcal{D}) = \text{Aut}(\mathcal{D}) \cup \text{Aut}^o(\mathcal{D}) \) für jeden Schiefkörper \( \mathcal{D} \), seine Gruppe \( \text{Aut}_J(\mathcal{D}) \) von Jordan-Automorphismen, seine Untergruppe \( \text{Aut}(\mathcal{D}) \) von Automorphismen und seine Menge \( \text{Aut}^o(\mathcal{D}) \) von Anti-Automorphismen gilt, stellt sich die Frage nach einem ähnlichen Ergebnis für Oktaven-Divisionsalgebren.

Im Beweis, dass integrierbare Tetraeder-Fundamente über Oktaven nicht existieren, definieren wir eine Teilmenge \( \Gamma \subseteq \text{Aut}_J(\mathcal{O}) \), für die sich herausstellt, dass sie nicht die Standard-Involution \( \sigma_s \) enthält. Die Elemente von \( \Gamma \) sind Automorphismen von \( \mathcal{O} \), die zusätzlich mit einem der in [TW] definierten „Ausnahme“-Jordan-Automorphismen multipliziert werden. Diese fixieren eine Quaternionen-Unteralgebra \( H \) punktweise und wirken auf dem orthogonalen Komplement von \( H \) als Konjugation.

Dass \( \Gamma \) eine Untergruppe von \( \text{Aut}_J(\mathcal{O}) \) ist, kann man aus der Kenntnis der Automorphismen-Gruppe des zugehörigen Moufang-Dreiecks \( T(\mathcal{O}) \) ableiten. Diese Untergruppe \( \Gamma \) entspricht der Untergruppe \( \text{Aut}(\mathcal{D}) \) im Satz von Hua, d.h., wir erhalten

\[ \text{Aut}_J(\mathcal{O}) = \langle \sigma_s, \Gamma \rangle = \Gamma \cup \sigma_s \Gamma . \]

Die Strategie beim Beweis ist wie folgt:

(1) Jordan-Automorphismen eingeschränkt auf Unterkörper sind Ring-Monomorphismen, d.h., das Bild eines Unterkörpers ist wieder ein Unterkörper.

(2) Als unmittelbare Konsequenz ergibt sich, dass Jordan-Automorphismen von Oktaven Norm-Ähnlichkeiten sind.

(3) Die Ergebnisse aus [Sp] erlauben uns, die Problemstellung auf Isometrien zurückzuführen, die eine Quaternionen-Unteralgebra punktweise fixieren.

(4) Der Satz von Hua und das Skolem-Noether-Theorem erlauben uns zu zeigen, dass jeder Jordan-Automorphismus wirklich ein Produkt in \( \langle \sigma_s, \Gamma \rangle \) ist.
443-Fundamente

Das zweite Ergebnis im Zusammenhang mit der Klassifikation der Zwillingsgebäude ist die Durchführung von Schritt 1 für 443-Fundamente. Dies sind Fundamente, deren Diagramm ein Dreieck ist und deren Moufang-Polygone zwei Vierecke und ein Dreieck sind. Obwohl wir uns in diesem Fall mit nur einem einzigen Diagramm beschäftigen, gibt es dennoch eine Vielzahl verschiedener integrierbarer 443-Fundamente, da es sechs Familien von Moufang-Vierecken gibt, die in dieser Konfiguration zudem auch noch oft zusammenpassen. Allerdings treten keine Vierecke vom Typ $E_n$, vom Typ $F_4$ und vom indifferenten Typ auf, weil ihre Moufang-Mengen nicht vom linearen Typ, also keine projektiven Geraden sind.

Das Gleiche gilt zwar für Moufang-Mengen vom pseudo-quadratischen und involutorischen Typ, allerdings ist das zweite Panel des zugehörigen unitären Vierecks vom linearen Typ, sodass es genau eine Möglichkeit für die Orientierung des Vierecks gibt. Die Lösung des Isomorphie-Problems für die auftauchenden Moufang-Mengen und die Kenntnis der Automorphismen-Gruppe eines unitären Vierecks führen zu folgendem Ergebnis:

(1) Die auftauchenden pseudo-quadratischen Räume sind über einem Quaternionen-Schiefkörper $\mathbb{H}$ oder einer separablen quadratischen Erweiterung $\mathbb{E}$ definiert. Im ersten Fall gibt es genau ein integrierbares 443-Fundament über einem solchen pseudo-quadratischen Raum $\Xi$; im zweiten Fall hängt die Isomorphie-Klasse eines integrierbaren Fundaments zusätzlich von einem Automorphismus $\gamma \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{E})$ ab.

(2) Die auftauchenden involutorischen Mengen sind über einem Quaternionen-Schiefkörper $\mathbb{H}$ definiert, und es gibt genau ein integrierbares 443-Fundament über einer solchen involutorischen Menge $\Xi$.

Schließlich bilden Vierecke vom quadratischen Typ die flexibelste Familie, da es Moufang-Mengen gibt, die sowohl vom quadratischen als auch vom linearen Typ sind, sodass diese Vierecke in jeder Orientierung verklebbar sind. Des Weiteren gibt es eine Stelle, an der wir uns auf echte quadratische Räume als parametrisierende Strukturen beschränken müssen, um für eine zufriedenstellende Darstellung Charakteristik-2-Phänomene ausschließen zu können.

Im Gegensatz zur Klassifikation der integrierbaren Fundamente mit einfachen Kanten verzichten wir im Rahmen dieser Arbeit jedoch auf Schritt 2 des Klassifikations-Programms, da die Integrierbarkeits-Beweise andersartige, von B. Mühlherr, H. Petersson und R. Weiss eingeführte Techniken verwenden. Wie zuvor gibt es zwei Möglichkeiten, die Integrierbarkeit eines gegebenen Fundamentes zu beweisen: Entweder ist die universelle Überlagerung isomorph zu einem kanonischen Fundament, also einem Fundament, dessen Verklebungen alle die Identität sind und das integrierbar ist, falls das zugehörige Diagramm ein Baum ist, oder das Fundament kann als Fixpunkt-Struktur eines Tits-Index realisiert werden. Die erste Methode funktioniert bei 443-Fundamenten mit Vierecken vom quadratischen Typ, während die zweite bei 443-Fundamenten mit unitären Vierecken angewendet wird.

Jordan-Isomorphismen von pseudo-quadratischen Räumen

Genauso, wie der Satz von Hua bei der Klassifikation der integrierbaren Fundamente mit einfachen Kanten entscheidend ist, ist die Lösung des Isomorphie-Problems für die auftauchenden Moufang-Mengen ein wesentlicher Bestandteil bei der Klassifikation der integrierbaren 443-Fundamente. Wie bereits erwähnt, wurden viele Fälle von R. Knop in seiner Dissertation [K] abgewendet. Allerdings beschäftigt er sich nur mit kommutativen Moufang-Mengen, sodass wir die entsprechenden Resultate für Moufang-Mengen vom pseudo-quadratischen Typ ergänzen müssen.

Wir erhalten, dass Jordan-Isomorphismen zwischen zwei Moufang-Mengen vom pseudo-quadratischen Typ in der Regel von Isomorphismen zwischen den zugänglichen pseudo-quadratischen Räumen induziert werden. Genauer ist dies immer der Fall, wenn die Dimension mindestens 3 ist oder die beteiligte involutorische Menge echt ist. Folglich tauchen Ausnahmen nur bei pseudo-quadratischen Räumen kleiner Dimension auf, die über einem Quaternionen-Schiefkörper oder einer separablen quadratischen Erweiterung definiert sind. Glücklicherweise tauchen diese Ausnahme-Fälle nicht bei der Klassifikation integrierbarer 443-Fundamente auf, sodass beide Vierecke über denselben pseudo-quadratischen Raum $\Xi$ definiert sind.
Ausblick und offene Probleme

Jordan-Isomorphismen

In der Theorie der Moufang-Mengen spielen die $\mu$-Maps und die Hua-Maps eine entscheidende Rolle, da sie viele Informationen enthalten. Folglich stehen Jordan-Isomorphismen – dies sind additive Isomorphismen, die mit den Hua-Maps verträglich sind – in engem Zusammenhang mit Isomorphismen von Moufang-Mengen. Da die Hua-Maps in Summen und der Permutation $\tau$ dargestellt werden können, ist jeder Isomorphismus von Moufang-Mengen letztlich auch ein Jordan-Isomorphismus.

In diesem Zusammenhang stellt sich ganz natürlich die Frage, ob jeder Jordan-Isomorphismus auch ein Isomorphismus von Moufang-Mengen ist. Die Hua-Maps von scharf 2-fach transitiven Moufang-Mengen sind trivial, sodass die Frage in diesem Fall natürlich negativ beantwortet werden muss. Experten auf diesem Gebiet wie R. Weiss und T. De Medts gehen aber davon aus, dass beide Definitionen äquivalent sind, solange man sich auf „echte“ Moufang-Mengen beschränkt.

Das Klassifikations-Programm

Die Hauptvermutung im Zusammenhang mit dem Klassifikations-Programm ist die folgende, siehe Seite 5 in [MHab]:

Ein Moufang-Fundament vom 2-sphärischen Typ ist genau dann integrierbar, falls jedes Rang-3-Residuum integrierbar ist.

In seiner Habilitationsschrift [MHab] deutet B. Mühlherr an, dass die Vermutung unter der zusätzlichen Annahme beweisbar wäre, dass alle Rang-3-Residuen sphärisch sind, was natürlich eine starke Einschränkung ist. Allerdings gibt es bislang noch keinen veröffentlichten Beweis.

Sobald die Vermutung bewiesen ist, reduziert sich das Klassifikations-Programm auf die Klassifikation der integrierbaren Moufang-Fundamente vom Rang 3. Die meisten Fälle können mit den in [MHab] und [MLoc] eingeführten Methoden abgehandelt werden. Allerdings gibt es ein paar Ausnahmen, von denen die kompliziertesten vom Typ $\tilde{A}_2$, $\tilde{A}_2$ und 443-Fundamente sind. Der $\tilde{A}_2$- und der 443-Fall werden in dieser Arbeit gelöst, während es für den $\tilde{C}_2$-Fall (unveröffentlichte) Teilergebnisse von T. De Medts, B. Mühlherr, H. Van Maldeghem und R. Weiss gibt.

Die Klassifikation der Zwillingsgebäude mit einfachen Kanten

Obwohl die Klassifikation der integrierbaren Fundamente mit einfachen Kanten abgeschlossen ist, machen wir keine Aussage darüber, ob zwei Fundamente unserer Liste isomorph sind. Verwendet man klassifizierende Invarianten und führt passende Parameter ein, kann man eine Liste paarweise nicht isomorpher Fundamente erstellen.

Ist das zugehörige Coxeter-Diagramm $G_F$ ein Baum, so hängt das Fundament $F$ nur vom definierenden Körper ab. Kreise im Diagramm sorgen für eine zusätzliche Abhängigkeit von „Twists“, also von Automorphismen des definierenden Körpers $A$. Genauer:

- Ist $A$ ein Körper, so ist ein integrierbares Fundament $F$ durch $G_F$ und einen Homomorphismus $\varphi : \Pi_1(G_F) \to \text{Aut}(A)/\text{Inn}(A) \cong \text{Aut}(A)$ eindeutig bestimmt, wobei $\Pi_1(G_F)$ die Fundamentalgruppe von $G_F$ ist.

- Ist $A$ ein Schiefkörper, aber kein Quaternionen-Schiefkörper, und $F$ ein integrierbares Fundament vom Typ $\tilde{A}_n$, so ist das Fundament durch $n$ und ein Element von $\text{Aut}(A)/\text{Inn}(A)$ eindeutig bestimmt.

- Ist der definierende Körper ein Quaternionen-Schiefkörper, so gilt ein ähnliches Resultat wie für einen Körper.

Zudem könnte man die Integrierbarkeits-Beweise in einigen Punkten überarbeiten, sobald die angewandte Theorie von B. Mühlherr, H. Petersson und R. Weiss vollständig entwickelt wurde.
Endliche Moufang-Fundamente

Die eingeführte Terminologie und die Methoden von [MHa] können verwendet werden, um zu zeigen, dass jedes lokal endliche Zwillingsgebäude vom 2-sphärischen Typ das Fixpunkt-Gebäude einer Galois-Wirkung im Sinne von B. Rémy ist, was bedeutet, dass es algebraischen Ursprungs ist.

Danksagungen

Zunächst möchte ich meinem Betreuer Bernhard Mühlherr meinen ganz besonderen Dank dafür aussprechen, dass er meine Aufmerksamkeit auf das interessante Gebiet der Moufang-Fundamente und deren Moufang-Mengen gelenkt hat. Es war mir eine Freude, meinen Teil zum Klassifikations-Programm für Zwillingsgebäude beisteuern zu können. Viele ergiebige Diskussionen zeigten mir die richtigen Ansätze, also die möglicherweise zu beweisenden Aussagen und die zugehörigen Beweisideen. Seine Intuition ist beeindruckend.

Des Weiteren möchte ich Richard Weiss danken, der die Frage nach der Verallgemeinerung des Satz von Hua aufwarf und der mit seiner wunderbaren und detaillierten Arbeit über Moufang-Polygone, sphärische und affine Gebäude sowie deren Klassifikation die Grundlage für diese Arbeit gelegt hat. Viele kleine Fragen konnten mit der Hilfe von [TW] beantwortet werden, und falls nicht, hatte er immer eine Idee, wo man nachschlagen könnte.

Ralf Köhl erweiterte die Arbeitsgruppe um viele nette Leute und gab mir die Möglichkeit, an einem Forschungsprojekt über kompakte Untergruppen von Kac-Moody-Gruppen teilzunehmen. Seine Begeisterung und seine Hingabe sind bewundernswert und bilden die Grundlage für unsere gediehende Arbeitsgruppe.

Dank gebührt auch den folgenden Personen: Tom De Medts, der mir einen angenehmen Aufenthalt in Ghent bereitete, während dessen wir am Isomorphie-Problem für Moufang-Mengen vom pseudo-quadratischen Typ arbeiteten. Neben meiner Familie gibt es zuletzt noch zahlreiche Freunde, die mein Leben mit gemeinsam verbrachter Zeit, Unterhaltungen und Unternehmungen bereichert, die einen angenehmen und wichtigen Gegenpol zu dem Mathematik genannten „abstrakten Nonsense“ bildeten, mit dem ich mich die letzten 10 Jahre beschäftigt habe.

Der wichtigste Punkt, die die letzten 5 Jahre zu einer wunderbaren Zeit gemacht haben, ist der folgende: Bernhard und Ralf erlaubten mir die größtmögliche Flexibilität bei der Gestaltung meiner akademischen Arbeit. Dies ermöglichte mir insbesondere, zusammen mit meinen langjährigen Freunden Steffen Presse und Joram Gornowitz unser ambitioniertes Kino-Projekt zu realisieren.
Bibliography

[AB] Peter Abramenko, Kenneth Brown, Buildings, Springer (2008).

[D] Tom De Medts, Algebraic Rank One Groups of Type $^1D_4$, their Moufang Sets, and the Bartels Invariant, Unpublished Notes, Gent (2007).

[DS] Tom De Medts, Yoav Segev, Moufang Sets, Lecture Notes Summer School Venice (2008).

[DW] Tom De Medts, Richard Weiss, Moufang Sets and Jordan Division Algebras, Math. Ann. 335 (2006), no. 2, 415-433.

[EKM] Richard Elman, Nikita Karpenko, Alexander Merkurjev, The Algebraic and Geometric Theory of Quadratic Forms, AMS (2008).

[H] Loo-Keng Hua, On the automorphisms of a Sfield, PNAS 35 (1949), no.2, 386-389.

[J] Nathan Jacobson, Structure and Representations of Jordan Algebras, AMS (1968).

[K] Rafael Knop, The Geometry of Moufang Sets, Dissertation an der Martin-Luther-Universität Halle-Wittenberg (2005).

[KMRT] Max-Albert Knus, Alexander Merkurjev, Markus Rost, Jean-Pierre Tignol, The Book of Involutions, AMS (1998).

[MGeo] Bernhard Mühlherr, A Geometric Approach to Non-embeddable Polar Spaces of Rank 3, Bulletin de la Société Mathématique de Belgique, Sér. A 42 (1990), no.3, 577-594.

[MLoc] Bernhard Mühlherr, Locally Split and Locally Finite Twin Buildings of 2-spherical Type, Journal für die reine und angewandte Mathematik 511 (1999), 119-143.

[MHab] Bernhard Mühlherr, On the Existence of 2-spherical Twin Buildings, Habilitationsschrift an der TU Dortmund (1999).

[MPhD] Bernhard Mühlherr, Some Contributions to the Theory of Buildings Based on the Gate Property, Dissertation an der Eberhard Karls Universität Tübingen (1994).

[MR] Bernhard Mühlherr, Mark Ronan, Local to Global Structure in Twin Buildings, Inventiones Mathematicae 122 (1995), no. 1, 71-81.

[MV] Bernhard Mühlherr, Hendrik Van Maldeghem, Codistances in Buildings, Innovations in Incidence Geometry Volume 10 (2009), 81-91.

[P] Holger Petersson, Composition Algebras over a Field with a Discrete Valuation, Journal of Algebra 29 (1974), 414-426.

[RT] Mark Ronan, Jacques Tits, Building Buildings, Math. Ann. 278 (1987), 291-306.

[RSch] Richard Schafer, An Introduction to Nonassociative Algebras, Academic Press (1966).

[WSch] Winfried Scharlau, Quadratic and Hermitian Forms, Springer (1984).

[Sp] Tony Springer, Octonions, Jordan Algebras and Exceptional Groups, Springer (2000).

[T74] Jacques Tits, Buildings of Spherical Type and Finite BN-pairs 2nd ed., Springer (1986).

[T92] Jacques Tits, Twin Buildings and Groups of Mac-Moody Type in Groups, Combinatorics and Geometry, Cambridge University Press (2008), 249-286.

[TW] Jacques Tits, Richard Weiss, Moufang Polygons, Springer (2002).

[VV] Hendrik Van Maldeghem, Kristel Van Steen, Moufang Affine Buildings Have Moufang Spherical Buildings at Infinity, Glasgow Mathematical Journal 39 (1997), 237-241.

[W] Richard Weiss, The Structure of Affine Buildings, Princeton University Press (2008).
List of Symbols

\[ \text{Aut}_G(A, K) \] group of linear automorphisms of the algebra \((A, K)\) 11
\[ \text{Aut}(A, K) \] group of (semi-linear) automorphisms of the algebra \((A, K)\) 11
\( (H, \beta) \) octonion algebra with respect to the quaternion division algebra \( H \) and \( \beta \) 27
\( (E/K, \beta) \) quaternion division algebra with respect to \( E/K \) and \( \beta \in K^* \) 27
\( \sigma_s \) standard involution 27, 28
\( E/K \) separable quadratic extension 27
\( Z(A) \) center of the alternative ring \( A \) 26
\( \text{Aut}_o(A) \) set of anti-automorphisms of the alternative division ring \( A \) 26
\( [x, y, z] \) associator of the elements \( x, y, z \) 25
\( \text{Aut}(A) \) group of automorphisms of the alternative division ring \( A \) 26
\( [x, y] \) commutator of the elements \( x, y \) 26
\( \gamma_w \) conjugation with the element \( w \) 26
\( \text{Aut}_J(A) \) group of Jordan automorphisms of the alternative division ring \( A \) 26, 132
\( \lambda_{w} \) left multiplication with the element \( w \) 26
\( \rho_{w} \) right multiplication with the element \( w \) 26
\( B_J(x, y) \) \( J \)-residue of the pair \((x, y)\) of opposite chambers 16
\( \Delta_J(x) \) \( J \)-residue of the chamber \( x \) 14
\( \mathcal{O}_J \) set of opposite chambers 16
\( U_\alpha \) root group with respect to the root \( \alpha \) 18
\( \text{dist}(x, y) \) distance of the chambers \( x \) and \( y \) 14
\( h_{a,b} \) double \( \mu \)-map with respect to \( a \) and \( b \) 20
\( x \sim_J y \) the chambers \( x \) and \( y \) are connected by a \( J \)-gallery 14
\( A(G) \) set of directed edges of the Coxeter matrix \( M \) 13
\( E(G) \) set of edges of the Coxeter matrix \( M \) 13
\( G(J) \) set of rank 3 subdiagrams of the Coxeter matrix \( M \) 13
\( M_J \) submatrix with entries in \( J \) 13
\( \Pi_M \) Coxeter diagram with respect to the Coxeter matrix \( M \) 13
\( V(G) \) set of vertices of Coxeter matrix \( M \) 13
\( (W_M, r) \) Coxeter system with respect to the Coxeter matrix \( M \) 13
\( W_M \) Coxeter group with respect to the Coxeter matrix \( M \) 13
\( F(\tilde{F}, \varphi) \) foundation with respect to the cover \((\tilde{F}, \varphi)\) 103, 174
\( F(U, \Lambda) \) foundation with respect to the root group system \( U \) and the parametrization \( \Lambda \) 96, 173
\( F_\alpha \) foundation with respect to the reparametrization \( \alpha \) 98, 175
\( U(B, M, \Sigma, c) \) root group system of \( B \) based at \((\Sigma, c)\) 95, 172
\( U_{(i, j)} \) root group sequence from \( \alpha_i \) to \( \alpha_j \) 95, 172
\( F_J \) \( J \)-residue of the foundation \( F \) 93, 171
\( A(G) \) set of directed edges of the graph \( G \) 12
\( B_i(v) \) set of neighbours of the vertex \( v \) 12
\( E(G) \) set of edges of the graph \( G \) 12
\( G(G) \) set of rank 3 subdiagrams of the graph \( G \) 12
\( V(G) \) set of vertices of the graph \( G \) 12
\( \text{Fix}(\sigma) \) the set of fixed points with respect to the involution \( \sigma \) 41
| Symbol   | Description                                                                 | Page |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| $\mathbb K_\sigma$ | the set of traces with respect to the involution $\sigma$                     | 41   |
| $X(\Xi)$ | parametrized Moufang polygon                                                 | 159  |
| $\mathcal M^i_{(i,j)}$ | parameter group of the first root group                                      | 162  |
| $\mathcal M_{(i,j)}$ | parameter group of the last root group                                       | 162  |
| $\mathbb E_a$ | quadratic subfield containing $q(a)$                                        | 56   |
| $\mathbb E_x$ | quadratic subfield containing $x$                                            | 56   |
| $R_a$ | 2-dimensional $\mathbb F$-subspace with respect to $a$                      | 56   |
| $T(\Xi)$ | associated group with the Moufang set with respect to the pseudo-quadratic space $\Xi$ | 47   |
| $X_a$ | admissible elements with respect to $a$                                      | 56   |
| $h_{(a,t)}$ | Hua-map with respect to $(a,t) \in T$                                       | 49   |
| $f_q$ | bilinear form with respect to the quadratic form $q$                        | 32   |
| $C(q)$ | Clifford algebra with respect to the quadratic form $q$                     | 37   |
| Clif$(q)$ | Clifford invariant of the quadratic form $q$                                | 37   |
| Def$(q)$ | defect of the quadratic form $q$                                            | 40   |
| $FL_N(V,\mathbb K)$ | group of norm similarities with respect to the quadratic form $N$           | 131  |
| $W^\perp$ | orthogonal complement of the subspace $W$                                  | 40   |
| $\mathbb F(L_0,\mathbb K, q)$ | field associated with the quadratic space $(L_0, \mathbb K, q)$ with $\dim_{\mathbb K} L_0 \leq 2$ | 35   |
| $GL(V, \mathbb K)$ | group of linear automorphisms of the vector space $(V, \mathbb K)$          | 11   |
| $\Gamma L(V, \mathbb K)$ | group of (semi-linear) automorphisms of the vector space $(V, \mathbb K)$  | 11   |
List of Foundations

| Symbol | Description |
|--------|-------------|
| $F_{443}(\Xi)$ | 443 foundation with respect to the involutory set $\Xi$ |
| $F_{443}(\Xi)$ | 443 foundation w.r.t. the pseudo-quadratic space $\Xi$ over a quaternion division algebra |
| $F_{443}(\Xi, \gamma)$ | 443 foundation w.r.t. the pseudo-quadratic space $\Xi$ over a separable quadratic extension $K$ and $\gamma \in \text{Aut}(K)$ |
| $F_{443}(A, (F_1, F_2), \gamma)$ | 443 foundation w.r.t. the quadratic spaces $\Xi := (A, F_1, F_2)$ of type (i)-(v) and the isomorphism $\gamma : F_1 \rightarrow F_2$ |
| $F_{443}(K, F, E, \gamma)$ | 443 foundation w.r.t. the quadratic spaces $(K, F, E, F^\gamma)$ of type (i)-(iii) and the isomorphism $\gamma : K \rightarrow E$ |
| $F_{443}(\Xi, \gamma)$ | 443 foundation w.r.t. the quadratic space $\Xi = (L_0, K, q)$ with $\dim_K L_0 \geq 3$ and $\gamma \in \text{Aut}(K)$ |
| $F_{443}(\Xi, \tilde{\Xi}, \gamma)$ | 443 foundation w.r.t. the quadratic space $\Xi = (L_0, K, q)$ with $\dim_K L_0 \leq 2$, the quadratic space $\tilde{\Xi} = (L_0, \tilde{K}, \tilde{q})$ of type (i)-(iii) and the isomorphism $\gamma : \tilde{K} \rightarrow K$ |
| $Q_D^0(K, K_0, L_0)$ | parametrized opposite Moufang quadrangle with respect to the indifferent set $(K, K_0, L_0)$ |
| $Q_D(K, K_0, L_0)$ | parametrized standard Moufang quadrangle with respect to the indifferent set $(K, K_0, L_0)$ |
| $Q_f^0(K, K_0, \sigma)$ | parametrized opposite Moufang quadrangle with respect to the indifferent set $(K, K_0, \sigma)$ |
| $Q_f(K, K_0, \sigma)$ | parametrized standard Moufang quadrangle with respect to the indifferent set $(K, K_0, \sigma)$ |
| $Q_p^0(K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)$ | parametrized opposite Moufang quadrangle with respect to the pseudo-quadratic space $(K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)$ |
| $Q_p(K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)$ | parametrized standard Moufang quadrangle with respect to the pseudo-quadratic space $(K, K_0, \sigma, L_0, q)$ |
| $Q_Q^0(L_0, K, q)$ | parametrized opposite Moufang quadrangle with respect to the quadratic space $(L_0, K, q)$ |
| $Q_Q(L_0, K, q)$ | parametrized standard Moufang quadrangle with respect to the quadratic space $(L_0, K, q)$ |
| $\mathcal{T}^\circ(A)$ | parametrized opposite Moufang triangle with respect to the alternative division ring $A$ |
| $\mathcal{T}(A)$ | parametrized standard Moufang triangle with respect to the alternative division ring $A$ |
| $A_{\infty}(D)$ | chain foundation with respect to the skew-field $D$ |
| $A_{\infty}^1(D)$ | ray foundation with respect to the skew-field $D$ |
| $A_n(D, \gamma_n)$ | foundation of type $\mathcal{A}_n$ with respect to the skew-field $D$ and the automorphisms $\gamma_1, \ldots, \gamma_n \in \text{Aut}(D)$ |
| $A_n(D)$ | foundation of type $\mathcal{A}_n$ with respect to the skew-field $D$ |
| $A_n^+(D)$ | ray foundation with respect to the skew-field $D$ |
| $\tilde{A}_2(D)$ | canonical triangle with respect to the octonion division algebra $\mathcal{O}$ |
| $F(G^P, \mathbb{H})$ | mixed foundation with respect to the graph $G^P$ and the quaternion division algebra $\mathbb{H}$ |
| $P^+_3(\mathbb{H})$ | positive triangle with respect to the quaternion division algebra $\mathbb{H}$ |
| $P^+_n(\mathbb{H})$ | positive foundation with respect to the quaternion division algebra $\mathbb{H}$ |
## List of Results

| Result                                                                 | Page |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Moufang Sets of Indifferent and Linear Type                             | 147  |
| Moufang Sets of Involutory and Linear Type                             | 147  |
| Moufang Sets of Involutory Type                                        | 145  |
| Moufang Sets of Linear Type                                            | 145  |
| Moufang Sets of Pseudo-Quadratic Form Type                             | 146  |
| Moufang Sets of Quadratic Form Type                                    | 146  |
| Moufang Sets of Quadratic Form and Linear Type                         | 147  |
| Bruck-Kleinfeld-Theorem                                                 | 30   |
| Classification of 443 Twin Buildings                                   | 190  |
| Classification of Simply Laced Twin Buildings                           | 126  |
| Doubling Process                                                       | 29   |
| Extension Theorem                                                      | 18   |
| Hua’s Theorem                                                          | 101  |
| Jordan Automorphisms of Octonion Division Algebras                     | 140  |
| Jordan Isomorphisms of Moufang Sets of Pseudo-Quadratic Form Type      | 87   |
| Moufang Identities                                                     | 25   |
| Wedderburn                                                             | 37   |
Index

$J$-gallery, 14
$J$-residue
  of a building, 15
  of a foundation, 93, 171
  of a twin building, 16
  of chamber system, 14
$\mu$-map, 20
$\nu$-uniformizer, 31
$\sigma$-isometry, 131
$\sigma$-similarity, 131
$i$-adjacent, 14
$i$-equivalence, 14
$i$-panel, 14
443-foundation, 179
  of involutory type, 181
  of pseudo-quadratic form type, 181
  of unitary type, 181
action, 17
  strongly transitive, 17
adjacent, 14
algebra, 11
  associative, 11
  central simple, 37
alternative division ring, 25
alternative ring, 25
  opposite, 26
anti-isomorphism
  of alternative rings, 26
apartment, 15
associator, 25
automorphism
  linear, 11
  of a foundation, 93, 171
  of a Moufang set, 143
  of a root group system, 95, 172
  of twin buildings, 17
basepoint, 32
building, 14
  standard thin, 14
canonical, 104
center, 26
central simple, 37
chamber, 14
  opposite, 16
  system, 14
Clifford algebra, 37
Clifford invariant, 37
codistance, 16
commutator, 26
complete w.r.t. a discrete valuation, 31
composition algebra, 31, 131
(un)ramified, 31
constants of a norm splitting, 38
cover, 12
  of a foundation, 103, 174
Coxeter
  diagram, 13
  diagram (2-spherical), 13
  group, 13
  matrix (2-spherical), 13
  system, 13
defect, 40
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
defective, 28, 40
defining field, 110
discrete valuation, 31
distance, 14
double $\mu$-map, 20
edge, 12
exceptional, 100
flexible, 25
foundation, 93, 171
  canonical, 104
  integrable, 96, 173
  mixed, 100
  Moufang, 93, 171
  negative, 100
  positive, 100
gallery, 14
gauging
  exceptional, 100
  negative, 100
  positive, 100
graph, 12
half of a twin building, 16
Hua automorphism, 163–166
  of a Moufang triangle, 92
Hua map, 33, 49
indifferent set, 45
  opposite, 45
  proper, 45
inseparable, 55
integrable, 96, 173
inverse properties, 26
involutory set, 41
  of quadratic type, 42
  proper, 41
isomorphism
  of twin buildings, 17
  of twin buildings, 17
of algebras, 11, 37
of alternative rings, 26
of foundations, 93, 171
of indifferent sets, 45
of involutory sets, 41
of Moufang sets, 143
of parametrized Moufang polygons, 161
of parametrized Moufang triangles, 92
of pseudo-quadratic spaces, 46
of quadratic spaces, 32
of root group systems, 95, 172
of twin buildings, 17
of vector spaces, 11
special, 93, 95, 171, 172

Jordan homomorphism, 41
Jordan isomorphism, 49
of Moufang sets, 143

mixed, 100
morphism
of Coxeter diagrams, 13
of Coxeter matrices, 13
of graphs, 12
Moufang foundation, 93, 171
Moufang property, 18
strict, 18
Moufang set, 143
commutative, 143
of indifferent type, 144
of involutory type, 144
of linear type, 144
of pseudo-quadratic form type, 144
of quadratic form type, 144
unital, 143
Moufang triangle, 92
parametrized opposite, 91
parametrized standard, 91
multiplier, 131

negative, 100
non-defective, 28, 40
norm, 30
norm splitting, 38

octonion division algebra, 28
opposite
alternative ring, 26
chambers, 16
indifferent set, 45
parameter system, 160
opposite symbol, 160
opposition involution, 17
panel, 14
of type \(i\), 14
parameter system, 96, 159, 160, 173
opposite, 160
parametrized Moufang polygon, 161
opposite, 160
standard, 159
parametrized quadangle
of indifferent type, 166
of involutory type, 163
of pseudo-quadratic form type, 164
of quadratic form type, 165
positive, 100
prenilpotent, 15
proper
indifferent set, 45
indifferent set, 41
pseudo-quadratic space, 46
quadratic space, 32
pseudo-quadratic form (anisotropic), 46
pseudo-quadratic space (anisotropic), 46
proper, 46
quadratic form (anisotropic), 32
(non-)defective, 28
quadratic over a subfield of the center, 30
quadratic space (anisotropic), 32
(linear) of type \((m)\), 36
(linear) of type \(E_n\), 39
(linear) of type \(F_4\), 40
proper, 32
unital, 32
quaternion division algebra, 27
ramified, 31
rank, 18
reparametrization, 161, 175
for a Moufang triangle, 92
residue
of a building, 15
of a chamber system, 14
of a foundation, 93, 171
of a twin building, 16
opposite, 16
RGD system, 19
root
simple, 15
root group, 18, 143
root group system, 95, 172
root system
standard, 15
scalar multiplication, 11
separable, 55
set of neighbours, 12, 122
similarity, 131
Index

simply laced, 93
special $(\lambda, \mu)$-pair, 137
standard involution, 27, 28
standard root system, 15
standard thin building, 14
symbol, 160
  opposite, 160
  standard, 159
thick, 18
trace, 30
twin apartment, 17
twin building, 16
twin root, 17
type of a gallery, 14
uniformizer, 31
unital
  Moufang set, 143
  quadratic space, 32
unramified, 31
vector space, 11
vertex, 12
Selbständigkeitserklärung

Ich erkläre: Ich habe die vorgelegte Dissertation selbständig und ohne unerlaubte fremde Hilfe und nur mit den Hilfen angefertigt, die ich in der Dissertation angegeben habe.

Alle Textstellen, die wörtlich oder sinngemäß aus veröffentlichten Schriften entnommen sind, und alle Angaben, die auf mündlichen Auskünften beruhen, sind als solche kenntlich gemacht.

Bei den von mir durchgeführten und in der Dissertation erwähnten Untersuchungen habe ich die Grundsätze guter wissenschaftlicher Praxis, wie sie in der “Satzung der Justus-Liebig-Universität Gießen zur Sicherung guter wissenschaftlicher Praxis” niedergelegt sind, eingehalten.

Nidderau, im September 2013